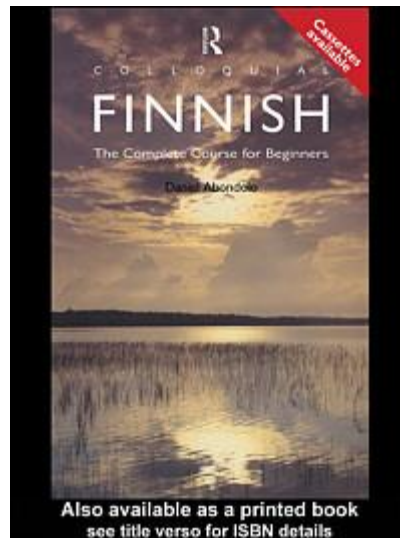


# Colloquial Finnish :

## The Complete Course for Beginners



---

<b>title</b>	:	Colloquial Finnish : The Complete Course for Beginners The Colloquial Series
<b>author</b>	:	Abondolo, Daniel Mario.
<b>publisher</b>	:	Taylor & Francis Routledge
<b>isbn10   asin</b>	:	041511389X
<b>print isbn13</b>	:	9780415113892
<b>ebook isbn13</b>	:	9780203132876
<b>language</b>	:	English
<b>subject</b>	:	Finnish language--Spoken Finnish, Finnish language--Textbooks for foreign speakers--English.
<b>publication date</b>	:	1998
<b>lcc</b>	:	PH135.A26 1998eb
<b>ddc</b>	:	494/.54183421
<b>subject</b>	:	Finnish language--Spoken Finnish, Finnish language--Textbooks for foreign speakers--English.

---

Page i

## Colloquial Finnish

---

Page ii	English	Slovene
<b>The Colloquial Series</b>	Estonian	Somali
The following languages are available in the Colloquial series:	French	* Spanish
	German	Spanish of Latin America
	* Greek	Swedish
	Gujarati	* Thai
	Hindi	Turkish
	Hungarian	Ukrainian
	Indonesian	* Vietnamese
	Italian	Welsh
Albanian	Japanese	Accompanying cassette(s) are available for the above titles.
Amharic	Korean	* Accompanying CDs are also available.
Arabic (Levantine)	Latvian	
Arabic of Egypt	Lithuanian	
Arabic of the Gulf and Saudi Arabia	Malay	
Basque	Norwegian	
Bulgarian	Panjabi	
* Cambodian	Persian	
* Cantonese	Polish	
* Chinese	Portuguese	
Czech	Romanian	
Danish	* Russian	
Dutch	Serbo-Croat	
	Slovak	

---

Page iii

# Colloquial Finnish

The Complete Course for Beginners

Daniel Abondolo

with dialogues by Hanna Björklund and Elina Multanen



London and New York

---

Page iv

First published 1998

by Routledge

11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE

This edition published in the Taylor & Francis e-Library, 2003.

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada

by Routledge

29 West 35th Street, New York, NY 10001

© 1998 Daniel Abondolo

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilized in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

*British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data*

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

*Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data*

Abondolo, Daniel Mario

Colloquial Finnish: the complete language course/Daniel

Abondolo.

p. cm.—(The colloquial series)

ISBN 0-415-11391-1 (pack).—ISBN 0-415-11389-X (pbk).

—ISBN 0-415-11390-3 (audio cassettes)

1. Finnish language-Spoken Finnish. 2. Finnish language-Textbooks

for foreign speakers-English. I. Title. II. Series.

PH135.A26 1997

494'. 54183421—dc20 96—32137

CIP

ISBN 0-203-13287-4 Master e-book ISBN

ISBN 0-203-29609-5 (OEB Format)

ISBN 0-415-11389-X (Print Edition) (book)

ISBN 0-415-11390-3 (Print Edition) (cassette)

ISBN 0-415-11391-1 (Print Edition) (book and cassette course)

---

## Contents

<b>Acknowledgements</b>	<b>vii</b>
<b>List of abbreviations and symbols</b>	<b>ix</b>
<b>About this book</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>The sounds of Finnish</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>1 Tutustutaan</b> Making contact	<b>9</b>
<b>2 Ei, kiitos!</b> No thanks	<b>27</b>
<b>3 Ole hyvä!</b> Help yourself!	<b>42</b>
<b>4 Paikasta toiseen</b> Getting around and about	<b>55</b>
<b>5 Mitä me ostetaan?</b> What'll we buy?	<b>72</b>
<b>6 Mennääks kiskalle!</b> Let's go to the kiosk!	<b>91</b>
<b>7 Eiks ookki ihana päästä kotiin joulunviettoon!</b> Isn't it great to get home for Christmas!	<b>111</b>
<b>8 Huonosta vielä huonommaksi</b> From bad to worse	<b>127</b>
<b>9 Aika ja tila</b> Time and space	<b>144</b>
<b>10 Mitä tehtäs tänään?</b> What'll we do today?	<b>161</b>
<hr/>	
<b>11 Yhä nopeammin</b> More and more quickly	<b>178</b>
<b>12 Maton alla tuntuu olevan jotain</b> There seems to be something under the carpet	<b>194</b>
<b>13 Mikä laulaen tulee...</b> Easy come...	<b>208</b>
<b>14 Karhut voi kai olla vaarallisiakin</b> Bears can be dangerous, I suppose	<b>222</b>
<b>15 Vakavia asioita</b> Serious matters	<b>237</b>
<b>16 Älköön sanottako!</b> Let it not be said!	<b>252</b>
<b>Key to exercises</b>	<b>267</b>
<b>Appendix: Finnish names</b>	<b>277</b>
<b>Finnish-English glossary</b>	<b>279</b>
<b>English-Finnish glossary</b>	<b>292</b>
<b>Glossary of grammatical terms</b>	<b>300</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>305</b>
<hr/>	

## Acknowledgements

I wish to thank the following people for much help I have received during the preparation of this book. Among the many native speakers who have helped me, Hanna Björklund and Elina Multanen deserve special mention: it is they who provided most of the dialogue materials, on which the grammar sections are largely based, and with whom I have had many profitable discussions over points of suitability and style. Other native speakers who have helped me over the years are Matti Koskiala, Heikki and Eeva Sarmanto, and, most recently, Tuomo Lahdelma. I also thank the numerous teachers of Finnish who have helped me, first and foremost Aili Flint, who is a language-teaching paragon, but also Eila Hämäläinen and Fred Karlsson, Hannele Branch, Carol Rounds, and Sirkka Betts. This is also the place to express my gratitude to those colleagues, conversant with both language-teaching and with Finnish, who made valuable suggestions, namely Stefan Pugh, Ian Press, and Peter Sherwood; to the superb copy-editing of Jenny Potts; and to Simon Bell, Kate Hopgood, and the rest of the editorial team at Routledge for getting the book started and through various hurdles.

---

---

## Abbreviations and symbols

### Abbreviations

The names of the cases are always abbreviated with uppercase letters, as follows:

ABL	Ablative	ILL	Illative
ADE	Adessive	INE	Inessive
ALL	Allative	N	Nominative
ELA	Elative	P	Partitive
ESS	Essive	TRA	Translative
G	Genitive		

Singular and plural are indicated by a preposed lowercase s or p, e.g. sG=genitive singular, pILL=plural illative.

The codes s1 s2 s3 p1 p2 p3 refer to first, second, and third persons singular and plural.

### Other abbreviations:

adj	adjective	pass	passive
adv	adverb	PR	participial construction
cd	conditional	ps	present
dir	directive	pt	past
ind	indefinite	ptcpl	participle

### Examples:

s1 pt first person singular past, e.g. **mä men|i|n** 'I went'.

s2 second person singular form of plural inessive, e.g.

pIne **tasku|i|ssa|si** 'in your pockets'.

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_ix	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_x	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page x

### Symbols

| (upright line) is used to separate the morphemes, i.e. the minimal meaningful units of words, e.g. English *tree|s*, *friend|li|ness*, Finnish **puu|t**, **ystävällis|yys**.

Qis found at the ends of morphemes, and stands for a variety of phonetic and grammatical effects: see Unit 2.

Xsee Q.

> stands for ‘changes to’ or ‘is read as’, e.g. pp>p is ‘pp changes to p’.

[< previous page](#)                      page\_x                      [next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)                      page\_1                      [next page >](#)

Page 1

### About this book

This book aims to provide you with the basics you need to communicate in Finnish. That means grammatical nuts-and-bolts, some useful vocabulary, and an idea of how to guess at the meanings of words you haven’t heard before. It is not a phrase-book or a tourist’s guide to Finland; plenty of those are already available, and besides, all the phrase-books in the world won’t get you communicating if you aren’t equipped with the rules.

Finnish is the first language of some five and a half million people. Most speakers live in Finland, but there are also significant enclaves in Sweden, Estonia, and Norway, and in the area around Lakes Michigan and Superior in the United States and Canada.

In the European context, Finland presents a rich paradox: geographically northern, it is culturally like neither Sweden nor Norway; geographically eastern, it is like neither Poland nor Ukraine. The main reason for this uniqueness is Finnish culture, borne and permeated by the Finnish language.

Neither Germanic (like Swedish, German, or English) nor Slavonic (like Polish and Ukrainian), Finnish is a Uralic language, and is thus related to Estonian, Saam (Lappish), and (much more distantly) to Hungarian. Most of Finnish vocabulary will therefore probably be new to you; the learning curve flattens out fairly soon, however, because once you enter the intermediate stages you will find Finnish vocabulary richly systematic and therefore relatively easy to learn.

Some of the grammar, too, is quite different from that of most European languages. But there is nothing intrinsically difficult about it; it is simply unfamiliar. We’ll hit a few of the high spots here to give you some idea of what’s in store.

Finnish pronunciation presents few novel challenges, and the spelling is for the most part perfectly consistent. For English

[< previous page](#)                      page\_1                      [next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)                      page\_2                      [next page >](#)



[< previous page](#)

[page\\_2](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_3](#)

[next page >](#)

speakers, there are few unfamiliar sounds. Many will be relieved to learn that Finnish word-stress is always on first syllable.

Finnish words take on many forms, and some Finns like to try to frighten foreigners with tales of sesquipedalian (i.e. polysyllabic) adjectives and case systems with fifteen-plus members. And in fact, Finnish nouns can and do take some fifteen different endings depending on their role in the sentence. The word for 'Finland', for example, **Suomi**, can also be **Suomesta**, **Suomeen**, and **Suomessa**,



corresponding to English ‘*from* Finland’, ‘*to* Finland’, and ‘*in* Finland’. But nothing as complicated as Latin or even Russian or German need be feared, for the endings, or suffixes, which appear at the end of this word (and which we shall segment in this book as **Suome|sta, Suome|en, Suome|ssa**) are essentially the same for *all* nouns, in both singular and plural. There is no grammatical gender, even in the third person singular pronoun: Finnish does not distinguish ‘she’ from ‘he’, or ‘her’ from ‘him’. The Finnish verb is also quite straightforward, particularly when compared with that of English, French, or Spanish. There is only one irregular verb (or one-and-a-half).

The Finnish lexicon is exceptionally rich, in part because of the built-in machinery which the language has for making and modifying words, in part because of its openness to foreign borrowings and the creativeness of its slang. If you are interested in folk poetry, you probably already know that Finnish is the key to the world’s largest archive of orally transmitted verbal art.

It is perhaps useful to stress that like any language, Finnish is more than a means of communication. It is also an object which can be studied for its own sake. You don’t need to devote the rest of your life to studying it, but the more thought and work you invest into Finnish itself, the more communication will become not only easier but more pleasurable.

[< previous page](#)                      [page\\_3](#)                      [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#)                      [page\\_4](#)                      [next page >](#)

Page 4

## The sounds of Finnish

The basic rule for good pronunciation of Finnish is: don’t rush; give all the sounds their due time and attention.

### Vowels

The letters **i e a o u y ä ö** stand for sounds which are always pronounced fairly *short, but never mumbled or clipped*, regardless of position. *Always long* are the sounds written **ii ee aa oo uu yy ää öö**, i.e. the same eight letters doubled.

The vowels may be classified roughly according to their manner of articulation as *high* (**i y u**), *mid* (**e ö o**), and *low* (**ä a**); *front* (**i y e ö ä**) vs. *back* (**u o a**); and *rounded* (**y ö u o**) vs. *unrounded* (**i e ä a**).

Listen to the recording and do your best to imitate these samples, concentrating on the vowel marked with italics. Remember to stress the first syllable, regardless of what else is going on later on the word.

<i>Finnish</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Pronounced as in</i>	<i>Pronounced a bit as in</i>
		<i>German</i>	<i>English</i>

<b>i kiva</b>	smashing	<i>bitte</i>	‘bit’ (especially Australian)
<b>ii kiitos</b>	thanks	<i>biete</i>	‘bead’
<b>u kuva</b>	picture	<i>gucke</i>	‘cook’ (especially Australian)
<b>uukuuma</b>	hot	<i>Schuhe</i>	(billed and) ‘cooed’
<b>y kylä</b>	village	<i>Hütte</i>	–
<b>yy tyyli</b>	style	<i>müde</i>	–
<b>ee veteen</b>	into the water	<i>gäbe</i>	‘square’, but with no trace of an ‘r’

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_4](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_5](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 5

<b>ootaloon</b>	into the house	<i>ohne</i>	‘north’, but with no trace of an ‘r’
<b>öökeittiöön</b>	into the kitchen	<i>Höhle</i>	–
<b>aapataan</b>	into the pot	<i>Ahnung</i>	‘palm’
<b>ääpesään</b>	into the nest	–	‘ban’, but longer
<b>e keli</b>	road conditions	<i>Bett</i>	‘bet’
<b>o Koli</b>	(placename)	<i>solle</i>	–
<b>ö köli</b>	keel	<i>Hölle</i>	–
<b>a kala</b>	fish	<i>knapp</i>	‘palm,’ but shorter
<b>ä käsi</b>	hand	–	‘bat’

The letter-sequences **ie**, **uo**, **yö** represent diphthongs. You may first attempt them by simply pronouncing a good Finnish **i**, **u**, or **y** followed by a good Finnish **e**, **o**, or **ö**. Avoid allowing the diphthong to ‘centre’, i.e. do not pronounce (as in Leeds or New York ‘near’, ‘cure’) the second vowel as a *schwa* (like the second vowel in ‘sofa’). Avoid, also, the temptation to lengthen the second vowel at the expense of the first (as in Italian *miele*, *buono*).

<b>ie kieli</b>	language	–	cf. Jamaican ‘face’
<b>uo Suomi</b>	Finland	–	cf. Jamaican ‘goat’
<b>yö syödä</b>	to eat	–	–

Here are some more examples to practise. Make sure you can clearly hear the difference in length (of the vowels, again, in italics):

<i>English</i>	<i>Short</i>	<i>Long</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Contrast</i>
Pig	<b>sika</b>	<b>siika</b>	herring	<b>i : ii</b>
of a row	<b>rivin</b>	<b>riviin</b>	into a row	<b>i : ii</b>
of a name	<b>nimen</b>	<b>nimeen</b>	into a name	<b>e : ee</b>

of a fish	<b>kalan</b>	<b>kalaan</b>	into a fish	<b>a : aa</b>
of a poem	<b>runon</b>	<b>runoon</b>	into a poem	<b>o : oo</b>
of sorrow	<b>surun</b>	<b>suruun</b>	into sorrow	<b>u : uu</b>
expenses	<b>kulut</b>	<b>kuulut</b>	you belong	<b>u : uu</b>
summer cabin	<b>mökki</b>	<b>rööki</b>	fag, cigarette	<b>ö : öö</b>
wrinkle	<b>ryppy</b>	<b>ryppy</b>	(alcoholic) drink	<b>y : yy</b>

## Consonants

Most of the consonants also come in *short* and *long* varieties. Between vowels, the long consonants are written double. For example:

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_5	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_6	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 6

who?	<b>kuka</b>	<b>kukka</b>	flower
worm	<b>mato</b>	<b>matto</b>	rug
help	<b>apu</b>	<b>vappu</b>	May Day
heap	<b>kasa</b>	<b>kassa</b>	cash register
beer	<b>olut</b>	<b>ollut</b>	been

When two different consonants occur next to one another, either the first or the second is long. Length is indicated in spelling as follows.

1 If the first consonant is pronounced short and the second consonant is pronounced long, the second consonant is written double. Examples:

<b>linssi</b>	lens	<b>telttä</b>	tent
<b>kantta</b>	lid (sP)	<b>helppo</b>	easy
<b>kartta</b>	map	<b>marssi</b>	march
<b>ankka</b>	domesticated duck	<b>korppu</b>	floppy disk
<b>lamppu</b>	lamp	<b>herkkä</b>	sensitive, touchy
<b>valssi</b>	waltz	<b>palkka</b>	salary

2 In the reverse scenario, that is, if the first consonant is pronounced long and the second is pronounced short, *both consonants are written single*. Practise these examples:

<b>länsi</b>	west	<b>tunti</b>	hour
<b>hanki</b>	snowcrust	<b>norsu</b>	elephant
<b>lampi</b>	pond	<b>korpi</b>	backwoods
<b>tylsä</b>	stupid	<b>itse</b>	self
<b>halko</b>	log	<b>yskä</b>	cough
<b>pelto</b>	field	<b>halpa</b>	cheap

Special attention should be paid to the following letters:

**h** represents a sound much like English ‘h’ in ‘hut’, except when written to the left of another consonant letter, when it represents a *voiceless velar fricative* (as in German *Bach*) or a *voiceless palatal fricative* (as in German *ich*), depending, as in German, on the surrounding vowels. Listen to these words and try to copy the differences:

<b>sohva</b>	sofa	<b>pihvi</b>	steak
<b>lahti</b>	bay	<b>tyhjä</b>	empty
<b>kirahvi</b>	giraffe		

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_6](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_7](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 7

**b**, represent sounds much like those of English ‘bait’, ‘date’, and **d**, ‘gate’, except that the sequence **ng** stands for a long *velar nasal g* [ŋ], not a sequence of velar nasal plus [ŋ]. If you distinguish the medial sounds of ‘finger’ and ‘singer’, it’s the latter sound you want, but with a longer pronunciation. Examples:

**Helsingissä** in Helsinki **ongelma** problem

**n** in **nk** stands for velar [ŋ] as in English ‘bank’.

You will also come across the letter **š**, used to represent the initial sound of English ‘ship’; it is used only in foreign words such as **šekki** ‘cheque’, **šakki** ‘chess’.

### *Glottal stop and its consequences*

The Finnish alphabet has no symbol for the *glottal stop* which is pronounced by most Finns at the ends of forms such as **istu!** ‘sit!’ or **palaute** ‘feedback’. (Glottal stop is commonly heard in London, e.g. instead of ‘t’ in ‘city’ and ‘not a lot’). In Finnish, the glottal stop often attaches to following consonants, making them longer; it has other, grammatical, effects, as well. To help you to acquire a good pronunciation and to render Finnish grammar more transparent, this book writes the glottal stop in grammatical sections and in the vocabularies as **Q**.

### **Nuts and bolts, and a few symbols**

Many Finnish words will look long to you at first, but in most instances they break up readily into smaller, recurring, parts with which you will quickly become familiar. To help you to see these smaller parts clearly, a vertical stroke (|) is liberally applied throughout this book, e.g. marking off the Finnish suffix **sto** in both **kirja|sto** ‘library’ and **laiva|sto** ‘fleet’—words that are easy to remember once you’ve learned that **kirja** is ‘book’ and **laiva** ‘ship’. In grammatical sections, a

right-pointing arrowhead (>) will indicate change, as you might expect (an English example would be ‘y’>‘ie’ in ‘library’>‘librarie[s]’). In the vocabulary sections the arrow (→) leads you from a *colloquial* form to a *more formal* Finnish form.

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_7	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_8	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 8

Finnish suffixes usually have more than one form. In order to capture this variety, in the grammatical sections of this book they are written with capital letters representing the sounds which vary. So for example the suffix **sto** (as in **kirja|sto** above) is **stö** in **ympäri|stö** ‘environment’ (from **ympäri** ‘around’); in this suffix therefore the varying vowel (**o, ö**) is written with capital **O**, and the non-varying consonants **st** are written in lower case: =**stO**. In the suffix =**iME**, the reverse scenario applies: in this suffix the vowel **i** does not vary, and is therefore written in lowercase, but capital **M** and **E** are intended as reminders that we do not have simple **m** and **e** here (the **e** alternates with zero, and the **m** with **n**: see page 89).

#### A note on slang

The ‘colloquial Finnish’ presented in this book is a range of varieties of Finnish as spoken by younger people in Finland today, particularly in urban areas, when they are speaking casually and naturally. Very little slang is presented, as this would simply double one of your first tasks, namely the acquisition of the working parts of a basic vocabulary; and once you have learned the basic (colloquial *and* formal) word for ‘hand’, **käsi**, you will not find it especially difficult to slot in slang terms for the same thing, e.g. **tassu**, **handu**, **kännny**.

#### Dictionaries

The glossaries at the back of this book provide the essential forms you’ll need to complete the course. Soon enough, however, you’ll want to find out more, and you’re in luck: Finns are excellent dictionary-makers, and a wide range of sizes and types are available. If you go to Finland you can nose around in search of bargains in the second-hand bookshops (**divari|t**) you’ll find in every city.

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_8	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_9	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 9

## Tutustutaan

### Making contact

#### In this unit you will learn:

- how to say what country you're from, what you do, and how to ask the same about others
- how to say 'yes'
- one way to express possession
- how vowels in a Finnish word cooperate with one another (vowel harmony), and how consonants fight (consonant compression)

#### Dialogue

#### *Esittäytyminen* Introducing yourself

*Juuso and Paul introduce themselves to each other*

JUUSO: Hyvää päivää. Juuso Virtanen.

PAUL: Hyvää päivää. Paul Smith. Hauska tutustua.

JUUSO: Hauska tutustua.

JUUSO: *Good day. (I'm) Juuso Virtanen.*

PAUL: *Good day. (I'm) Paul Smith. Pleased to meet you.*

JUUSO: *Pleased to meet you.*

To introduce yourself in Finnish, you say your name. It's polite to preface your name with a greeting such as the following, and to offer to shake hands:

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_9	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_10	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 10

**Hyvää huomenta!** (lit. 'Good morning'), said in the morning

**Hyvää päivää!** (lit. 'Good day'), said throughout the day, until it's time for

**Hyvää iltaa!** (lit. 'Good evening'), said in the evening

Usually, the phrase **Hauska tutustua** (Pleased to meet you) gets thrown in as well.

Here's another example, with the 'I'm' (**Mä olen**) explicitly stated:

IRMA: Hyvää päivää. Mä olen Irma Ojala.

SOPHIE: Hyvää päivää. Sophie Grant. Hauska tutustua.

IRMA: *Good day. I'm Irma Ojala.*

SOPHIE: *Good day. I'm Sophie Smith. Pleased to meet you.*

In less formal contexts, the greetings **hei** or **moi** are used, and surnames dispensed with:

MASA: Moi. Mä olen Masa.

HANNU: Moi. Hannu.

MASA: *Hi. I'm Masa.*

HANNU: *Hi. (I'm) Hannu.*

Follow-up will usually consist of saying where you're from and what you do for a living. Let's go back to Paul and Juuso:

JUUSO: Oletteko te englantilainen?

PAUL: Olen.

JUUSO: *Are you English?*

PAUL: *Yes (lit. I am).*

Here's the follow-up to the conversation between Irma and Sophie:

IRMA: Oletteko te opettaja?

SOPHIE: Olen.

IRMA: *Are you a teacher?*

SOPHIE: *Yes (lit. I am).*

Formal Finnish doesn't really have a word that works like English 'yes'. Instead, the key word in the question is repeated. See also below, 'Answering "yes" to yes/no (-**kO**) questions'.

**Exercise 1** Build short dialogues in which the Finns and foreigners listed below introduce themselves to each other. Use the greetings

Page 11

given above, and the phrases **Oletteko te X** ‘Are you X?’ and **Olen** ‘Yes (I am)’; don’t forget **Hauska tutustua**. Here are some nationalities to start with:

<b>suomalainen</b>	Finnish, a Finn
<b>kiinalainen</b>	Chinese, a Chinese
<b>italialainen</b>	Italian, an Italian
<b>irlantilainen</b>	Irish, an Irish (wo)man
<b>belgialainen</b>	Belgian, a Belgian
<b>ruotsalainen</b>	Swedish, a Swede
<b>puolalainen</b>	Polish, a Pole
<b>venäläinen</b>	Russian, a Russian
<b>unkarilainen</b>	Hungarian, a Hungarian
<b>eestiläinen</b>	Estonian, an Estonian
<b>sveitsiläinen</b>	Swiss, a Swiss
<b>englantilainen</b>	English, an Englishman
<b>egyptiläinen</b>	Egyptian, an Egyptian
<b>amerikkalainen</b>	American, an American
<b>somalialainen</b>	Somali, a Somali
<b>kanadalainen</b>	Canadian, a Canadian
<b>saamelainen</b>	Sami, a Sami (‘Lapp’)
<b>australialainen</b>	Australian, an Australian
<b>romaani</b>	Romany (Gipsy), a Rom
<b>ranskalainen</b>	French, a Frenchman
<b>walesilainen</b>	Welsh, a Welsh (person)
<b>saksalainen</b>	German, a German
<b>skotlantilainen</b>	Scottish, a Scot
<i>Some Finnish names</i>	<i>Some foreigners’ names</i>

Women:

Marja Mäkinen  
Satu Salokangas  
Eila Elstelä  
Raija Nieminen  
Men:

Hannu Huttunen  
Pekka Virtavuori  
Raimo Santala  
Heikki Karapää

Nigel Baker  
Albert O’Rourke

Wilfred Owen  
Angus Salmon  
Françoise Peugeot  
Renate Porsche  
Sergio Lamborghini  
Yuri Yavlinsky

Jorge González  
Seiji Nakamura  
Jawaahir Maxamed  
Annikke Rätsep  
Wang Wei



Page 12

### Language points

To make statements like ‘I am English’ or ‘I am an engineer’, you have to know (1) how to use personal pronouns; (2) how to use the verb ‘is’; (3) vocabulary for nationalities, countries, and occupations. These are the three areas which we shall explore in the next three sections.

#### *Personal pronoun basics*

English pronouns distinguish three subject persons, ‘I’—‘you’—‘(s)he/it’ and singular from plural (‘I’ vs. ‘we’, ‘he’ vs. ‘they’). So do Finnish pronouns, but the gender distinction ‘he/she’ is absent. On the other hand, other distinctions are important. We’ll summarize these distinctions under four points:

- 1 *Full vs. cropped:* ‘I’ is either **minä** or **mä**; ‘you’, if addressed to a friend, is either **sinä** or **sä**. In other words, alongside the full-length forms **minä** and **sinä** are shorter, or ‘cropped’ forms; the cropped forms are more colloquial. ‘He’, ‘she’, ‘it’ are all **se** in colloquial Finnish, and ‘they’ is **ne**. In more formal style, **se** and **ne** are used only when referring to animals or things; for humans, **hän** is used in the singular and **he** in the plural.
- 2 The third person pronouns (**hän**, **he**, **se**, **ne**) are not usually omitted; the others may be omitted if they are not stressed, but to include them (in their cropped forms, of course) is more colloquial.
- 3 When speaking to one person, you may express distance, politeness, or formality by using the second person plural. (In colloquial contexts, you use the second person plural only when addressing more than one person.)

The singular subject pronouns are a bit complex, so we’ll overview them diagrammatically:

Page 13

Subject person	s1	mä	minä		
	s2	sä	sinä	(te + p2)	
	s3	se		hän	humans
				se	other
colloquial ↔ formal contexts					

### *How to say 'am', 'are', and 'is': the verb ole- 'is'*

The most frequently used verb in Finnish is the verb **ole-** 'is'. Here are its present-tense forms in more formal Finnish:

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
1 ( <b>minä</b> ) ole n	I am	( <b>me</b> ) ole mme	we are
2 ( <b>sinä</b> ) ole t	you are	( <b>te</b> ) ole tte	you are
3 <b>hän/se on</b>	(s)he/it is	<b>he ovat</b>	they are

Finnish has no future tense, so English equivalents of **minä olen** also include 'I will/shall be'.

As mentioned in the preceding section, the p2 form (**te**) ole|tte is used not only when addressing more than one person, but also to express politeness when addressing a single person.

As mentioned in the previous section, colloquial Finnish uses **se** to refer to people, as well, and the cropped pronoun forms **mä** and **sä** are frequent. There are also two other differences: for 'they are', colloquial Finnish has **ne on** instead of **he ovat**; and for 'we are' colloquial Finnish has **me ollaan**. More on these forms in later units.

### *Vocabulary building*

#### *Countries and nationalities*

You have already met several names of nationalities above, and you will probably have noticed that they all end in either **lainen** or **läinen**.

[< previous page](#)

page\_13

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_14

[next page >](#)

This is because **lainen/läinen** is a suffix by means of which Finnish derives nationality names from simpler, shorter words, usually names of countries. The form with **a** is used if the word to which the suffix is added contains an **a, o,** or **u** (thus **tanska|lainen, puola|lainen**) and the form with **ä** is used elsewhere (thus **venä|läinen, sveitsi|läinen**). This sort of matching-up of vowels is called *vowel harmony*; you'll learn more about it later on in this unit.

For now, you can use the table below to revise nationality names while you learn the country names on which they are based; if in doubt, refer back to the exercise at the beginning of this unit. Notice the irregularities—unexpected **-a-**, **-jä**—in the words for ‘Finnish’, ‘Swedish’, and ‘Russia’.

<i>Nationality</i>	<i>Country</i>	<i>Nationality</i>	<i>Country</i>
suoma lainen	Suomi	saksa lainen	Saksa
ruotsa lainen	Ruotsi	belgia lainen	Belgia
venä läinen	Venäjä	puola lainen	Puola
eesti läinen	Eesti	unkari lainen	Unkari
englanti lainen	Englanti	sveitsi läinen	Sveitsi
amerikka lainen	Amerikka	egypti läinen	Egypti
kanada lainen	Kanada	somalia lainen	Somali
australia lainen	Australia	saame lainen	NB
ranska lainen	Ranska	romaani	NB
		walesillainen	Wales
		skotlanti lainen	Skotlanti

As the example **Wales/walesilainen** (pronounced [valesilainen] or [veilsiläinen]) shows, an **-i-** is added to foreign words which end in a consonant in order to ease the attachment of the suffix; another example is **Gabon/gabonilainen**.

### *Occupations*

Like names of nationalities, names for occupations are usually derived words. Such words are derived from simpler words by means of *derivational suffixes*, which we shall distinguish by prefixing them with an equals sign (=). Common derivational suffixes which form occupation names are **=isti** and **=ikko**, both of which are usually added to stems which you will either recognize or be able to guess:

<b>pianisti</b>	pianist ( <b>piano</b> ‘piano’)
<b>klarinetisti</b>	clarinetist ( <b>klarineti</b> ‘clarinet’)
<b>kontrabasisti</b>	double-bassist ( <b>kontrabasso</b> ‘double bass’)

[< previous page](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_14

page\_15

[next page >](#)

[next page >](#)

**muusikko** musician    **matemaatikko** mathematician

<b>mekaanikko</b>	mechanic		
<b>poliitikko</b>	politician	<b>akateemikko</b>	academic

*Tip:* The vowel in the syllable immediately preceding the occupation-forming suffix =**ikko** is usually long: **muusikko**, **matemaatikko**, **poliitikko**.

Also easy to recognize and remember are:

<b>diplomaatti</b>	diplomat
<b>insinööri</b>	engineer
<b>poliisi(konstaapeli)</b>	police (constable)

but probably not:

<b>tulkki</b>	interpreter
---------------	-------------

The ending **ri** is frequent:

<b>tuomari</b>	judge	<b>leipuri</b>	baker
<b>maalari</b>	painter	<b>lääkäri</b>	doctor

The suffix =**jA** (for capital 'A' see pages 17–18), which is added to verbs, is the closest Finnish equivalent to the English '=er' of 'writer' or the '=or' of 'director'. In later units, you will meet some of the verbs from which these occupation names are derived:

<b>opettaja</b>	teacher	<b>valokuvaaja</b>	photographer
<b>kirjailija</b>	writer	<b>maanviljelijä</b>	farmer
<b>runoilija</b>	poet	<b>sairaanhoitaja</b>	nurse
<b>asianajaja</b>	solicitor, lawyer	<b>toimisto-työntekijä</b>	office worker
<b>ohjaaja</b>	(film) director		
<b>tarjoilija</b>	waiter	<b>opiskelija</b>	student

The compound-element **mies** (man; husband) is also common, whether the person is a man or a woman:

<b>laki mies</b>	jurist ( <b>laki</b> 'law')
<b>meri mies</b>	sailor ( <b>meri</b> 'sea')
<b>posti mies</b>	mail carrier ( <b>posti</b> 'post, mail')
<b>palo mies</b>	firefighter ( <b>palo</b> 'fire which destroys a building')
<b>lehti mies</b>	journalist ( <b>lehti</b> 'leaf; newspaper')

Finally, some older terms are made with **seppä** 'smith':

<b>puu seppä</b>	joiner ( <b>puu</b> 'tree; wood')
<b>lukko seppä</b>	locksmith ( <b>lukko</b> 'lock')
<b>kello seppä</b>	watchmaker ( <b>kello</b> 'clock, watch')

Page 16

### *Putting it all together*

You have now met the three basics you need to know in order to say ‘I am English’, ‘Harriet is an engineer’, even ‘The Frenchman is a musician.’ The neutral, normal way is to string the three items together, subject-verb-predicate, in precisely that order. Thus we have subject (**minä, Harriet, ranskalainen**), then verb (**olen, on, on**), and finally predicate (**englantilainen, insinööri, muusikko**):

Minä olen englantilainen.

Harriet on insinööri.

Ranskalainen on muusikko.

Notice that both subject and predicate are in the *nominative*.

**Exercise 2** Now combine and revise what you have learned in the preceding sections by translating the following Finnish sentences into English:

1	Minä olen englantilainen.
Minä olen insinööri.	2
3	Mä olen skotlantilainen muusikko.
4	Sä olet ulkomaalainen.
5	Te olette italialainen diplomaatti.

**Exercise 3** Put into Finnish:

1	Are you a doctor?
2	She is a Hungarian director.
3	I am an English businessman.
4	He is a French mathematician.
5	I'm a Canadian student.

**Exercise 4** Use analogy, guesswork, and—if desperate—the answers in the back of this book to fill in the missing items in each line of the table below.

<i>Nationality</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Country</i>	<i>English</i>
1 ———	Danish	<b>Tanska</b>	Denmark
<b>2 kreikkalainen</b>	Greek	———	Greece
3 ———	Norwegian	<b>Norja</b>	Norway
4 ———	Dutch	<b>Hollanti</b>	Holland
<b>5 albanialainen</b>	Albanian	———	Albania
6 ———	Ukrainian	<b>Ukraina</b>	Ukraine

Page 17

7 —	Turkish	<b>Turkki</b>	Turkey
8 —	Portuguese	<b>Portugali</b>	Portugal

*Asking yes/no questions: -ko (and vowel harmony)*

As you have seen, the Finnish for ‘Are you?’ is **oletteko**; in other words, the verb form **olette** ‘you are’ plus a suffix **-ko** (more colloquial: **-ks**). This is the standard way to form yes-or-no questions in Finnish: you attach this suffix to the word you’re asking about. Thus **Onko se tämä?** (more colloquial: **Onks se tää?**) simply asks ‘is it this?’, in other words whether or not it is this (**tämä/tää**), but **Tämäkö se on?** (more colloquial: **Tääks se on?**) singles out ‘this’, something like ‘Is it this!? and not that’.

Now, this suffix is not always **-ko**. Like **=lainen/=läinen** and indeed most Finnish suffixes, it has two shapes. The difference between the two shapes lies in the vowel: for this suffix the shapes are **-ko** and **-kö**. Which shape you use depends on the vowels of the word to which the suffix is attached. The rule may be stated quite simply in two parts: (1) if the word has any of the vowels **u, o, a**, you use **-ko**, e.g.:

<b>Onko se italialainen?</b>	Is (s)he Italian?	( <b>On</b> contains <b>o</b> , so <b>-ko</b> )
<b>Pariisiko?</b>	Paris?	( <b>Pariisi</b> contains <b>a</b> , so <b>-ko</b> )
<b>Lontooko?</b>	London?	( <b>Lontoo</b> contains <b>o</b> , so <b>-ko</b> )
<b>Turkuko?</b>	Turku?	( <b>Turku</b> , the name of Finland’s former capital, contains <b>u</b> , so <b>-ko</b> )

(2) otherwise, you use **-kö**:

<b>Sveitsikö?</b>	Switzerland?	(no <b>u, o, a</b> in Sveitsi, so <b>-kö</b> )
-------------------	--------------	--

In compound words, it is the vowels of the last word which are decisive. For example, the word **lukko|seppä** ‘locksmith’ takes **-kö** because the last member of this word, **seppä** ‘smith’ has no **u, o, a**: **Lukkoseppäkö te olette?** ‘Are you a locksmith?’

To save time and space, we shall refer to the question suffix as

Page 18

**-kO**, with the upper-case **O** to serve as a reminder that the vowel is **o** or **ö** depending on vowel harmony. Similarly, whenever a suffix has **a** or **ä** depending on vowel

harmony, we shall write **A**, and upper-case **U** will refer to the vowel pair **u** and **y**.

For a minor refinement of the vowel-harmony rule given above, see Unit 10.

**Exercise 5** Ask politely (i.e., use **te** and the second person plural form of the verb) whether someone is

- 1 Finnish
- 2 a locksmith
- 3 Russian
- 4 a policeman
- 5 French

**Exercise 6** Ask these questions in Finnish, laying emphasis on the italicized words by attaching the appropriate form of **-kO**:

- 1 Is he *Japanese*?
- 2 Are you an *engineer*?
- 3 Is he a *firefighter*?
- 4 Are you *German*?
- 5 Is she a *politician*?

#### *Answering 'yes' to yes/no (-kO) questions*

You answer in the affirmative by repeating the verb form, if this is what was being questioned:

**Oletteko te suomalainen?** Are you Finnish?  
**Olen.** Yes.

If the yes/no-question suffix **-kO** was added to any word other than the verb, you say **niin**; it is more polite to repeat the questioned word, as well:

**Ruotsalainenko sä olet?** Are you *Swedish*?  
**Niin, ruotsalainen.** Yes, I am.

Finally, there is simple **joo**. This corresponds more to English 'yeah' than to 'yes', i.e. it is used only in informal, colloquial contexts:

**Oletsä suomalainen?** Are you Finnish?  
**Joo.** Yeah.

*How to say 'Irma's friend', 'the capital of France', etc.: the genitive case and an introduction to nominal stem-types*

Have a look at these sentences:

<b>Mikä sen opettajan nimi on?</b>	What's <i>that</i> teacher's name?
<b>Kuka tuo on?</b>	Who's that?
<b>Se on Irman ystävä.</b>	That's <i>Irma's</i> friend.

The words **se|n**, **opettaja|n**, and **Irma|n** are all in the *genitive* case. The genitive corresponds to the 's' of English 'Irma's friend' and the 'of' of 'the capital of France'.

To form the genitive of any Finnish *nominal* (=noun or adjective) you add **-n**. So 'Irma's friend' is **Irma|n ystävä** (where **ystävä** is 'friend') and 'the capital of France' is **Ranska|n pääkaupunki** ('France's capital', where **pääkaupunki** is 'capital'). The rest of this section shows you how to do this.

*Non-alternating stems*

For thousands of nominals like **Irma** and **Ranska**, you just add the **-n** to the 'citation form'. (This is the form of the nominal which is listed in dictionaries. It is also called the nominative singular, so we shall use the abbreviation sN.)

These nominals all have *citation forms* ending in vowels, and their shapes do not vary, or at least they vary in predictable ways (for the most widespread predictable way see *consonant compression*, below). We shall call them *non-alternating* stems because their stem endings remain unchanged to the left of the genitive singular (=sG) suffix **-n**. All nominals that end in **a, ä, o, ö, u**, and **y** (or their long equivalents **aa, ää, oo, öö, uu, yy**) are non-alternating.

Examples:

<i>citation form (sN)</i>	<i>sG</i>	<i>English</i>
<b>kala</b>	<b>kala n</b>	fish
<b>kesä</b>	<b>kesä n</b>	summer
<b>talo</b>	<b>talo n</b>	house
<b>hölmö</b>	<b>hölmö n</b>	fool
<b>savu</b>	<b>savu n</b>	smoke
<b>levy</b>	<b>levy n</b>	record, disc

[< previous page](#)

page\_19

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_20

[next page >](#)



Any adjective modifying a noun must agree with that noun in case. So both ‘green’ and ‘house’ are in the genitive in

**vihreä|n talo|n ovi** the door of the green house (**vihreä** ‘green’)

and both ‘green’ and ‘door’ are in the nominative in

**talo|n vihreä ovi** the green door of the house

**Exercise 7** Have a go at translating these possessive phrases into English. You’ll need the words listed just above, plus these: **pyrstö** ‘tail’, **ovi** ‘door’, **maku** ‘taste’, **loppu** ‘end’, **pöllö** ‘owl’, **siipi** ‘wing’, **koko** ‘size’.

- 1 kala|n pyrstö
- 2 talo|n ovi
- 3 kala|n maku
- 4 kesä|n loppu
- 5 pöllö|n siipi
- 6 levy|n koko

### *Alternating stems*

These are nominals whose stem endings change when to the left of the genitive singular suffix. Most are easy to spot, once you know what to look for. In this lesson you have already met one very common type: nominals ending in =**lAinen** such as **ranskalainen** ‘French’, **egyptiläinen** ‘Egyptian’. These and *all* Finnish nominals (except **kymmenen** ‘ten’) that have citation forms ending in **nen** have a stem that ends in *se*, and it is to this stem that case suffixes are added. Have a look at these forms:

sN	<b>ranskalainen</b>	<b>egyptiläinen</b>
sG	<b>ranskalaise n</b>	<b>egyptiläise n</b>

It’s best to learn the groupings of alternating stems gradually; we’ll discuss them as they come up. For another important group of alternating stems see the section on *e-stems* later in this unit.

### *Boxes with tight lids: consonant compression*

In the preceding section, you saw how adding the genitive singular **-n** can trigger changes in alternating stems. This section introduces

[< previous page](#)

page\_20

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_21

[next page >](#)

you to another kind of alternation which this and other suffixes can trigger.

If you examine the nominative and genitive singular of the following three stems, you will notice that something is happening to the **t**.

<i>citation form (sN)</i>	<i>sG</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>consonant alternation</i>
<b>katu</b>	<b>kadu n</b>	street	t ~ d
<b>hattu</b>	<b>hatu n</b>	hat	tt ~ t
<b>hinta</b>	<b>hinna n</b>	price	nt ~ nn

The **-t-** of **katu** ‘street’ is said to ‘weaken’ to **-d-** in the genitive **kadu|n** ‘of a street’; in parallel fashion, the **-tt-** of **hattu** ‘hat’ weakens to **-t-** in the genitive **hatu|n** ‘of a hat’, and the consonant cluster **-nt-** of **hinta** is **-nn-** in the genitive **hinna|n**.

One way to think of this ‘weakening’ is that it is a kind of *compression*. It is as if Finnish words were boxes full of various consonants and that suffixes like **-n** were tight-fitting lids: putting such a ‘lid’ onto the end of a ‘box’ that is already full crams the ‘consonant contents’ of that word into a tighter, more compressed shape.

What kind of word is a ‘full box’? One that has very little ‘space’ at the end, i.e., any word ending in a short vowel.

What kind of suffix is a ‘tight lid’? Any suffix which consists of a single consonant (like our **-n**) or begins with two consonants. With certain exceptions which we will detail as we go along, adding any such suffix causes compression of any **p**, **t**, or **k** inside the ‘box’. For example, long **pp** compresses to **p**:

<b>kauppa</b>	shop
<b>kaupa n</b>	sG

and short **p** preceded by a vowel compresses to **v**:

<b>apu</b>	help
<b>avu n</b>	sG

The **p** of **vapaa** ‘free’ is not compressed when we add the tight lid **-n**, because the long vowel (**aa**) at the end provides plenty of vowel space:

<b>vapaa</b>	free
<b>vapaa n</b>	sG

These and other, parallel alternations (which we shall call *consonant compression*) are quite regular. Consonant compression is not

difficult to acquire, because (1) it is regular (the rules will be introduced as we go), and pervades most of the grammar and lexicon of the Finnish language; (2) it operates in parallel (for example, all longs compress to shorts); (3) it is restricted: every alternation pair involves a **p, t, or k**; no other consonants undergo compression.

For ease of reference, all consonant changes due to compression are set out below. Read it through now, not with an aim to memorizing it, but merely in order to become more acquainted with the sorts of changes which are involved.

The changes are illustrated here by the form of the genitive, so what we have is a list of possessive noun phrases. Each consists of a noun in the genitive singular followed by another in the nominative singular. The consonant compression which is illustrated in each case is listed in the column on the right.

1 Long **pp, kk, tt** compress to short **p, k, t**:

		<i>Compression</i>
<b>kauppa</b> ‘shop’	<b>kaupa n ovi</b> ‘the door of the shop’	<b>pp&gt;p</b>
<b>lukko</b> ‘lock’	<b>luko n hinta</b> ‘the price of the lock’	<b>kk&gt;k</b>
<b>tyttö</b> ‘girl’	<b>tyttö n nimi</b> ‘the girl’s name’	<b>tt&gt;t</b>

Since this type (**pp>p, kk>k, tt>t**) involves the *length*, i.e. the quantity, of the consonants, we shall call it *quantitative* compression. Quantitative is the only kind of compression which affects personal names (**Pekka** ‘Peter’, **Peka|n** ‘Peter’s’) and most foreign words.

All other types of compression are *qualitative* i.e. involve a change in the nature of the consonant. They are:

2 To the right of a nasal (**m, n, [ŋ]**, see page 7), compressed **p, t, k** assimilate, i.e., they copy the nasal:

<b>rumpu</b> ‘drum’	<b>rummu n päriinä</b> ‘the beating of the drum’	<b>mp&gt;mm</b>
<b>Helsinki</b> ‘Helsinki’	<b>Helsingi n historia</b> ‘the history of Helsinki’	<b>nk&gt;ng</b> [ŋŋ]
<b>hinta</b> ‘price’	<b>hinna n romahdus</b> ‘the collapse in (lit. of) the price’	<b>nt&gt;nn</b>

3 Otherwise, **p** (unless preceded by **s**) compresses to **v**:

<b>apu</b> ‘help’	<b>avu n tarvitsija</b> ‘one in need (lit. a needer”) of help’	<b>p&gt;v</b>
	n tarvitsija ‘one in need (lit. a needer”) of help’	
	tarvitsija ‘one in need (lit. ”a needer”) of help’	
	n tarvitsija ‘one in need (lit. “a needer”) of help’	
	n	

tarvitsija ‘one in need (lit. “a needer”) of help’  
**halpa halva|n hotelli|n osoite** ‘the address of a cheap hotel’ **p>v**  
‘cheap’

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_22](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_23](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 23

4 (a) A **k** between two **u**’s or **y**’s also compresses to **v**:

**puku** ‘dress, **puvu|n hinta** ‘the price of the dress’ **k>v**  
suit’

**kyky** ‘ability’ **kilpailukyvy|n ylläpitäminen** ‘the sustaining of **k>v**  
the ability to compete’

4 (b) but between other vowel combinations, compressed **k** melts into the surrounding vowels:

**laki** ‘law’ **lai|n periaate** ‘the principle of the law’ **k>(melts)**

(Pronunciation note: the **-i-** of **lai|n** is quite long, as if in memory of the **k** which has been compressed.)

4 (c) If preceded by **l** or **r**, single **k** either compresses to nothing:

**härkä** ‘ox’ **härä|n häntä** ‘the tail of the ox’ **k>0**

4 (d) or (if followed by **e**) to **j**:

**solki** ‘buckle’ **solje|n hinta** ‘the price of the buckle’ **k>j**

5 (a) A **t** preceded by a vowel compresses to **d**:

**koti** ‘home’ **kodi|n kalusto** ‘the furniture of the home’ **t>d**

5 (b) Preceded by an **l** or **r**, compressed **t** assimilates to those consonants:

**kulta** ‘gold’ **kulla|n hinta** ‘the price of gold’ **lt>ll**

**parta** ‘beard’ **parra|n ajelu** ‘the shaving of a beard’ **rt>rr**

### *More alternating stems: e-stems*

E-stems are a very important class of alternating stem. They are all bisyllabic nominals whose citation form ends in **i**, but which have **e** in the genitive singular. This kind of alternating stem is more difficult to spot than the **ranskalainen** type because there are plenty of imposters, i.e. bisyllabic nominals with citation forms ending in **i** which have **i** in the genitive singular. Compare these three pairs of nominals:

Page 24

*Non-alternating*

sN	<b>rivi</b> ‘row’
sG	<b>rivi n</b>
sN	<b>pommi</b> ‘bomb’
sG	<b>pommi n</b>
sN	<b>tuoli</b> ‘chair’
sG	<b>tuoli n</b>

*Alternating (e-stems)*

sN	<b>kivi</b> ‘stone’
sG	<b>kive n</b>
sN	<b>tammi</b> ‘oak’
sG	<b>tamme n</b>
sN	<b>nuoli</b> ‘arrow’
sG	<b>nuole n</b>

From a citation form in final **i** you cannot be sure whether a nominal is an **e**-stem or not, so brute memorization is in order. When you learn a new nominal, you should make at least a mental note of its genitive singular. To assist you in this, all alternating stems are clearly marked in the vocabularies in this book. **E**-stems are marked with an extra **e**; thus ‘arrow’ is listed as **nuoli e**.

*Tip:* A good rule of thumb will help, however: the older the concept expressed by the word, and the more central it is to traditional Finnish culture, the greater the chances that it will be an **e**-stem; have another look at the six examples given above. (Counterexamples exist, of course, but they are few. Among the more egregious: the word for ‘oxygen’, **happi**, is an **e**-stem, but ‘mother’, **äiti**, isn’t!)

There is one more vital complication which concerns **e**-stems. Most of them (see the short list at the end of this section) which have a citation form ending in **si** have stems ending in **te**. For example, the stem of **käsi** ‘hand’ is **käte-**; its genitive singular is therefore **käde|n**, with regular **t>d** compression; contrast non-alternating **lasi** ‘glass’ (stem: **lasi**), with sG **lasi|n**. In the vocabularies, nouns like **käsi** will be indicated thus: **käsi te**.

Here’s a short list of some of the most common **e**-stems:

<b>vesi te</b>	water	<b>ääni e</b>	voice, sound
<b>käsi te</b>	hand	<b>pieni e</b>	small
<b>uusi te</b>	new	<b>nimi e</b>	name
<b>vuosi te</b>	year	<b>väki e</b>	people
<b>tosi te</b>	true, truth	<b>henki e</b>	spirit, life, person
<b>kansi te</b>	lid, cover		
<b>viisi te</b>	five	<b>tuli e</b>	fire
<b>kuusi te</b>	six	<b>hetki e</b>	moment
		<b>pilvi e</b>	cloud
<b>mieli e</b>	mind	<b>järvi e</b>	lake
<b>kieli e</b>	language, tongue	<b>sieni e</b>	mushroom; sponge

Page 25

<b>siipi</b> <i>e</i>	wing	<b>kivi</b> <i>e</i>	stone
<b>suuri</b> <i>e</i>	great, large	<b>kuusi</b> <i>e</i>	spruce
<b>nuori</b> <i>e</i>	young	<b>suomi</b> <i>e</i>	Finnish language
<b>puoli</b> <i>e</i>	half; side	<b>Suomi</b> <i>e</i>	Finland
<b>lehti</b> <i>e</i>	leaf; newspaper	<b>veri</b> <i>e</i>	blood

**Exercise 8** Practise forming the genitive singular and revise vocabulary by translating these phrases into Finnish:

- 1 the taste of French wine
- 2 the colour (**väri**) of money
- 3 the door of the small house
- 4 the house's small door
- 5 the capital of Sweden
- 6 the doctor's Italian friend
- 7 the history of London
- 8 the new price of the dress
- 9 the price of a new dress
- 10 the musician's beard

**How to say where people are from: the elative case (-stA)**

**Mi|stä maa|sta sä olet kotoisin?** What country are you *from*?  
**Mä olen kotoisin Espanja|sta.** I'm *from* Spain.

To say what country you are originally from, you use the adverb **kotoisin** 'by domicile', but you must also put the name of the country into the *elative case*.

The suffix of the elative case is **-stA**. The uppercase **A** means that its vowel is susceptible to vowel-harmony changes. The two consonants **st** at the beginning of this suffix mean that it is a 'tight lid' and will therefore cause consonant compression.

Let's look at a few more examples:

<b>Me olemme kotoisin Sveitsi stä.</b>	We are from Switzerland.
<b>Se on kotoisin Hollanni sta. (nt&gt;nn compression)</b>	(S)he is from Holland.
<b>Ne on kotoisin Amerika sta. (kk&gt;k compression)</b>	They are from America.

**Exercise 9** Make up short exchanges in which people ask each other what country they're from. Use the vocabulary given in the

Page 26

section above about nationalities. Don't forget to harmonize your vowels and to compress your consonants, as appropriate!

### Reading

Try to understand as much of these short snippets of Finnish as you can without peeking at the vocabulary at the back of the book. The only new words are **ja** 'and' and **mutta** 'but'.

1 Pekka on suomalainen. Se on insinööri. Pekan ystävä, Jeanne, on pianisti. Jeanne on kotoisin Belgiasta.  
Hyvää päivää! Mä olen Jorge Rodriguez.

Hyvää päivää! Satu Pennanen. Hauska tutustua.

2 Hauska tutustua.

Oletteko te Espanjasta kotoisin?

Nimi on espanjalainen, mutta mä olen kotoisin Amerikasta.

Page 27

2

**Ei, kiitos!**

**No thanks!**

#### **In this unit you will learn:**

- about expressing likes and preferences
- more about nominal stems
- how to say 'before' and 'after'
- how to talk about 'doing things' to things and people: expressing the direct object
- how to say 'no', and to express dislike
- basic numeracy
- another way to express possession

#### **Language points**

*Expressing likes and preferences: the present tense of verbs*

**Minä pidän kahvista.** 'I like coffee.'  
**Minä pidän teestä.** 'I like tea.'

To say that someone likes something, you use the verb **pitä-** and put the person or thing liked into the relative case (-stA), which you have already met in the preceding unit. As you would expect from having studied the verb **ole-** 'to be', the present-tense forms of the verb **pitä-** vary according to person, number, and formality.

These three dimensions are summarized in the following chart. The forms within the heavy lines are relatively formal, and those outside the heavy lines are relatively informal and colloquial. The dotted line separates forms with singular subject (to its left) from those with a plural subject (to its right).

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_27	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_28	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 28

		colloquial/informal		formal
person				
1	<b>pidän</b>		<b>pidetään*</b>	<b>pidämme</b>
2	<b>pidät</b>	<b>pidätte</b>		
3	<b>pitää</b>			<b>pitävät</b>
		singular		plural

\* You will learn how to build and use forms like **pidetään** in Unit 5.

Thus 'I like coffee' is **M(in)ä pidä|n kahvi|sta**, and '(S)he likes gold' is **Hän/Se pitä|ä kulla|sta** (remember that the personal pronouns have full and cropped forms, and that **hän** is more formal than **se** when referring to people).

You should notice two things about these verb forms. One is nothing new: the **-t-** of **pitä-** is compressed to **-d-** whenever a 'tightlid' suffix is added. The other is the form for the third person. This form is made by lengthening the vowel at the end of the verb stem; contrast the form **on** of the verb **ole-** 'is', which you learned in the previous unit.

This lengthening is the regular ending of the third person present tense for all verbs other than **ole-** that end in a single vowel. Here are some more examples, given in



colloquial style:

<b>se etsi j</b>	(s)he is searching	<b>ne etsi j</b>	they are searching
<b>se näke e</b>	(s)he sees	<b>ne näke e</b>	they see
<b>se kestä ä</b>	it lasts	<b>ne kestä ä</b>	they last
<b>se puhu u</b>	(s)he speaks	<b>ne puhu u</b>	they speak
<b>se sano o</b>	(s)he says	<b>ne sano o</b>	they say

Since this notion of ‘lengthening of the preceding vowel’ is often useful in talking about Finnish, we shall use a symbol for it: #, and we shall refer to all the various forms of the third person suffix (-i, -e, -ä, -u, -o, etc.) as -#.

More formal Finnish has a distinct suffix for the third person plural: **-vAt**. Thus in more formal contexts you will hear and see:

<b>hän pitä ä</b>	(s)he likes, holds	<b>he pitä vät</b>	they like, hold
-------------------	--------------------	--------------------	-----------------

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_28</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_29</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 29

<b>hän puhu u</b>	(s)he speaks, talks	<b>he puhu vat</b>	they speak, talk
<b>hän näke e</b>	(s)he sees	<b>he näke vät</b>	they see

*Exercise 1* Here are the Finnish names of some things to like:

<b>kahvi</b>	coffee	<b>talvi e</b>	winter
<b>tee</b>	tea	<b>kesä</b>	summer
<b>viini</b>	wine	<b>syksy</b>	autumn
<b>viina</b>	spirits	<b>kevät</b>	spring (stem: <b>kevää!</b> )

Now put into Finnish:

- 1 I like coffee.
- 2 Do you like tea?
- 3 She likes spring(time).
- 4 I like spirits, he likes wine.
- 5 We like Finland.

*Exercise 2* To practise some of the verb forms introduced above, put the following into Finnish. Don't forget to compress consonants as necessary!

- 1 I say
- 2 We see
- 3 Do you (polite) like Paris?
- 4 They are talking (formal).
- 5 She is talking about (use **-stA**) Finland.

6 Do you see?

### Preferences

To state preferences such as ‘I prefer coffee’, you use the adverb **mieluummin** ‘more gladly’ with whatever verb is appropriate. So ‘I prefer coffee’ is **Mä juo|n mieluummin kahvia**, more literally ‘I drink coffee more gladly’. Study these examples:

**Mä pidän televisio|sta, mutta mä kuuntelen mieluummin radio|ta.**

‘I like television, but I prefer to listen to the radio.’

**Ne pitää vede|stä, mutta ne juo mieluummin viini|ä.**

‘They like water, but they prefer to drink wine.’

*Exercise 3* State your own preferences among the activities listed.

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_29	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_30	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 30

*Example:* **Mä pidän ranskasta, mutta mä puhun mieluummin ruotsia.**

‘I like French, but I prefer speaking Swedish.’

For now, don’t worry about the endings on the things drunk, eaten, and watched; these are explained later in this unit (direct objects).

- 1 drinking (**juo-**) water or milk (**maito**)
- 2 eating (**syö-**) fish or cheese (**juusto**)
- 3 watching (**katsele-**) television or listening to the radio
- 4 speaking English or Finnish
- 5 listening to the clarinet (**klarineti**) or the piano

### More on alternating stems: X-stems and Q-stems

The capital of Finland is **Helsinki**, and the Finnish word for ‘tyre’ is **rengas**. Now have a look at these two words in their genitive forms:

<b>Helsingi n historia</b>	the history of Helsinki
<b>renkaa n hinta</b>	the price of a tyre

### *X-stems*

In the previous unit you saw how the consonants of many Finnish words become compressed when certain suffixes are added, for example the **nk** of **Helsinki** becomes **ng** when the ‘tight-lid’ suffix **-n** is added: **Helsingi|n** ‘of Helsinki; Helsinki’s’.

For a noun like **rengas** ‘tyre’, whose stem ends in a consonant, the reverse scenario applies. The **-ng-** in this stem is *already compressed*, because the **s** at the end of the stem acts like a ‘tight lid’. When you add a tight-lid suffix to such a stem, the **s** changes to the vowel **A**, and since this provides more vowel space at the end of the stem, there is room for the **ng** to ‘decompress’ into its plain state **nk**. The genitive singular is therefore **renkaa|n**, and the elative (‘out of the/a tyre’) is **renkaa|sta**.

This alternation of **s** with **A** is characteristic of a large number of stems. We shall use the letter **X** to refer to the alternation **s/A** and shall refer to stems of this kind as *X-stems*. To save space and time in the vocabularies of each unit, we shall write **renkaX** instead of spelling out the citation form **rengas** and the genitive singular **renkaa|n**.

Here are a few more examples, with the citation and genitive singular forms listed together for you to compare. In each instance, the compressed consonants are in *italics*:

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_30	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_31	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 31

	‘comb’	‘tooth’	‘sun’	‘king’	‘war’	‘slow’
sN	kampa	hammas	aurinko	kuninga s	sota	hidas
sG	kamma n	hampaa n	auringo n	kuninkaa n	soda n	hitaa n
stem	kampa	hampaX	aurinko	kuninkaX	sota	hitaX

*Note on verbs.* Many verbs, too, end in **X**; this **X** behaves slightly differently from the **X** found in nouns. At this point you need only know that to the left of all of the suffixes you have met so far, it is read as **A**. Thus from the stem **haluX-** ‘wants’ you may form ‘I want’: **mä halua|n**. (In verbs ending in **XE**, **X** is read as **n**: from **kylmeXE-** we have **kylmenee** ‘it’s getting cold’. More on verb stems in the next unit.)

### *Q-stems*

There is a large set of words which—like **X-stems**—have a stem which ends in a

tight lid, but which—unlike X-stems, which end in **s** in the citation form—are written as if they ended in the vowel **e**. If you listen carefully, you will hear most Finns pronounce a consonant (glottal stop, in fact; see the section on pronunciation, page 7) after this **e**. We shall call these stems Q-stems, and write their final tight lid as Q when giving their stems in the vocabularies.

When a tight-lid suffix is added, the sequence eQ is read as **ee**. Consonant compression and decompression occur exactly as in the X-stems. Compare the forms (once again, compressed consonants are in italics):

	‘shore’	‘wrist’	‘custom’	‘need’	‘war’	‘rain’
sN	ranta	<i>rinne</i>	tapa	tarve	sota	<i>sade</i>
sG	ranna n	rintee n	tava n	tarpee n	soda n	satee n
stem	ranta	rinteQ	tapa	tarpeQ	sota	sateQ

**Exercise 4** To say ‘after the lesson’ you put the noun that means ‘lesson’, **tunti**, into the genitive and add the word **jälkeen**, thus **tunni|n jälkeen**. Develop your facility for Finnish stem-types while you learn how to say:

- |                   |                                  |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 after the sauna | <b>sauna</b>                     |
| 2 after the war   | <b>sota</b>                      |
| 3 after breakfast | <b>aamiainen</b>                 |
| 4 after the exam  | <b>koe</b> (stem: <b>kokeQ</b> ) |
| 5 after the break | <b>tauko</b>                     |

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_31</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_32</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 32

### *Direct objects*

<b>Mä juon kahvi/a.</b>	I’ll drink <i>some coffee</i> .
<b>Mä maksan lasku/n.</b>	I’ll pay <i>the bill</i> .

To say things like ‘I’ll drink some coffee’ or ‘I’ll pay the bill’ in Finnish, you have to know how to form the direct object. In the second example, you put the word for ‘bill’, **lasku**, into the genitive: **lasku|n**.

But the genitive will not do for the first example. This is because ‘some coffee’ refers to a vague amount of coffee, not a known, specific, finite, definite portion; and this is the sort of direct object which the genitive marks. Thus **Mä juon kahvi|n** would mean ‘I’ll drink the coffee’, where a specific portion—say, a particular cup of coffee, perhaps even already poured—is meant.

To express ‘some coffee’ you need to use the *partitive case*. To form this, see the next section.

### *How to form the (singular) partitive*

This case form is vital, but building it can be a bit complicated, so it's a good idea to start practising early. This section begins with a survey of the ways in which the partitive is formed. You should read these through with an aim to getting the general picture; don't bother trying to memorize them. The section to follow (Using the partitive) is a brief introduction to some of the uses of the partitive. Once you've read through to the end, do the exercises by referring back to this section.

We may think of the suffix of the partitive singular as **-tA**, with **A** standing, as always, for **a** and **ä** according to vowel harmony and with uppercase **T** standing for a **t** which is idiosyncratic in that it alternates with zero. The suffix thus has two subtypes, **-tA** and **-A**.

You can tell which subtype of this suffix to add, **-tA** or **-A**, by knowing the stem of the nominal to which you want to attach it.

The suffix is **-tA** if the stem ends in a long vowel or diphthong:

sN	sP	
<b>maa</b>	<b>maa ta</b>	earth, land
<b>kuu</b>	<b>kuu ta</b>	moon
<b>tie</b>	<b>tie tä</b>	road, way
<b>vapaa</b>	<b>vapaa ta</b>	free
<b>tienoo</b>	<b>tienoo ta</b>	region
<b>paluu</b>	<b>paluu ta</b>	return

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_32</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_33</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 33

<b>filee</b>	<b>filee tä</b>	fillet
<b>revvy</b>	<b>revvy tä</b>	(stage) revue
<b>korkea</b>	<b>korkea ta</b>	high

Stems that end in any single vowel other than **e** take **-A**:

<b>kala</b>	<b>kala a</b>	fish
<b>kesä</b>	<b>kesä ä</b>	summer
<b>talo</b>	<b>talo a</b>	house
<b>sähkö</b>	<b>sähkö ä</b>	electricity
<b>katu</b>	<b>katu a</b>	street
<b>levy</b>	<b>levy ä</b>	record, disk
<b>kasetti</b>	<b>kasetti a</b>	cassette

If a nominal stem ends in **e** (really **e**, and not **Q**!—see **Q**-stems, discussed above), you must examine the consonant to the left of this **e** in order to determine how to

proceed:

If that consonant is a single dental consonant (**s, t, T, n, l** or **r**, as mentioned on page 6) preceded by a vowel or by any of the consonants **n, l**, or **r**, delete the final **e** and add **-tA**. We'll refer to such stems as *dental stems*. Otherwise just add **-A**, leaving the stem-final **e** intact.

2 You can revise the nominative and genitive as you compare them with the partitive singular forms of the following nominals (compressed consonants in italics):

stem	vet	kiele	suure	suomalaise	ääne	kante	purte
sN	veti	kieli	suuri	suomalainen	ääni	kansi	pursi
sG	vet n	kiele n	suure n	suomalaise n	ääne n	kante n	purte n
sP	vet tä	kiel tä	suur ta	suomalais ta	ään tä	kant ta	pur ta
		'water'	'language'	'great'	'Finnish'	'voice'	'lid,
				(adj.)		'cover'	'sail'
stem	olu	Te	lahte	Suome	onne	järve	
sN	olut		lahti	Suomi	onni	järvi	
sG	olue n		lahde n	Suome n	onne n	järve n	
sP	olut ta		lahte a	Suome a	onne a	järve ä	
	'beer'		'bay'	'Finland'	'joy'	'lake'	

If the stem ends in a consonant, the suffix is **-tA**; Q is read as **t** and X is read as **s**:

stem	kirje	Q	hampa	X
sN	kirje		hammas	

[< previous page](#)

page\_33

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_34

[next page >](#)

Page 34

sG	kirjee n	hampaa n
sP	kirjet tä	hammas ta
	'letter'	'tooth'

This treatment of the formation of the partitive leaves rather a few loose ends, but these will be handled individually. For example, **lohi e** 'salmon' acts like a dental stem (**loh|ta**), and **lumi e** 'snow' not only acts like a dental stem but its **m** changes to **n** (**lun|ta**). All such deviations will be noted in the vocabulary lists.

**Exercise 5** To say 'before the lesson' you use the word **ennen** followed by the noun that means 'lesson', **tunti**, in the partitive, thus **ennen tunti|a**. Practise your partitives while you learn how to say:

- 1 before the sauna
- 2 before the war
- 3 before breakfast
- 4 before the exam

5 before the break

If you have forgotten any of the vocabulary, look back at exercise 4.

### Using the partitive

The partitive has an enormous range of uses, but they may all be placed under the headings incompleteness, vagueness, and negativity. What follows here is a checklist of the more important instances of these headings; further discussion will follow in appropriate sections, as indicated. For now, just read through this section to get a general idea of what the partitive is for.

The partitive singular marks:

- The greater bulk of something of which only a part is specified, e.g. **lasi olut|ta** ‘a glass of beer’, **kuudes helmikuu|ta** ‘the sixth of February’, **missä päin Helsinki|ä** ‘whereabouts in Helsinki?’, **vähäksi aika|a** ‘for a little while’. Here
- 1 we may also place **kolme poika|a** ‘three boys’, literally something more like ‘a threesome of boy’. Note the word order of this type of construction, with the word which is in the partitive second. For details, see Unit 7 (numerals) and Unit 9 (time expressions).
  - 2 The domain of which most prepositions (and some postpositions) are the specific: **ilman apu|a** ‘without assistance’, **ennen sota|a** ‘before the war’, **tie|tä pitkin** ‘along the road’. For more on prepositions and postpositions see Unit 9.

[< previous page](#)

page\_34

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_35

[next page >](#)

Page 35

- The outdone member of a comparison: **puu|ta kovempi** ‘harder than wood’,
- 3 **minu|a vanhempi** ‘older than me’. In this construction the word in the partitive comes first; you’ll learn more in Unit 8.
  - 4 An indefinite quantity or entity, e.g. **leipä|ä** ‘(some) bread’, contrast sN **leipä** ‘the bread; bread (in general); a(n) entire loaf of bread’.  
Any direct object which is not fully acted upon, even if it is itself a definite quantity and entity. Thus **Mä syön leipä|ä** can mean not only ‘I’m eating some bread’ but also ‘I’m eating the loaf (but haven’t finished).’ Here belong activities which have no specific goal or clear outcome, as in **Se rakastaa Irma|a** ‘(S)he loves Irma’, **Se raapii pää|tä|än** ‘He scratches his head’, **Mä ajan auto|a** ‘I’ll drive the car.’ Contrast **Mä ajan auto|n korjaamoon** ‘I’ll drive the car into the repair-shop’, an activity with a clear goal and an outcome whose success can be assessed.
  - 5 Any direct object whatsoever, if the verb is negated: **Mä en syö<sup>1</sup> leipä|ä** ‘I won’t eat any bread, I won’t eat the bread’, **Se ei maksa<sup>1</sup> lasku|a** ‘(S)he won’t pay the bill.’ For superscript letters see the Pronunciation Note on page 37.
  - 7 Indeterminacy in the subject, provided that the verb is negated: **Ei täällä asu<sup>k</sup>**

**ketään Pekka**<sub>a</sub>. ‘There’s no (one named) Pekka living here.’

**Exercise 6** You can’t speak an entire language, you can only speak parts of it. So it is not surprising that the direct object of ‘I speak Finnish’ is put into the partitive: **Mä puhun suomela**.

You already have met the names of many languages in section Unit 1: they are usually identical (but note that they are not capitalized) with the names of the countries in which they are spoken by the majority. Complete these sentences by supplying the partitive form of the appropriate language name.

- 1 András on unkarilainen; se puhuu\_\_.
- 2 Irma on kotoisin Italiasta; se puhuu\_\_.
- 3 Poliitikko on ruotsalainen; se puhuu\_\_.
- 4 Poliisi on ranskalainen; se puhuu\_\_.
- 5 Victor on kotoisin Hollannista; se puhuu\_\_.

**Exercise 7** Since the partitive marks direct objects which are not completely affected, one way to express the idea that someone is still in the middle of doing something is to put the direct object in the partitive. Thus:

[< previous page](#) [page\\_35](#) [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#) [page\\_36](#) [next page >](#)

Page 36

**Heikki maksaa lasku**<sub>a</sub>.

Heikki is paying the bill (right now; he hasn’t finished yet).

Use the following vocabulary to build similar sentences:

*Subjects:* **Jari, Anna, Jussi, Satu**

*Verbs*

<b>katso-</b>	looks at, watches	<b>luke-</b>	reads
<b>etsi-</b>	looks for	<b>kirjoitta-</b>	writes
<b>pese-</b>	washes	<b>kuuntele-</b>	listens to
<b>maala</b> <sub>X</sub>	paints	<b>syö-</b>	eats

*Direct objects:*

<b>omena</b>	apple	<b>kasetti</b>	cassette
<b>kynä</b>	pen	<b>postikortti</b>	postcard
<b>lattia</b>	floor	<b>levy</b>	record; disc
<b>lehti</b> e	newspaper	<b>talo</b>	house
<b>kirja</b>	book	<b>televisio</b>	television



### How to say 'no': the negative verb and its associates

At the beginning of this unit you learned that 'I like coffee' is **Mä pidän kahvista**. But what if you don't? You will want to be able to say 'I don't like coffee', and for this you need to know how to negate verbs in Finnish.

There are two parts. The first is the negative verb, **e-**; it is to this little stem that you attach the personal endings. Here is the paradigm for colloquial Finnish:

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>
1	<b>e n</b>		<b>e mme</b>
2	<b>e t</b>		<b>e tte</b>
3		<b>e i</b>	

Once again, one form serves for both singular and plural in the third person (more formal Finnish has plural **ei|vät**). Just the word **ei** on its own is used to mean 'no', as in **Ei, kiitos** 'No, thanks.'

The second part is called the *connegative*. To form this, you add the suffix **-Q** to the stem of whatever verb you want to negate. So,

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_36</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_37</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 37

the connegative of **pitä-** is **pidä** (with compression **t>d** because of the tight-lid suffix **-Q**; compare the **d** of **sade** 'rain' in the section on Q-stems, above).

Put the two parts together and you have a negated verb, for example:

**Mä en pidä kahvista.**

I don't like coffee.

Such a statement is a bit blunt, so it is best to preface it with something like **Anteeksi, mutta...** (Sorry, but...), or **Valitettavasti** (Unfortunately).

*Pronunciation note:* in the speech of most Finns, the **Q** at the end of the connegative copies any consonant to its right. It is as if we were to write **Mä en pidä<sup>k</sup> kahvista**.

Now have a look at these short dialogues:

**Juotko sä viiniä?**

**Ei, kiitos. Valitettavasti mä en pidä viinistä.**

Will you have (lit. drink) some wine?

No, thanks. Unfortunately I don't like wine.

**Otatko kahvia?**

**Ei, kiitos. Mä juon mieluummin teetä.**

Will you have (lit. take) some coffee?

No, thanks. I'd rather have some tea.

**Exercise 8** Write some short dialogues of your own, in which liked and disliked beverages and foods are offered and declined. Be as polite as you can by using **valitettavasti**, **anteeksi**, and **kiitos**.

### *The cardinal numerals and how to use them*

The basic cardinal numerals are:

- |    |   |
|----|---|
| 1  | <b>yksi</b> (stem: <b>yhte</b> )          |
| 2  | <b>kaksi</b> (stem: <b>kahte</b> )        |
| 3  | <b>kolme</b> (stem: <b>kolme</b> )        |
| 4  | <b>neljä</b>                              |
| 5  | <b>viisi</b> <i>te</i>                    |
| 6  | <b>kuusi</b> <i>te</i>                    |
| 7  | <b>seitsemän</b> (stem: <b>seitsemä</b> ) |
| 8  | <b>kahdeksan</b> (stem: <b>kahdeksa</b> ) |
| 9  | <b>yhdeksän</b> (stem: <b>yhdeksä</b> )   |
| 10 | <b>kymmenen</b> (stem: <b>kymmene</b> )   |

100 **sata**

1000 **tuhat** (stem: **tuhante**; sG **tuhanne**|n, sP **tuhat**|ta)

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_37	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_38	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 38

Notice the rather unexpected forms of the stems of the words for 'one', 'two', and 'seven' to 'ten'.

The teens are made by adding **+toista** to the names of the basic numerals: thus

‘eleven’ is **yksitoista** and ‘eighteen’ is **kahdeksantoista**.

To use the numerals with nouns, you put the noun which refers to the thing counted into the partitive singular. For example:

<b>kaksi talo a</b>	two houses
<b>kolme tyttö ä</b>	three girls
<b>neljä nime ä</b>	four names
<b>viisi suomalais ta</b>	five Finns

‘Twenty’ is **kaksi|kymmentä**, i.e. ‘two tens’: ‘two’ plus the partitive of **kymmenen** ‘ten’; note that the phrase is written together. Similarly:

**kolme|kymmentä|viisi** ‘thirty-five’

**neljä|kymmentä|seitsemän** ‘forty-seven’

**viisi|sataa|kuusi** ‘506’

**kahdeksan|sataa|neljä|toista** ‘814’

**tuhat|yhdeksän|sataa|kolme|kymmentä|seitsemän** ‘1937’

You’ll learn more about numerals in Units 7 and 11.

### *More on possession: how to say ‘I have a cat’*

You have already learned that to say something like ‘Irma’s cat’ in Finnish you must put the owner, Irma, into the genitive case: **Irma|n kissa**. In this section we shall be looking at how Finns express things like ‘Irma has a cat.’

From an English perspective it’s not at all straightforward, for Finnish doesn’t have a verb ‘to have’. What Finnish speakers do instead is this: they simply say that the possession ‘is’, and put the possessor into the adessive case (suffix **-lla**, attached just like the relative **-stA**). So ‘Irma has a cat’ is **Irma|lla on kissa**.

Here are some more examples:

<b>Lapse lla on koira.</b>	The child has a dog. ( <b>lapsi e</b> ‘child’; <b>koira</b> ‘dog’)
<b>Kaisa lla ei ole koira a.</b>	Kaisa doesn’t have a dog.
<b>Mei llä on aika a.</b>	We have time.
<b>Onko su lla aika a?</b>	Do you have time?
<b>Häne llä ei ole lasi a.</b>	(S)he doesn’t have a glass.
<b>Peka lla ei ole raha a.</b>	Pekka hasn’t any money.

Page 39

**Minu|lla on kaksi sisko|a.**

I have two sisters.

Notice the adessive forms of the personal pronouns: **mei|llä** for first person plural (and similarly, **tei|llä** and **hei|llä** for second and third persons plural); and **minu|lla** for first person singular (cropped form: **mu|lla**) and **sinu|lla** (**su|lla**) for second person singular. The (formal) third person singular pronoun **hän** is a dental stem: **häne|llä**. Informal **se** and **ne** have the adessives **si|llä** and **ni|llä**.

If both possessor and possession are thought of as concrete and inanimate, the possessor goes into the *inessive case*. This is formed with the suffix **-ssa**, which you attach just like the elative **-sta**.

**Tä|ssä ruua|ssa ei ole makua.**

This food has no flavour.

**Tä|ssä pöydä|ssä on vain kolme jalkaa.**

This table has only three legs.

Contrast:

**Mikä ero on sano|i|lla ‘järvi’ ja ‘lampi’?**

What difference do the words ‘järvi’ and ‘lampi’ have? (i.e., What’s the difference between ‘järvi’ and ‘lampi’?)

**Miksi si|llä tehtaa|lla on se nimi?**

Why does the factory have that name?

When the personal pronouns are the possession, they take the suffix **-t**, for example:

**Su|lla on aina minu|t.**

You’ll always have me.

You will learn more about this **-t** in Unit 5.

**Exercise 9** This exercise is designed to help you to acquire facility in discussing possession. The task is to convert, say, ‘Irma’s cat is white’ to ‘Irma has a white cat’ (or the reverse).

**Model:** **Irman kissa on valkoinen.**

### Irmalla on valkoinen kissa.

- 1 Presidentin auto on iso.
- 2 Onks sulla tummaa olutta?
- 3 Talossa on vihreä ovi.
- 4 Baarimikon vaimo on ruotsalainen.
- 5 Onko teillä pieni asunto? (Use Teidän for 'your'.)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_39](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_40](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 40

These further examples are chiefly for later reference, but don't be afraid to have a look at them now:

<b>Minu lla on parempi ajatus.</b>	I have a better idea.
<b>Minu lla on lippu ja.</b>	I have some tickets.
<b>Minu lla on lipu t.</b>	I have the tickets.
<b>Lipu t on minu lla.</b>	I have the tickets.
<b>Mu lla on sulle jo tain kiinnostava a.</b>	I have something interesting for you.
<b>Heil lä ei ole mi tään sanomis ta.</b>	They have nothing to say.
<b>Kuinka mon ta las ta tei llä on?</b>	How many children do you have?
<b>Rouva Salmise lla on suku a Ruotsissa.</b>	Mrs Salminen has family in Sweden.
<b>Häne llä on koko yö edessään.</b>	(S)he has the whole night ahead of him/her.
<b>Onko tei llä aivan oma sauna?</b>	Do you have your very own sauna?
<b>Jokaise lla on oma makunsa.</b>	Everyone has his/her own taste.
<b>Kaike lla on rajansa.</b>	Everything has its limits.
<b>Onks su lla mun osoitteeni?</b>	Do you have my address?
<b>Eikö häne llä ole velikin?</b>	Doesn't (s)he have a brother, as well?
<b>Onko tei llä kaikki muu t huonekalu t?</b>	Do you have all the rest of the furniture?
<b>Haluan että se on jo llaku lla.</b>	I want someone to have it.
<b>Häne llä on veitsi kädessään.</b>	(S)he has a knife in his/her hand.
<b>Sen miehe llä on suu kuin kala lla.</b>	Her husband has a mouth like a fish (has).

*Exercise 10* Say in Finnish:

- 1 (S)he has a lot of money (**raha**).
- 2 Pekka has many friends.
- 3 We have family (use **suku|a** 'some kin') in Lappi.
- 4 Do you have a dog?

**Exercise 11** Make up three sentences naming things you do and don't have. Use the **-lla ole-** construction, e.g. **Minulla ei ole omaa asuntoa, mutta mulla on rahaa pankissa.**

[< previous page](#) [page\\_40](#) [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#) [page\\_41](#) [next page >](#)

Page 41

**Exercise 12** Study this model:

**Minulla on radio, mutta siinä ei ole kelloa.**

I have a radio, but it doesn't have a clock/there's no clock in it.

The form **siinä** is the inessive of **se**. Use this to make up similar sentences on the model above. Take pairs from among the following words:

<b>auto</b>	car	<b>kuppi</b>	cup
<b>raha</b>	money	<b>lompakko</b>	billfold, wallet
<b>kahvi</b>	coffee	<b>musteQ</b>	ink
<b>postimerkki</b>	stamp	<b>bensiini</b>	petrol
<b>kynä</b>	pen	<b>kuori e</b>	envelope

### *Basic word order*

*The two basic word orders.* In Unit 1, you met one basic word order for declarative sentences, namely subject—verb—predicate, as in **Minä olen englantilainen** 'I am English'. Direct objects fit in the 'predicate' slot, e.g. **Minä syön voileivän** 'I'll eat a sandwich.'

In this unit, you have met the other basic word order, namely X—verb—subject, as in **M(in)ulla on kaksi kissaa** 'I have two cats.' The 'X' here can be any word or expression which refers to a person, place, or time. This word order is neutral and normal not only with sentences which express ownership, but also in any context in which the existence of the subject, i.e. the presence of the subject at that place and time, is more important than what the subject is doing.

[< previous page](#) [page\\_41](#) [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#) [page\\_42](#) [next page >](#)

Page 42

**3**  
**Ole hyvä!**

## Help yourself!

### In this unit you will learn:

- how to make, accept, and decline offers, and other common conversational formulae
- how to make requests and how to give commands (imperative)
- how to ask who, what, where, when, why
- how to use the first infinitive

### Language points

#### *Two short exchanges*

##### **Saisko olla kahvia?**

**Kiitos.**

Would you like some coffee?

Thanks.

**Ota kahvia.**

**Kiitos.**

Have some coffee.

Thanks.

#### *Making and accepting offers*

In the first exchange above, someone is offering his or her guest some coffee. Since it's *some* coffee, we have the partitive **kahvi***a*. The actual offering is being done by the little formulaic word

[< previous page](#)

page\_42

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_43

[next page >](#)

Page 43

**saisiko** (more colloquial variants include **saisko**, **saiskos**). This construction is always polite and thus never out of place.

The second exchange illustrates another common way of offering something,

especially food or drink. Once again, we have **kahvi** in the partitive; but this construction is different in that **ota** is a command: it is the imperative of the verb **ottaa**- ‘takes’. Later on in this unit you will find an outline of the various forms of the imperative and an overview of verbal stem types, but for now you should practise making various offers.

**Exercise 1** Write your own exchanges, in which you offer a friend some of the following, using **saisiko** and **ota**. (You can urge your friend to take more by inserting **vielä**: **Ota vielä piirakkaa!** ‘Have some more pie/pastry!’) Write the friend’s replies, either accepting (**Kiitos kyllä, Kyllä kiitos**) or declining (**Kiitos ei, Ei kiitos**). Declining can be brusque, so mitigation is often given, for example: **Kiitos ei, syön hyvin vähän makeaa** ‘Thank you no, I eat very little (that is) sweet’ or **Juon hyvin vähän viiniä** ‘I drink very little wine’.

<b>mehu</b>	juice	<b>tee</b>	tea
<b>viini</b>	wine	<b>sokeri</b>	sugar
<b>juusto</b>	cheese	<b>kerma</b>	cream
<b>kakku</b>	cake	<b>maito</b>	milk

#### *A few more short exchanges*

**Saisinko voileivän?**

**Totta kai!**

Could I have a sandwich?

(Indeed you may.) (i.e. ‘Yes.’)

**Saanko sokeria?**

**Olkaa hyvä.**

May I have some sugar?

Here you are. (or: Help yourself.)

To request something, you use **saa|n|ko**, or, more polite, **sajisi|n|ko**. These are both first-person forms of the verb **saa**- ‘gets’ and would translate literally into something like ‘May I (get)?’ and ‘Might I (get)?’. (You’ll find out about the **isi** of **sajisi|n|ko** in Unit 10.) The thing requested is the direct object of the sentence, and is therefore

[< previous page](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_43

page\_44

[next page >](#)

[next page >](#)



put into the accusative (which, so far, is the same as the genitive; but see below) or the partitive.

It is put into the accusative (i.e., the genitive) if it is a whole, individual, countable, self-contained thing such as a sandwich (**voileivä|n**, lit. 'butter bread', above); it is put into the partitive if it is stuff which comes in various indefinite quantities, like sugar (**sokeri|a** above). The difference is basically one of whole versus part, and English usually handles this with 'a(n)' or 'the' versus 'some':

**Saisinko lasi|n?** May I have *a* glass or May I have *the* glass?  
**Saisinko vet|tä?** May I have *some* water?

Compare

**Saisinko lasi|a?** (at the glazier's) May I have *some* glass?

**Exercise 2** Write your own short exchanges, in which you request the following, using the genitive or partitive direct object form as appropriate. Have your interlocutor accede, either with **Totta kai!** (Yes indeed) or **Olkaa hyvä,** a formula you use whenever you hand anything to anyone.

<b>sämpylä</b>	roll	<b>leipä</b>	bread
<b>kahvi</b>	coffee	<b>lusikka</b>	spoon
<b>voi</b>	butter	<b>lautanen</b> <i>se</i>	plate
<b>hillo</b>	jam	<b>suola</b>	salt

### *Issuing commands: the imperative*

At the beginning of this unit, you learned that **ota** 'take!' is grammatically an imperative. This section shows you how to make imperative verb forms.

There are two forms commonly used, singular and plural. As in other tenses and moods of the verb, you use the plural form when talking to more than one friend, or to be polite when speaking to one or more relative strangers; you use the singular form only when talking to one friend.

The suffixes of these two types of imperative are **-Q** for the singular and **-kAA** for the plural. Study the imperatives of these four verbs:

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_44	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_45	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 45

<i>Stem</i>	<i>Imperative</i>		<i>English</i>
<b>otta-</b>	<b>ota!</b>	singular	Take!
	<b>otta kaa!</b>	plural/formal	

<b>tilaX-</b>	<b>tilaa!</b>	singular	Order!
	<b>tilat kaa!</b>	plural/formal	
<b>mene-</b>	<b>mene!</b>	singular	Go!
	<b>men kää!</b>	plural/formal	
<b>vie-</b>	<b>vie!</b>	singular	Take (away)!
	<b>vie kää!</b>	plural/formal	

As these forms show, adding **-Q** to a verb stem can have two kinds of effect. It compresses consonants (e.g. the **tt>t** in **ota!**) and it changes **X** to **A** (e.g. the second **a** of **tilaa!**).

On the other hand, the suffix of the plural imperative **-kAA** causes no compression (since by virtue of its shape it is not a tight lid) and it changes **X** to **t** (e.g. **tilat|kaa!**). It also deletes any **e** at the end of a verb stem, provided that this **e** is preceded by **l**, **n**, **r**, or **s**, as in **men|kää**, above.

Before you begin to practise using verbs in the imperative, a word about direct objects is in order. So far, you have seen that a direct object that is conceived of as complete is put in the accusative (=genitive), e.g. **Mä syön voileivä|n** 'I'll eat the sandwich', but is put into the partitive if only part is affected or the activity is vague in some way, e.g. **Mä syön leipä|ä** 'I'll eat some bread.'

In imperative sentences, things are slightly different. The partitive is used in the same way, e.g. **Syö leipä|ä!** 'Eat some bread!'; but the accusative which marks the complete direct object of an imperative verb does not resemble the genitive. Instead, it is identical with the citation form, e.g. **Syö voileipä!** 'Eat the sandwich!'

The personal pronouns are yet another matter. These are put in the partitive if the activity is incomplete or vague, e.g. **Auta minu|a!** 'Help me!' (**autta-** 'helps'); but they take their own special suffix, **-t**, when they are complete objects or the activity is easily assessed or measured, e.g. **Vie minu|t ulos!** 'Take me outside!'

Don't worry too much about all these details just now; they will coalesce in your mind as you work through other points, and all will be revised in Unit 5. For now, have a look at a few more examples of direct objects with the imperative:

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_45	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_46	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 46

### *Complete direct objects*

<b>Täyttä kää tämä lomake!</b>	Fill in this form! ( <b>täyttä</b> 'fills', <b>lomakkeQ</b> 'form to be filled in')
<b>Avaa suu!</b>	Open (your) mouth! ( <b>avaX-</b> 'opens', <b>suu</b> 'mouth')
<b>Sammuta lamppu!</b>	Turn out the lamp! ( <b>sammutta-</b>

‘extinguishes’, **lamppu** ‘lamp’)

*Incomplete direct objects*

<b>Avaa suu ta vähän enemmän!</b>	Open your mouth a little more!
<b>Tuo kuuma a vet tä!</b>	Bring some hot water! ( <b>tu-</b> ‘brings’, <b>kuuma</b> ‘hot’)
<b>Seuraa hän tä!</b>	Follow him! ( <b>seuraX-</b> ‘follows’)

**Exercise 3** To practise what you have learned, try telling first a friend, then a relative stranger to do the following things. Remember to soften the command by telling them to ‘be good’: **Ole hyvä** (singular and informal) or **Olkaa hyvä** (plural and/or formal).

Tell him/her to

- 1 follow you
- 2 bring some juice
- 3 open the door (**ovi e**)
- 4 close (**sulke-**) the window (**ikkuna**)
- 5 put (**pane-**) the cat out
- 6 fetch (**hake-**) a doctor
- 7 take the television away (**pois**)
- 8 eat some cake
- 9 help the police  
forget (**unohta-**) it

**Prohibition**

To tell someone not to do something, you need the negative imperative, or prohibitive. Like the negative forms you have met so far, this is made of two parts.

For the singular prohibitive, you use **älä** followed by the connegative, a form you already know. Since the verb is negative, *any* direct object will be in the partitive, whether incomplete or not:

**Älä mene!** Don’t go!  
**Älä syö leipä|ä!** Don’t eat any bread! or Don’t eat the bread!

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_46](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_47](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 47

**Älä suutu!** Don’t be (lit. ‘get’) angry! (**suuttu-** ‘becomes angry’)

To build the plural prohibitive, you use **älkää** instead of **älä**, and add **-ko** to the

main verb, instead of the usual connegative **-Q**. The plural prohibitives corresponding to the examples above are therefore:

**Älkää menkö!**

**Älkää syökö leipää!**

**Älkää suuttuko!**

*Tip:* Notice that the suffixes of the connegative and of the singular imperative are identical in shape: they are both **-Q**, a tight-lid suffix. Another pair of lookalikes is the **-kO** used to form the plural prohibitive and the **-kO** which makes yes/no questions; since **-kO** is not a tight-lid shape, these suffixes do not cause compression. Compare:

**Ota viiniä!** 'Have some wine!' (pronounce: 'otav viiniä')

**Älä ota viiniä!** 'Don't have any wine!' (pronounce: 'otav viiniä')

**Ota|tte|ko viiniä?** 'Will you have some wine?' (plural)

**Älkää otta|ko viiniä!** 'Don't have any wine!' (plural)

**Exercise 4** Practise both singular and plural prohibitions by redoing the previous exercise, but this time prohibiting rather than issuing commands: say 'Don't follow me!', etc.

**Exercise 5** Get Finns talking about something by asking them to tell (**kerto-**) about (use the elative **-stA**) it. For example: **Kerro Suomen talvesta!** 'Tell (me) about the Finnish winter!' (lit. '... Finland's winter'). For such purposes you can turn any verb into a noun by adding **=minen (=mise-)** to the stem. Example: **Kerro jotain saunomisesta** 'Tell (me) something about going in the sauna' (**sauno-** 'uses the sauna')

Here are some topics to get you started:

Helsingin historia

hiihto ('skiing') Suomessa

urheilu ('sport') Suomessa

[< previous page](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_47

page\_48

[next page >](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 48

*Asking who, what, when, where, and why*

You form this type of question by first saying the question word, then the rest of the sentence. Notice that Finnish doesn't invert the way English does:

<b>Kuka se on?</b>	Who is it? (lit. Who it is?)
<b>Milloin se saapuu?</b>	When does it/(s)he arrive? (lit.: When it arrives?)
<b>Mitä sä sanot?</b>	What are you saying?
<b>Mitä ne ottaa?</b>	What'll they have (lit. 'take')?
<b>Miksi te lähdette?</b>	Why are you (plural or formal) leaving?
<b>Missä ne asuu?</b>	Where do they live?
<b>Minne ne menee?</b>	Where are they going?
<b>Mistä se tulee?</b>	Where does it come from?

Study these further examples in order to become more familiar with the pattern and to pick up some more useful vocabulary:

<b>Kuka puuttuu?</b>	Who's missing?
<b>Mistä ne puhuu?</b>	What are they talking about?

### **Mitä sä teet joka aamu, ennen kun lähdet kotoa?**

What do you do every morning before you leave the house?

<b>Milloin se tulee takaisin?</b>	When is it/(s)he coming back?
<b>Miksi ne menee pois?</b>	Why are they going away?
<b>Se tietää, kuka sä olet.</b>	(S)he knows who you are.

The most frequently used question words are the various forms of **kuka**, which is used of people, and **mikä**, which is used of things. Both of these words have slightly irregular paradigms; they keep their second syllable (*kuka*, *mikä*) only if they would otherwise become monosyllabic, and **kuka** switches to *ke(ne)*- for all cases except the citation form. Here are the case forms you have met so far, listed alongside a few personal pronouns and a noun, for comparison and revision:

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_48	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_49	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 49

	<i>what</i>	<i>who</i>	<i>I, me</i>	<i>(s)he</i>	<i>it; (s)he</i>	<i>house</i>
sN	mi kä	kuka	m(in)ä	hän	se	talo
sG	mi n kä	kene n	m(in)u n	häne n	se n	talo n
sP	mi tä	ke tä	m(in)u a	hän tä	si tä	talo a
sELA	mi stä	kene stä	m(in)u sta	häne stä	si tä (!)	talo sta
sADE	mi llä	kene llä	m(in)u lla	häne llä	si llä	talo lla
sACC	*	kene t	m(in)u t	häne t	*	*

\* Remember that the accusative forms of **mi|kä** and **se**, like those of all nouns in the singular (like **talo** ‘house’), are identical to either their genitive or their nominative singular.

### *Where are you now? Where are you (coming) from?*

As the sentences in the previous section illustrate, the Finnish equivalents of English ‘where’ are actually case forms of the word for ‘what?’, **mikä**:

‘from where’ is simply the elative, **mi|stä**, as in **Mistä sä olet kotoisin?** ‘Where are you from?’ Compare **Mistä maasta sä olet kotoisin?** ‘What country are you from?’, more literally: ‘From-what from-country you are by-domicile?’

‘(located) where’ is in a case called the *inessive*, with tight-lid suffix **-ssa**.  
Examples: **Mi|ssä sä asut?** ‘Where do you live?’, **Mi|ssä kaupungissa sä asut?** ‘In what city do you live?’, **Mä asun Lontoo|ssa** ‘I live in London.’

‘(going to) where’ is in a case called the *illative*. You will learn how to form and use the illative in the next unit.

**Exercise 6** Put these sentences into Finnish. All the vocabulary you need is in the back of the book (and some is already in your head):

- 1 He is arriving from Turku.
- 2 They live in Helsinki.
- 3 They’re waiting outside.
- 4 What does she say?
- 5 Where do you (plural or formal) live?
- 6 Where do they sleep?
- 7 Why are you waiting?

[< previous page](#)

page\_49

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_50

[next page >](#)

Page 50

- 8 When do we leave?
- 9 Who is coming?
- 10 They know where we live.

**Exercise 7** What if you don’t know the answer? If you are asked something you don’t know about, you’ll want to say either **Mä en tiedä sitä** ‘I don’t know it’ (if it’s a matter of facts) or **Mä en tunne sitä** ‘I don’t know him/her’ if it’s the more complex matter of people. Since the verb is negated, you specify what or who it is you don’t know by putting it into the partitive, for example:

**Mikä sen nimi on?**

What is her/his name?

**Valitettavasti mä en tiedä sen nimeä.** Unfortunately, I don't know her/his name.

Now reply to these questions by saying you don't know the answer. To soften the blow, insert **valitettavasti** 'unfortunately' or **Mä olen pahoillani** 'I'm sorry'.

- 1 Mikä sen osoite on? (**osoitteQ** 'address')
- 2 Mikä sen puhelinnumero on? (**puhelin|numero** 'telephone number')
- 3 Minkälainen ihminen sen isä on? (**minkälainen** 'what kind of?' **ihminen** i.e. 'human being, person')
- 4 Minkä näköinen sen poika on? (**Minkä näköinen X on?** 'What does X look like?')
- 5 Minkälainen ihminen sen vaimo on? (**vaimo** 'wife')

**Exercise 8** More practice with the imperative. Ask a new acquaintance (with whom you are still on formal terms) to:

- 1 Say something in Finnish (**suome|ksi**).
- 2 Say something about Helsinki.
- 3 Read it to you.
- 4 Sit down.
- 5 Write you a postcard.
- 6 Wait outside (**ulkona**).

**Exercise 9** Ask the same things as in the previous exercise, this time of a friend (i.e., using the singular forms).

**Exercise 10** 'Do you mind if I listen to the radio?'—'Not at all, carry on!' To encourage someone to go ahead and do something, you use the imperative plus **vaan**.

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_50](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_51](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 51

*Model*

**Häiritseekö, jos poltan?**

Do you mind (lit. 'Does it disturb') if I smoke?

**Ei häiritse. Polttakaa vaan!**

Not at all (lit. 'It does not disturb'). Carry on and smoke.

Here are some more things people might want to do. Supply the missing Finnish

imperatives:

- 1 kuuntelen radiota
- 2 sammutan lampun
- 3 avaan ikkunan
- 4 imuroin (**imuroi-** 'hoovers')
- 5 otan tän ('this') tuolin

**Exercise 11** Encourage a stranger to carry on doing the same things as in the previous exercise.

### *The first infinitive*

Yes, Finnish has more than one infinitive, but they are all easy to form if you know the shape of the verb stem. The first infinitive is the most common one in Finnish, and it has more than one English equivalent. A few examples will illustrate the more common uses: 'I want *to go* outside', 'I'm in the habit *of reading* the newspaper in the morning', 'You mustn't *smoke* in a hospital.' More on the uses of the infinitive later on in this unit, and in Unit 10.

You form the first infinitive by adding the suffix **-TAQ** directly to the verb stem. Like the partitive suffix **-TA**, the **t** at the beginning of the first infinitive suffix is idiosyncratic in that it alternates with zero.

You use the **t**-less variant, **-AQ**, if the verb stem ends in any single vowel other than **e**:

<b>sano a</b>	to say	<b>kysy ä</b>	to ask
<b>tietä ä</b>	to know	<b>etsi ä</b>	to search for
<b>saapu a</b>	to arrive		

The **t**-less variant is also used with verbs which end in **e** preceded by any consonant save **n, l, r, s**, or **X**. Actually, there aren't many verbs of this description; the most common ones are:

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_51	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_52	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 52

<b>luke a</b>	reads	<b>lähte ä</b>	leaves, departs
<b>hake a</b>	fetches, seeks;	<b>koke a</b>	experiences
	applies for	<b>kylpe ä</b>	bathes
<b>päte ä</b> is	valid		



From here on, we'll label verbs which belong to these two sets as *class I*.

Otherwise you use **-TAQ**. When this suffix is attached to a verb stem which ends in a long vowel or diphthong (hereafter: *class IV*), the **t** of **-TAQ** compresses to **d** because of the tight-lid **Q** to its right:

<b>saa da</b>	to get
<b>syö dä</b>	to eat
<b>imuroi da</b>	to Hoover

When attached to a verb stem ending in **e** preceded by **n, l, r, s** (hereafter: *class III*), the **e** is deleted. Of the resulting clusters, **nt, lt, rt** (but not **st**, which is immune) are compressed by the **Q** at the end. Here's a step-by-step presentation of the formation of these infinitive forms:

<i>Stem</i>	<i>After</i>	<i>Actual</i>	<i>Com-</i>	<i>English</i>
<i>+suffix</i>	<i>e-deletion</i>	<i>form</i>	<i>pression</i>	
mene-tAQ	>mentäQ	>men nä	nt>nn	goes
opiskele-tAQ	>opiskeltaQ	>opiskel lalt>ll		studies
pure-tAQ	>purtaQ	>pur ra	rt>rr	bites
pääse-tAQ	>päästäQ	>pääs tä	(none)	manages to get (somewhere)

All other verbs (*class II*) follow their own set of rules. These are verbs whose stems end in **X, TSE, or XE**. To the left of the first infinitive suffix **-TAQ**, these final elements all change to **t**:

X	>t
TSE	>t
XE	>t

The resulting double **tt** is then compressed to **t**. Examples:

haluX-tAQ	>haluttaQ	>haluta	wants
mainiTSE-tAQ	>mainittaQ	>mainita	mentions
tarviTSE-tAQ	>tarvittaQ	>tarvita	needs
kylmeXE-tAQ	>kylmettäQ	>kylmetä	grows cold

[< previous page](#)

page\_52

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_53

[next page >](#)

Page 53

Finally, the verbs 'sees' and 'does' are irregular: their infinitives are **näh|dä, teh|dä**.

*Exercise 12* One good way to firm up your knowledge of the rules given above is to

run them backwards. (That's exactly what you'll have to do in order to use Finnish dictionaries, since these list verbs in the first infinitive.) Notice that knowing the rules won't work with class II verbs: you can't tell, from an infinitive like **mainita**, whether its stem ends in =**X**, =**TSE**, or =**XE**.

Give the stems for these first infinitives:

- |   |          |
|---|----------|
| 1 | kieltää  |
| 2 | niellä   |
| 3 | tuoda    |
| 4 | reagoida |
| 5 | sanoa    |

### *Using the first infinitive: introducing modals*

You can simply say that you're going to buy a map (**mä ostan karta|n**), or you can fine-tune your statement by saying things such as 'I may buy a map', or 'I want to buy a map', or 'I'm thinking of buying a map'. We call such constructions modal expressions, and the verbs used to form them, modal verbs.

There are two basic types of modal construction in Finnish. In the first type, the subject goes in the nominative just as in a simple sentence, and the modal verb agrees with it; the verb that expresses what it is you may do, or want to do, or intend to do is in the infinitive. Common modal verbs are **voi-** 'is able', **haluX-** 'wants', and **taita-** 'is capable; probably is/does':

**Ne voi ol|la oikea|ssa.**

They can be right (lit. 'in right') (=It's possible they're right.)

**Mä haluan osta|a uude|n auto|n.**

I want to buy a new car.

**Pekka taitaa tul|la kotiin aika myöhään.**

Pete may come home fairly late.

**Sä et taida tunte|a sitä.**

You must not know him/her (*or*: You probably don't know him/her; *or*: I guess you don't know him/her.)

[< previous page](#)

page\_53

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_54

[next page >](#)

Other examples of modals which form this construction are **ajattele-** ‘think (of doing)’, **aiko-** ‘intend’, **osaX-** ‘know how (to do)’, and three very common verbs which are often used in the negative, **ehti-** ‘have time (to do)’, **jaksa-** ‘have strength or stamina (to do)’, **viitsi-** ‘feel like (doing)’, as in **Se ei ehdi näh|dä kaikkea** ‘(S)he doesn’t/won’t have time to see everything’, **Mä en jaksa enää kuunnella tätä ohjelmaa** ‘I can’t stand listening to this programme any more’, **Etkös viitsi jää|dä vielä?** ‘Don’t you feel like staying (=couldn’t you stay) a little longer?’

You will learn the second type of modal construction in Unit 10.

**Exercise 13** To say that one is not allowed to do something, you use the structure **ei saa** plus the first infinitive, e.g. **Sairaalassa ei saa polttaa** ‘One is not allowed to smoke in a hospital.’ To express ‘one shouldn’t’ you use **ei pitäis**, as in **Ravintolassa ei pitäis nukkua** ‘One shouldn’t sleep in a restaurant.’ To express impossibility, you use **voi-**: **Ilman vettä ei voi elää** ‘One cannot live without water.’ Match up activities (verbs) and circumstances which are mutually inappropriate, then specify why by using **ei voi**, **ei saa**, or **ei pitäis** with the first infinitive. Here is some vocabulary to start you off:

<b>veneessä</b>	in a boat	<b>ravintolassa</b>	in a restaurant
<b>ennen</b>	before	<b>ilman</b>	without a driver’s
<b>uimista</b>	swimming	<b>ajokorttia</b>	licence
<b>hyppi-</b>	hops, jumps about	<b>syö-</b>	eats
<b>huuta-</b>	shouts	<b>aja-</b>	drives

**Exercise 14** One of the many uses of English ‘must’ is to convey the idea that we feel certain, on the basis of evidence or gut feeling, that something is the case: ‘You must be tired’ expresses commiseration, not a command. This kind of ‘must’ is conveyed by Finnish **taita-**, e.g. **Sä taidat olla väsynyt** ‘You must be tired.’

Practise this construction by putting these into Finnish:

- 1 She must be Swedish.
- 2 They must have a big house.
- 3 You (plural/formal) must need (**tarviTSE-**) some coffee.

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_54](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_55](#)

[next page >](#)

## Getting around and about

### In this unit you will learn:

- how to get about: giving and understanding directions
- how to say where people and things are, where they're from, and where they're going
- about communicating at the post office, in bars, at train stations, and at passport control

### Dialogue 1

#### *Kadulla*

#### On the street

*In the street, Nigel asks a stranger, in this case a native of Helsinki (**helsinkiiläinen**) for directions.*

NIGEL: Anteeksi, voisitteko sanoa, missä rautatieasema on?

HELSINKILÄINEN: Hetkinen...se on tuolla, tuon suuren talon takana. Menkää tästä yli ja sitten kääntykää oikealle sanomalehtikojun edestä.

NIGEL: Onko se kaukana?

HELSINKILÄINEN: Ei ole, sinne on vain noin 300 (kolme sataa) metriä.

NIGEL: Kiitoksia paljon.

HELSINKILÄINEN: Ei kestä.

NIGEL: *Excuse me, could you tell me where the railway station is?*

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_55	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_56	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 56

HELSINKILÄINEN: *Hmm...It's over there, behind that big building. Cross over here and then turn to the right in front of the newsstand.*

NIGEL: *Is it far?*

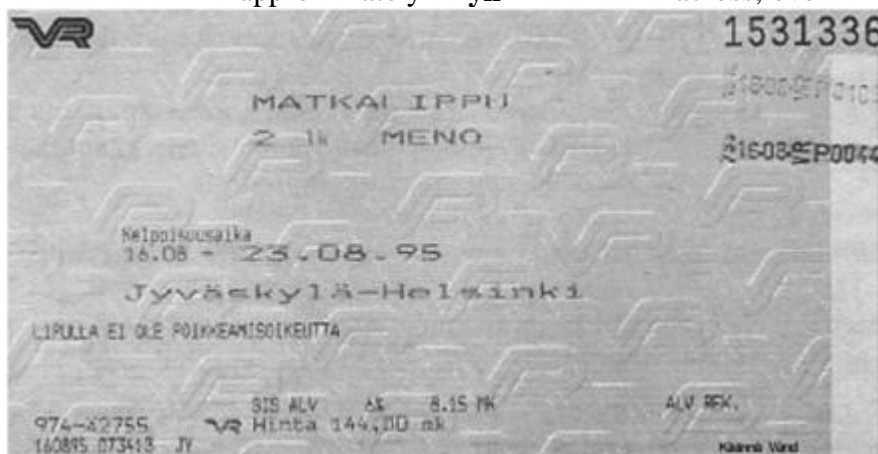
HELSINKILÄINEN: *No, it's only about 300 metres.*

NIGEL: *Thanks very much.*

HELSINKILÄINEN: *Don't mention it.*

### Vocabulary

<b>anteeksi</b>	excuse me	<b>oikealle</b>	to the right
<b>edestä</b>	(X n <b>edestä</b> ) in front of X	<b>rautatieasema</b>	railway station
<b>Ei kestä</b>	You're welcome/ Don't mention it.	<b>sano-</b>	says
<b>hetkinen</b> <i>se</i>	moment	<b>sanomalehti</b>	newspaper
<b>kaukana</b>	far away	<b>sinne</b>	(to) there
<b>Kiitoksia paljon!</b>	Many thanks!	<b>sitten</b>	then
<b>koju</b>	booth, small stand	<b>takana</b>	(X n <b>takana</b> ) behind X
<b>käänty</b>	turns	<b>tuolla</b>	there
<b>metri</b>	metre	<b>tästä</b>	this way, via here
<b>missä</b>	where?	<b>vain</b>	only
<b>noin</b>	about, approximately	<b>voisitteko</b>	Could you...?
		<b>yli</b>	across, over



[< previous page](#)

[page\\_56](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_57](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 57

Here are the types of trains you will probably encounter:

**kiitojuna** more commonly called an **intercity**; long-distance train

**henkilöjuna** passenger train (as opposed to goods train, **tavarajuna**)

**pikajuna** long-distance, stopping at main stations

**paikallisjuna** local service; stops at all stations

Other useful train vocabulary includes:

<b>info</b>	information office
<b>matkustaja</b>	passenger
<b>tulo</b>	arrival
<b>lähtö</b>	departure
<b>matka tavara säilytys</b>	baggage room
<b>ravintola vaunu</b>	restaurant car
<b>odotus huone</b>	waiting room
<b>konduktööri</b>	conductor; officially: <b>junailija</b>
<b>häätäjarru</b>	emergency brake
<b>meno-paluu lippu</b>	return (round-trip) ticket
<b>meno lippu</b>	single (one-way) ticket
<b>makuu vaunu</b>	sleeping car
<b>laituri</b>	platform
<b>raide</b> (stem: <b>raiteQ</b> )	track

Some signs you are likely to see at railway stations:

LÖYTÖ TAVARAT	Lost and found
PAIKALLISLIPPUJA	Local tickets
KAUKOLIIKENNE	Long-distance traffic
VAIN PARRANAJOKONETTA VARTEN	For shavers only!
SAAPUVAT	Arriving (trains)
LÄHTEVÄT	Departing (trains)
MIESTEN HUONE	Men's WC
NAISTEN HUONE	Women's WC

And here are some phrases that will come in handy:

<b>Matkustan junalla.</b>	I'll travel by train.
<b>Miltä asemalta juna lähtee?</b>	From what station does the train leave?
<b>Miltä raiteelta juna lähtee?</b>	From what track does the train leave?
<b>Mille raiteelle saapuu juna Jyväskylästä?</b>	At what track is the train from Jyväskylä arriving?

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_57](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_58](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 58

<b>Miten pääsen asemalle?</b>	How can I get to the station?
<b>Viekkää minut rautatieasemalle.</b>	Take me to the railway station.
<b>Milloin seuraava juna lähtee Turkuun?</b>	When does the next train leave for Turku?
<b>Onko aikaisempaa/myöhempää</b>	Is there an earlier/later train, at

<b>junaa?</b>	all?
<b>Mistä saa aikataulun?</b>	(From) where can I (lit. 'does one') get a timetable?
<b>Onko tämä paikka vapaa/varattu?</b>	Is this seat (lit. 'place') free/reserved?
<b>Saanko avata ikkunan?</b>	May I open the window?
<b>Sulkekaa ovi!</b>	Close the door!

Once on board and underway, you will probably meet the **konduktööri**, who will call out:

**Liput, olkaa hyvät!** Tickets, please!

More useful phrases on board:

<b>Pysähtyykö tämä juna X:ssä?</b>	Does this train stop at X?
<b>Montako minuuttia vielä on junan lähtöön?</b>	How many minutes (are there) still until the train's departure?
<b>Montako minuuttia juna seisoo?</b>	How long will the train be stopping?
<b>Montako tuntia matka kestää?</b>	How many hours does the journey take?
<b>Monesko asema X on?</b>	How many stations does this make? (lit. 'This is the what-th station?')
<b>Koska saavumme Turkuun?</b>	When do we arrive in Turku?
<b>Milloin tullaan perille?</b>	When do we (lit. 'does one') arrive?
<b>Onko juna ajassaan?</b>	Is the train on time?
<b>Pitääkö vaihtaa junaa?</b>	Is it necessary to change train(s)?
<b>Juna saapuu aikataulun mukaan.</b>	The train is arriving according to timetable.
<b>Me ollaan perillä.</b>	We are there (= 'We've arrived.', lit. 'One is...')

JYVÄSKYLÄ-TAMPERE-TURKU													VOIMASSA 28.5.-31.12.1996		
Juna nro	P102	P104	JZ 90	P106	P108	P110	P112	JZ 92	P114	P94	P98	P116	P96/P120	M-F, S Tpe-Tku	[R] = LISÄMAKSULLINEN JUNA JZ = INTERCITY P = PIKAJUNA - = JUNAN VAIHTO O = TULOAIKA M = MAANANTAI P = PERJANTAI L = LAUJANTAI S = SUNNUNTAI Jy = JYVÄSKYLÄ Tpe = TAMPERE Tku = TURKU
Kulussa	M	M-S	M-L	M-S	M-S	M-S	M-S	M-S	M-S	S	P	M-S	M-S Jy-Tpe		
Jyväskylä		4.15	8.10	8.10	11.08	13.14	14.18	15.30	16.44	17.57	18.19		20.22		
Jämsä		4.50	8.39	8.44	11.44	13.50	14.49	16.01	17.16	18.30	18.56		20.58		
Orivesi		5.27	7.13	9.21	12.21	14.27	15.26	16.31	17.53	18.34			21.34		
Tampere	O	5.55	7.38	9.47	12.47	14.53	15.52	16.54	18.19	19.29	20.00		21.59		
Tampere		5.50	8.55		10.00	12.57	15.03	16.31		18.29		20.57	22.03		
Toijala	O	6.15	7.22		10.24	13.22	15.29	16.58		18.56		21.23	22.29		
Huopilahti	O	7.57			10.57	13.53	15.57	17.29		19.26		21.54	23.00		
Loimaa	O	8.54	8.13		11.13	14.07	16.15	17.46		19.43		22.08	23.15		
Turku	O	7.42	8.57		11.54	14.46	16.56	18.28		20.32		22.50	23.56		
Turku satama	O		19.17					118.42		120.41					

TURKU-TAMPERE-JYVÄSKYLÄ													voimassa 18.8-19.8		
Juna nro	P99	P101	JZ 93	P103	P105	P07	P93	P109/JZ 95	P111	P97	P113/P99	P115	P117	M-S	[R] = LISÄMAKSULLINEN JUNA JZ = INTERCITY P = PIKAJUNA - = JUNAN VAIHTO O = TULOAIKA M = MAANANTAI P = PERJANTAI L = LAUJANTAI S = SUNNUNTAI Jy = JYVÄSKYLÄ Tpe = TAMPERE Tku = TURKU
Kulussa	M (Määrä)	M-S	M-L	M-S	M-S	M-S	P	M-S	M-P, S	P	P	M-S	M-S		
Turku satama				8.45	12.56			15.33	17.00		19.26	20.41	21.40		
Turku		7.00		8.58	9.58	13.40		16.17	17.45		19.37	20.53	21.51		
Loimaa		7.42		9.40	10.39	13.40		16.17	17.45		20.21	21.40	22.43		
Huopilahti		7.56		9.54	10.56	13.53		16.31	18.00		20.35	21.55	23.00		
Toijala		8.24		10.23	11.25	14.21		17.00	18.29		21.04	22.32	23.28		
Tampere	O	8.50		10.49	11.51	14.47		17.27	18.56		21.21	22.58	23.56		
Tampere		8.18	9.00	10.05	11.03	12.03	15.00	16.10	17.32	19.08	20.40	22.20	23.20		
Orivesi		8.44	8.28	11.29	12.29	15.29	16.38	17.58	19.34	21.06	22.46	23.47			
Jämsä		7.25	10.02	11.01	12.09	13.05	16.02	17.17	18.31	20.10	21.48	23.19	0.24		
Jyväskylä	O	7.57	10.33	11.28	12.39	13.35	16.35	17.48	18.58	20.44	22.16	23.46	0.58		

[< previous page](#)                      page\_60                      [next page >](#)

Page 60

### Language points

#### Saying where things and people are: local cases -ssa, -lla

**Lasi**ssa on mehua.                      There's some juice *in the glass*.

**Lasi** on *hylly*llä.                      The glass is *on the shelf*.

Just as in English we can distinguish between 'in' and 'at' and 'on', so in Finnish, too, we can fine-tune our statements and questions about the locations of things and people. One of the ways to do this in Finnish is to use *local* suffixes. This and the next two sections present one pair of local suffixes each; they are revised in overview towards the end of this unit.

You have already met the adessive (-lla) and inessive (-ssa) in connection with expressing possession (Unit 2); their use in expressing location is even more frequent.

Normally, 'in' is expressed by means of the inessive suffix -ssa, for example:

<b>Suome</b> ssa	in Finland	<b>hotelli</b> ssa	in the/a hotel
<b>Englanni</b> ssa	in England	<b>iso</b> ssa <b>lauku</b> ssa	in a/the big bag
<b>Helsinki</b> ssä	in Helsinki		

and 'at' or 'on' is expressed by the adessive suffix -lla, for example:

<b>oikea</b> lla	on the right	<b>asema</b> lla	at the station
<b>vasemma</b> lla	on the left	<b>kadu</b> lla	on the street
<b>mere</b> llä	at sea	<b>toise</b> lla <b>puole</b> lla	on the other side

Generally speaking, forms with -ssa refer to closer, more intimate contact than forms with -lla: thus **kaivossa** is 'in the/a well', but **kaivolla** is 'at the/a well'.



Larger, relatively open, public places tend to be used with **-IIA** (**asema**lla ‘at the station’, **lentokentä**llä ‘at the airport’).

Often the shades of meaning are quite subtle, for example:

<b>Ruoka on pöydä</b> ssä.	Dinner is served, (lit. ‘The food is “in” the table’.)
<b>Pöytä</b> llä on ruokaa.	There is some food on the table (as it happens).

Note also **maa**lla ‘in the country’ (as opposed to ‘in town’), but **maa**ssa ‘on the ground’.

As the example **vuode**ssa ‘in a year’ shows, the local cases are

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_60	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_61	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 61

used in time expressions as well. For example, the amount of time it takes for a certain amount of activity to take place is expressed with **-ssa**, as in:

**Se juo kuusi kuppia kahvia päivä**ssä.

(S)he drinks six cups of coffee a day.

Less specific time expressions are often built with the **-IIA** suffix:

<b>päivä</b> llä	during the day(-time)
<b>talve</b> lla	in winter

Notice also:

<b>ensi/viime/tällä viikolla</b>	next/last/this week
<b>ensi/viime/tässä kuussa</b>	next/last/this month

More on time expressions in Unit 9. Here are some more examples of the local cases in their spatial meanings:

<b>Mil</b> ssä sinä olet työssä?	Where do you work?’ (lit. ‘Where are you in work?’)
<b>Toinen pullo on vielä hylly</b> llä.	The other bottle is still on the shelf.
<b>Mä asun Oulu</b> ssa.	I live in Oulu.
<b>Asutko sinä Tampere</b> ella?	Is it in Tampere that you live?

You will notice that some Finnish placenames (like **TampereQ**) take **-IIA**, others (like **Oulu**) take **-ssA**. There is no hard and fast rule, and even Finns often disagree! Follow the locals. (All cities outside Finland take **-ssA**: **Lontoo|ssa, Pariisi|ssa**.)

**Exercise 1** Give Finnish equivalents for the words in italics:

- 1 I live *in Helsinki*.
- 2 The wine is still *in the bottle*.
- 3 Her gloves are *on the table*.
- 4 They're still *at the station*.
- 5 She read fifty letters *in one day*.
- 6 *in Finland*
- 7 *in England*
- 8 *in the summer*
- 9 *next month*
- 10 *on the right*

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_61](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_62](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 62

*Saying where people and things are from: source cases -stA, -ltA*

Study the following pairs of sentences:

<b>Witold asuu Puola ssa.</b>	Witold lives in Poland.
<b>Witold on kotoisin Puola sta.</b>	Witold is (originally) from Poland.
<b>Pullo on hylly llä.</b>	The bottle is on the shelf.
<b>Ota pullo hylly ltä!</b>	Take the bottle (down) from off the shelf!

Parallel in meaning and form to the suffixes **-ssA** and **-IIA**, which indicate location, are **-stA** and **-ltA**, which indicate origin or source, i.e. the place from which someone or something has moved. Here are some more examples:

**Ota kahvipannu kaapi|sta!**

Take the coffee-pot out of the cupboard!

**Mä odotan postikorttia Moskova|sta/Heiki|ltä.**

I'm expecting a postcard from Moscow/Heikki.

**Oletteko te kaupungi|sta vai maa|lta?**

Are you from the city or from the country?

**Se puhuu ranskaa, mutta se ei ole kotoisin Ranska|sta.**

(S)he speaks French, but (s)he isn't from France.

**Se pyytää meil|tä rahaa.**

(S)he's asking us for money (lit. 'requesting from us money').

You will notice that the forms with **-ItA**, like those with **-IlA**, generally refer to less intimate, less concrete contact, e.g. a postcard is normally **Heikiltä** 'from Heikki'; **Heikistä** would be either 'from inside Heikki' (i.e. surgically removed, after he had swallowed it), or more likely, 'about Heikki, on the subject of Heikki'. More examples:

**Mä kirjoitan kirjettä Heiki|stä.**

I'm writing a letter about Heikki.

**Mitä te pidätte tästä kaupungi|sta?**

What do you think of this city?

**Mi|stä sinä saat tätä olutta?**

Where do you get this beer from?

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_62	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_63	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 63

**Kene|ltä sinä saat tätä olutta?**

'Who do you get this beer from?' (lit. 'From whom...')

The **-ItA** suffix is also used in time expressions referring to hours and minutes of the clock, for example:

**Suomen tunti alkaa kello kahde|lta.**

Finnish class begins at two o'clock.

**Exercise 2** Give Finnish equivalents for the words in italics:

- 1 coming *from the station*
- 2 waiting *at the station*
- 3 It's now *at the platform*.
- 4 They're already *on the train*.
- 5 *at six o'clock*
- 6 This letter is *about Juuso*.
- 7 This letter is *from Juuso*.
- 8 Take the letter *off the table*.
- 9 Take the spoon *out of the cup*.
- 10 *on the right*

***Saying where people and things are going: goal cases -lle, -#n***

Parallel to the locational and source suffixes are the goal suffixes **-lle** and **-#n**. Thus just as you use the ablative **-ltA** to say 'from whom', as in

**Kene|ltä tämä kirje on?**                      Who is this letter from?

you use the allative **-lle** to say 'to whom', as in

**Kene|lle tämä kirje on?**                      Who is this letter to?

The vowel of the allative suffix is always **e**, i.e. it does not vary according to vowel harmony:

**kadu|lle**                      onto the street  
**levy|lle**                      onto the disc

Now notice the similar parallelism of these suffixes:

**Witold asuu**                      Witold lives in Poland, (with the inessive -  
**Puola|ssa.**                      **ssA**)  
**Witold menee**                      Witold is going to Poland, (with the illative  
**Puola|an.**                      **-#n**)

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_63	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_64	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 64

Just as in the third person singular suffix of the verb, the # at the beginning of the illative suffix means that you lengthen any single vowel at the end of a nominal stem:

<b>kaivo on</b>	into the well	<b>Ruotsi in</b> to Sweden
<b>laukku un</b>	into the bag	<b>Suome en</b> to Finland
<b>junan lähtö ön</b>	until the train's departure	

There are just two hiccups. (1) If the stem is a monosyllable, the illative suffix is -**h#n** followed by a copy of the last vowel:

<b>tee hen</b>	into tea	<b>voi hin</b>	into butter
<b>työ hön</b>	to work	<b>puu hun</b>	into a tree

(2) With all other nominals, the illative is **-seen**. Thus we have this form of the illative with bisyllabic nominals which end in long vowels or diphthongs, and with Q-stems and X-stems, for example:

**vieraa|seen huonee|seen** into a strange room (**vieraX, huoneQ**)

As with the other suffix pairs you have learned in this unit, the difference between **-lle** and **-#n** is one of degree of intimacy, or closeness of contact, and whether or not the place is relatively open and public. So, for example, you send a letter ‘to Heikki’, **Heiki|lle**, and you go ‘to (lit. onto) the station’, **asema|lle**, but you go ‘into a room’, **huonee|seen**, and pour water ‘into a bottle’, **pullo|on**.

**Exercise 3** Give Finnish equivalents for the words in italics, using the correct forms made with **-lle** or **-#n**, as appropriate:

- 1 Take me *to the station*.
- 2 Put it back *on(to) the table*.
- 3 I’ll give this *to Eila*.
- 4 He put it *onto the shelf*.
- 5 Put your spoon *into the cup*.
- 6 I’m going *to Denmark*.
- 7 They’re on their way *into town*.

#### *Overview: the local case suffixes*

You have now met the main six cases which Finnish uses to express location and motion. Three of the cases (**-lla**, **-lla**, **-lle**; hereafter: *l-cases*) have at least one **l** in their suffix, and refer to general neighbourhood or surface. The other three (**-ssa**, **-sta**, **-#n**; hereafter:

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_64	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_65	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 65

*s-cases*) refer to closer proximity, even to contact or interiority. In the following table, these six cases are represented by forms of the nouns **kirjeQ** ‘letter’ and **katu** ‘street’:

*Inside*                      *Surface, neighbourhood*

motion towards	<b>kirjee seen</b>	<b>kadu lle</b>
location	<b>kirjee ssä</b>	<b>kadu lla</b>
motion from	<b>kirjee stä</b>	<b>kadu lta</b>

As you study the table, notice the parallels and patterns in the forms. Which differences are due to vowel harmony? Which differences are due to stem types?

Now have a look at the following sentences, which illustrate some of the more important meanings of these forms:

**Huomenna ne on kadu|lla taas.**

Tomorrow they'll be back *on the street*, (**kadu|lla** *adessive*: stasis at, or on surface)

**Se tulee sisään kadu|lta.**

(S)he comes in *from the street*, (**kadu|lta** *ablative*: motion from neighbourhood or surface)

**Se menee ulos kadu|lle.**

(S)he goes out *onto the street*, (**kadu|lle** *allative*: motion towards neighbourhood or surface)

**Kirjee|ssä hän sanoo, että Heikki ei tule.**

In the letter (s)he says that Heikki isn't coming, (**kirjee|ssä** *inessive*: stasis inside)

**Valitettavasti mä en ehdi vastata kirjee|seen.**

Unfortunately I don't have time to answer the letter, (lit. 'into the letter', i.e. *motion towards inside*!)

**Kiitos kirjee|stä!**

Thanks for the letter! (lit. 'from inside' the letter, i.e. *motion from inside*!)

As the last two examples show, the notion of motion *to* and *from* is a useful model for thinking about Finnish, but you should not apply it mechanically to English constructions in the hope of creating idiomatic Finnish sentences. For example, in Finnish you find things *from out of* (**-stA**) or *from off* (**-ltA**) places, and you leave them *into* (**-#n**) or *onto* (**-lle**) places:

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_65](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_66](#)

[next page >](#)

**Se löytää aina rahaa kadu|lta.**

(S)he's always finding money on the street.

**Mä jätän mun takin eteise|en.**

I'll leave (**jättä-**) my jacket (**takki**) in the entrance hall (**eteinen se**).

**Exercise 4** Give Finnish equivalents of the following sentences. Try to remember the Finnish word before peering back at the vocabularies above or resorting to the glossary at the back of this book:

- 1 Leave the bag in the entrance hall.
- 2 I'll put the glass back in(to) the cupboard.
- 3 Aila is still on the train.
- 4 I'll write a letter to Juuso.
- 5 Send a postcard to Heikki in (lit. 'into') London.
- 6 The timetable is behind the shelf.
- 7 The car is in front of the station.
- 8 Take me to Paris.
- 9 When do we arrive?
- 10 Is there any juice in the glass?

## Dialogue 2

*Mikä sen kylän nimi on?*

**What's the name of that village?**

*Celia starts to ask her friend Matti about his family, and ends up getting a quick lesson in Finnish geography*

CELIA: Asuuko sinun perheesi<sup>1</sup> Helsingissä?

MATTI: Ei asu. Mun perhe asuu maalla, pienessä kylässä.

CELIA: Mikä sen kylän nimi on?

MATTI: Padasjoki. Mun perhe asuu Padasjoella.

CELIA: Onko Padasjoki kaukana Helsingistä?

MATTI: Ei ole. Padasjoelta ei ole pitkä matka Lahteen, joka on noin sata kilometriä Helsingistä pohjoiseen.

CELIA: Anteeksi, mä en ymmärrä. Mikä se Lahti on?

MATTI: Lahti on pieni kaupunki Hämeen läänissä.

CELIA: Vai niin.

Page 67

CELIA: *Do your family live in Helsinki?*

MATTI: *No, they don't. They live in the country, in a little village.*

CELIA: *What is the village called? (lit. What is that village's name?)*

MATTI: *Padasjoki. They live in Padasjoki.*

CELIA: *Is Padasjoki far from Helsinki?*

MATTI: *No, not at all. It's not far from Padasjoki to Lahti, which is about 100 kilometres to the north of Helsinki.*

CELIA: *I'm sorry, I don't understand. What is this 'Lahti'?*

MATTI: *Lahti is a small city in the **lääni** of Häme.*

CELIA: *I see.*

<sup>1</sup>**perheesi** is 'your family'; you'll learn about forms like this in Unit 10.

### **Vocabulary**

<b>asur</b>	esides, dwells	<b>lääni</b>	administrative region
<b>HämeQ</b>	<i>lääni</i> in southwest Finland	<b>matka</b>	journey, trip; distance
<b>joka</b>	every, each	<b>nimi e</b>	name
<b>kaukana</b>	far away	<b>ollenkaan</b>	at all
<b>kaupunki</b>	city, town	<b>perheQ</b>	family
<b>kilometri</b>	kilometre	<b>pitkä</b>	long; tall
<b>kylä</b>	village	<b>pohjoinen</b>	se northern
		<b>ymmärtä-</b>	understands

### **Additional vocabulary**

Have a look at these basic kinship terms, so you can ask people about their families and tell about your own.

<b>äiti</b>	mother	<b>eno</b>	maternal uncle
<b>isä</b>	father	<b>setä</b>	paternal uncle
<b>vaimo</b>	wife	<b>täti</b>	aunt
<b>mies</b>	husband (! stem: <b>miehe-</b> )	<b>isoäiti</b>	grandmother
<b>poika</b>	son, boy (sG <b>poja n</b> )	<b>isoisä</b>	grandfather



<b>tytär</b>	daughter (! stem: <b>tyttäre-</b> )	<b>naimisissa</b>	married
<b>sisko</b>	sister	<b>leski e</b>	widow
<b>veil</b>	brother (! stem: <b>velje-</b> )	<b>leski mies</b>	widower
<b>serkku</b>	cousin	<b>orpo</b>	orphan

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_67](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_68](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 68

**Exercise 5** Make up your own short dialogues, in which people ask one another about their families and where they live. Make sure to ask and say what people do for a living, whether or not they're married, and how many children they have.

### Dialogue 3

#### *Baarissa*

#### In a bar

*Kalle would like to order some cider, but they are completely out of it, so he reverts to the default setting and has a beer instead*

KALLE: Onks teillä siiderii?

BAARIMIKKO: Sori, sitä tulee huomenna.

KALLE: Yks pitkä sit.

BAARIMIKKO: Meillä on Koffia<sup>1</sup>, Lapin Kultaa, ja Karlsbergia<sup>1</sup>.

KALLE: Lapin Kultaa. Paljoks se maksaa.

BAARIMIKKO: Yheksäntoista viiskyt<sup>2</sup>. (19,50)

KALLE: *Do you have any cider?*

BARMAN: *Sorry. There'll be some coming tomorrow.*

KALLE: *A large one (=beer), then.*

BARMAN: *We have Koff, Lapland Gold, and Karlsberg.*

KALLE: *(Make it) Lapland Gold. How much is that?*

BARMAN: *Nineteen (marks and) fifty (pennies).*

1 Notice how Finnish handles foreign nouns that have not yet adjusted to Finnish ways, such as *Koff* with its final *f*, and *Karlsberg* with its final *g*: before adding

Finnish suffixes such as (here) the partitive, an extra **-i-** is inserted: so **Koff**, partitive singular **Koffi|a**.

2 **yheksäntoista viiskyt**: the bartender uses allegro forms of the numerals. These are quite common, so practise using them yourself: 1–2–3 are **yks kaks kol**; 5–6 are **viis kuus**; and 10 is **kyt**. Thus 635, **kuusisataakolmekymmentäviisi**, becomes **kuusisataakolkytviis**.

### *Vocabulary*

From here on more formal forms, which you will be able to find in Finnish dictionaries (and at the back of this book), are given in the vocabularies to the right of the symbol ‘→’. For example **sit**→**sitten** means that **sit** is a colloquial form of **sitten**. Rules to help

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_68	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_69	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 69

you to form and recognize such colloquial forms will be introduced as we go.

<b>siideri</b>	cider
<b>sit</b> → <b>sitten</b>	then
<b>sori</b>	sorry (more ‘proper’ Finnish has <b>olen pahoillani</b> )
<b>pitkä</b>	a ‘long’, i.e. a large beer
<b>paljoks</b> → <b>paljonko</b>	how much?
<b>maksa-</b>	costs, pays

**Exercise 6** Make up your own brief dialogues, in which people order various drinks in bars. Don’t forget to use your numeracy: ask and give prices.

### Dialogue 4

#### *Postissa*

#### **At the post office**

*Anneli has gone to the post office to buy some stamps. A **virkaailija** is an ‘official’*

ANNELI: Päivää, mitä maksaa postimerkki Englantiin?

POSTIVIRKALIIJA: Ensimmäisen luokan tavallinen kirje on kolme kaksikymmentä.

ANNELI: Kaks merkkiä Englantiin ja sitte vielä kolme kotimaan sisäiseen postiin.

POSTIVIRKAILIJA: Ja se tekee<sup>1</sup> kolmetoista markkaa.

ANNELI: Kiitos. Missä mahtaa olla postilaatikko?

POSTIVIRKAILIJA: Ovesta<sup>2</sup> ulos ja vasemmalle.

ANNELI: Kiitos ja näkemiin.

ANNELI: *Good day. What does a stamp to England cost?*

POSTIVIRKAILIJA: *A regular first-class letter is three (marks and) twenty (pennies).*

ANNELI: *(I'll have) two stamps to England, and then three for post within Finland.*

POSTIVIRKAILIJA: *And that makes thirteen marks.*

ANNELI: *Thank you. Where might there be a letterbox?*

POSTIVIRKAILIJA: *(Go) out the door and (turn) to the left.*

ANNELI: *Thank you and goodbye.*

1 With prices, **teke-** can also mean 'amounts to, adds up to'.

2 The relative is also used to mean 'by way of'.

[< previous page](#)

page\_69

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_70

[next page >](#)

Page 70

### *Vocabulary*

<b>ensimmäinen</b> <i>se</i>	first	<b>näkemiin</b>	goodbye
<b>kaks</b>	→ <b>kaksi</b>	<b>posti</b>	post, mail
<b>kirje</b> Q	letter	<b>sisäinen</b> <i>se</i>	internal
<b>kotimaa</b>	homeland	<b>sitte</b>	→ <b>sitten</b>
	=Finland	<b>tavallinen</b>	ordinary, normal
		<i>se</i>	
<b>luokka</b>	class	<b>ulos</b>	(moving towards) out(side)
<b>mahta-</b>	might		
<b>markka</b>	mark	<b>vasemmalle</b>	to the left
<b>merkki,</b>	stamp	<b>vielä</b>	still, yet
<b>postimerkki</b>			

**Exercise 7** Can you put these into Finnish without peeking at the dialogue above?

- 1 out the door and to the left
- 2 Where might there be a bank (**pankki**)?
- 3 That makes twenty marks.
- 4 How much is a stamp to England?

### Dialogue 5

#### *Passitarkastus*

#### Passport control

*At an entry-point to Finland, Joe answers the questions put to him by an official*

VIRKAILIJA: Passinne,<sup>2</sup> kiitos<sup>1</sup>.

*(Joe ojentaa passin)*

VIRKAILIJA: Mistä maasta tulette?

JOE: Amerikasta.

VIRKAILIJA: Kuinka kauan aiotte viipyä Suomessa?

JOE: Kolme viikkoa.

VIRKAILIJA: Mikä on matkan tarkoitus?

JOE: Olen turistimatalla.

VIRKAILIJA: Missä aiotte asua matkanne<sup>1</sup> aikana?

JOE: Tätini<sup>3</sup> luona Helsingissä, Kulosaarissa.

VIRKAILIJA: *(antaa passin takaisin)* Tervetuloa Suomeen!

[< previous page](#)

page\_70

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_71

[next page >](#)

Page 71

OFFICIAL: *Your passport, please.*

*(Joe hands over his passport.)*

OFFICIAL: *What country are you coming from?*

JOE: *America.*

OFFICIAL: *How long do you intend to stay in Finland?*

JOE: *Three weeks.*

OFFICIAL: *What is the purpose of (your) journey?*

JOE: *I'm a tourist, (lit. I'm on a tourist trip.)*

OFFICIAL: *Where do you intend to stay during your journey?*

JOE: *At my Auntie's house in Helsinki, on Kulosaari.*

OFFICIAL: (hands back the passport) *Welcome to Finland!*

1 **kiitos**: the official thanks Joe in advance: the implication is that Joe will comply.

2 **passi|nne, matka|nne**: the **-nne** is a suffix meaning 'your', used especially in more formal contexts; for more, see Unit 10.

3 **täti|ni**: **-ni**, too, is a possessive suffix; it means 'my'.

### *Vocabulary*

<b>anta</b>	gives	<b>takaisin</b>	back (to origin)
<b>aikana: X n</b>	at the time of X	<b>tarkoitus</b>	purpose, meaning,
<b>aikana</b>			intent
<b>aiko-</b>	intends	<b>täti</b>	paternal aunt
<b>kuinka kauan</b>	for how long?	<b>Tervetulo!</b>	Welcome!
<b>luona: X n</b>	at Xs place	<b>turisti</b>	tourist
<b>luona</b>			
<b>ojenta-</b>	offers, hands over	<b>viikko</b>	week
<b>passi</b>	passport	<b>viipy-</b>	stops, stays

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_71](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_72](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 72

5

**Mitä me ostetaan?**

**What'll we buy?**

### In this unit you will learn:

- about different kinds of shopping
- about talking over the telephone
- how to be less than definite (indefinite forms of the verb)
- more about the form of direct objects
- more alternating noun stems
- how to make plurals

### Dialogue 1

#### *Alkossa*

#### At the off-licence

SUSANNA: Mitä me ostetaan sun synttäreitä varten?

MARI: Ku nyt kerta on kakskytviis-vuotis synttärit niin pitää kai ostaa pari pulloa kuohuviiniä.

SUSANNA: Elyseetä vai?

MARI: Joo ja otetaan sit samalla neljä pulloa valkkaria boolia varten.

SUSANNA: Mitä kirkasta sä haluat, kossuu vai jotain muuta votkaa?

MARI: Otetaan vaikka<sup>1</sup> kossuu ja sit saakin<sup>2</sup> melkein riittää.<sup>2</sup> Tässä onkin<sup>3</sup> jo kantamista<sup>3</sup>. Jätetään kaljat ja lonkerot poikien huoleksi.

SUSANNA: *What 'll we buy for your birthday party?*

MARI: Well, *since it's my 25th, we really ought to buy a couple of bottles of champagne.*

[< previous page](#)

page\_72

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_73

[next page >](#)

Page 73

SUSANNA: *Elysee?*

MARI: *Yeah, and let's buy four bottles of white white, as well, for punch.*

SUSANNA: *What spirits do you want, Koskenkorva or some other vodka?*

MARI: *Let's have some Koskenkorva and that'll probably be pretty much enough. There's enough here to carry as it is. Let's leave the long drinks and beers for the*

boys to worry about.

1 **vaikka** Mari uses this little word to introduce a suggestion, while leaving open the possibility that Susanna will have a different idea: ‘We could get some Koskenkorva, (or perhaps you’d prefer something else).’

2 **saa|kin riittä|ä** ‘(it’ll) probably be enough’.

3 **Tässä onkin jo kantamista** ‘there’s enough here to carry already (I’m sure you’ll agree)’. In both these expressions, Mari uses the clitic —**kin** to suggest that Susanna won’t disagree.

### Vocabulary

<b>ALKO</b>	Finnish state alcoholic beverage monopoly sales outlet	<b>ku</b> → <b>kun</b> <b>ku(n) X, ...</b> since X,... so Y <b>niin Y</b> <b>kuohu viini</b> sparkling wine	
<b>booli</b>	punch	<b>lonkero</b>	long drink
<b>Elysee</b>	(brand name)	<b>melkein</b>	pretty, fairly
<b>haluut</b> → <b>haluat</b>		<b>muu</b>	other, else
<b>X n huoleksi</b>	in Xs care	<b>niin</b>	so
<b>jäte tään</b>	let’s leave	<b>nyt</b>	now
<b>jo</b>	already	<b>osta a</b>	to buy
<b>joo</b>	yeah	<b>oste taan</b>	let’s buy
<b>jo tai n</b>	something	<b>ote taan</b>	let’s take
<b>kai</b>	maybe	<b>pari</b>	pair, a couple of
<b>kanta mis ta</b>	carrying (sP)	<b>pitä ä</b>	it’s necessary
<b>kerta</b>	(for) once	<b>poika</b>	boy, pG <b>poik ien</b>
<b>kirkkaX</b>	clear, bright; alcoholic spirits	<b>pullo</b>	bottle
<b>koskenkorva</b>	a type of spirits	<b>riittä- saa</b>	is enough, suffices it is possible; one
<b>kossu</b> → <b>koskenkorva</b>		<b>sama lla</b>	at the same time, as well
<b>kossu u</b> → <b>kossu a</b>		<b>sit</b> → <b>sitten</b>	

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_73](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_74](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 74

**su|n**→**sinun** your  
**synttäri**→ birthday  
**syntymäpäivä**  
**synttärei|itä**, pP,

**valkkari** white wine  
→**valkoviini**  
**varten: X-TA** for X  
**varten**

<b>pN synttäri t</b>		<b>votka</b>	vodka
<b>tä ssä</b>	here	<b>X vuotis Y</b>	Y which is X
<b>vai</b>	or (used in questions)		years old

### Language points

#### *Being less than definite: indefinite forms of the verb*

Alongside the six personal verb forms you have already learned in Unit 2, Finnish has a seventh, indefinite, form which has two common uses:

1 The most common use of the indefinite, in both formal and colloquial Finnish, is to place the subject of the verb in the background. You may not know who the subject is, or you may simply not like to say. In either case, it's the indefinite you want. Contrast these sentence pairs:

**Ne puhu|u suomea.** They speak Finnish, (colloquial; p3)  
**He puhu|vat suomea.** They speak Finnish, (formal; p3)

**Suomessa puhu|taan suomea.**

In Finland, people speak Finnish/Finnish is spoken, (neutral; indef.)

In the first two examples, it is assumed that we know specifically who 'they' (**ne** or **he**) are. In the third example, there is no such definiteness. All that is assumed is that there is more than one person who speaks Finnish.

2 In colloquial Finnish, the indefinite is the regular form for indicating a first person plural subject. Contrast:

**Me puhu|mme suomea.** We speak Finnish, (formal)  
**Me puhu|taan suomea.** We speak Finnish, (colloquial)

Without the subject pronoun **me**, the same form is used to make suggestions, for example **Puhutaan suomea!** 'Let's speak Finnish.'

For all verbs except those of class I, forming the affirmative indefinite is easy: just add #N to the first infinitive. So, for example:

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_74	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_75	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 75

	<i>class II</i>	<i>class III</i>	<i>class IV</i>
1st inf.	<b>haluta</b>	<b>mennä</b>	<b>saada</b>
indefinite	<b>halutaan</b>	<b>mennään</b>	<b>saadaan</b>



Class I verbs are different, so this little trick won't work with them. Compare these infinitive and indefinite forms:

1st inf.	<b>sano a</b>	<b>luke a</b>	<b>anta a</b>
indefinite	<b>sano taan</b>	<b>lue taan</b>	<b>anne taan</b>

You'll see that the indefinite forms for these verbs are different in three ways: (1) their suffix begins with **t**; (2) despite its appearance, this **t** is a tight lid, so it causes compression to its left (**k >0** in **lue|taan**, **nt >nn** in **anne|taan**); and (3) this suffix also causes any **A** at the end of the verb stem to change to **e** (**e** in **anne|taan**).

Here are some more examples. They are provided with a variety of possible English equivalents in order to give you a taste of the range of meanings.

#### *Class 1 verbs*

<b>sano taan</b>	(stem: <b>sano-</b> )	it is said; people say
<b>anne taan</b>	(stem: <b>anta-</b> )	it is given; people give
<b>kielle tään</b>	(stem: <b>kieltä-</b> )	it is forbidden

#### *Class 2 verbs*

<b>halu taan</b>	(stem: <b>haluX-</b> )	is wanted; people want
<b>maini taan</b>	(stem: <b>vaikeXE-</b> )	is mentioned
<b>vai taan</b>	(stem: <b>mainitse-</b> )	one is silent

#### *Class 3 verbs*

<b>men nään</b>	(stem: <b>mene-</b> )	people go
<b>ol laan</b>	(stem: <b>ole-</b> )	people are

#### *Class 4 verbs*

<b>saa daan</b>	(stem: <b>saa-</b> )	one gets
<b>vie dään</b>	(stem: <b>vie-</b> )	get taken (away), is exported
<b>relegoi daan</b>	(stem: <b>relegoi</b> )	gets relegated

Now have a look at these further examples, given with other verb forms for comparison and revision:

<b>Me pide tään teestä.</b>	We like tea. (colloquial)
<b>Me pidä mme teestä.</b>	We like tea. (formal)
<b>Illallisen jälkeen ote taan kahvia.</b>	One has coffee after dinner.
<b>Illallisen jälkeen ne otta a kahvia.</b>	They have coffee after dinner.

**Milloin sä mene|t kotiin?** When are you going home?  
**Milloin men|nään kotiin?** When do/will people go home?  
**Milloin me men|nään kotiin?** When will we go home? (colloquial)

The negative indefinite consists of two parts: (1) the third person singular of the negative verb, **ei**, plus (2) the connegative indefinite. This latter form is not at all as daunting to form as it sounds: it is the same as the affirmative form, but with a final **-Q** instead of a final **-AN**. Note the parallels:

<b>anne taan</b>	is given	<b>halu taan</b>	is wanted
<b>ei anne ta</b>	is not given	<b>ei halu ta</b>	is not wanted
<b>pes tään</b>	is washed	<b>tuo daan</b>	is brought/imported
<b>ei pes tä</b>	is not washed	<b>ei tuo da</b>	is not brought/imported

You can hear the effects of the final **-Q** in doubling such as that of **Ei tuoda<sup>p</sup> puuta** ‘Wood isn’t imported.’

*Exercise 1* Switch from formal to colloquial, and vice versa.

- 1 Me asumme Helsingissä.
- 2 Me mennään maalle.
- 3 Me haluamme valkoviiniä.
- 4 Me emme pidä oopperasta.
- 5 Me ei luetä lehteä.
- 6 Me puhutaan ranskaa.
- 7 Me emme tarvitse apua.

### Plurals

In this section you will learn how to form and use most of the plural forms of nouns and adjectives. We’ll divide it into three subsections to make it easier to absorb.

#### Plural cases I

The plural nominative (pN) is easy to form: its suffix is **-t**, a tightlid suffix which attaches to the stem exactly like the **-n** of the genitive singular:

stem	kaupunki	maa	hampaX	rakennukse
sG	kaupungi n	maa n	hampaa n	rakennukse n
pN	kaupungi t	maa t	hampaa t	rakennukse t
	‘city, town’	‘country’	‘tooth’	‘building’

[< previous page](#)

page\_76

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_77

[next page >](#)

stem	puhelime	huoneQ	katu	talve
sG	puhelime n	huonee n	kadu n	talve n
pN	puhelime t 'telephone'	huonee t 'room'	kadu t 'street'	talve t 'winter'

The nominative plural refers to definite things or people, often members of a set. Here are some examples of the pN in action:

<b>Euroopa n maa t</b>	the countries of Europe
<b>Rooma n yö t</b>	Roman nights (lit. 'the nights of Rome')
<b>Helsinki n kadu t</b>	the streets of Helsinki
<b>Suome n talve t</b>	Finland's winters
<b>pöydä n jala t</b>	the legs of the table ( <b>jalka</b> leg; foot)
<b>Sirka n silmä t</b>	Sirka's eyes
<b>Venäjä n uude t yliopisto t</b>	Russia's new universities

**mone|t edellise|n hallitukse|n uudistukse|t**

many of the previous government's innovations/reforms

The plural nominative is also used to mark the plural accusative. So we have, for example, **Mä syön kaikki nämä voileivä|t** 'I'm going to eat up all these sandwiches.' To say 'I'll eat some sandwiches' you need the plural partitive; see 'plural cases III', below.

*Exercise 2* Change singular to plural, and vice versa:

1	jalka
2	huoneet
3	kaupunki
4	katu
5	hampaat

### *Plural cases II:*

For the most part, the other suffixes in the plural are the same as those you have already learned for the singular. There is one important difference: they are all preceded by a generic plural marker **-i-**. This **-i-** causes certain vowel changes in the stem to its left; for comparison, here are the singular inessive (sINE) and plural inessive (pINE) forms of a few nouns:

[< previous page](#)

page\_77

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_78

[next page >](#)

Stem	<i>sINE</i>	<i>pINE</i>	Vowel change	Citation form	English
talve-	talve ssa	talv i ssa	e>0	talvi	winter
käte-	käde ssä	käs i ssä	e>0	käsi	hand
kaupunki	kaupungi ssakaupunge i ssai>e			kaupunki	city
kesä	kesä ssä	kes i ssä	ä>0	kesä	summer
juna	juna ssa	jun i ssa	a>0	juna	train
sana	sana ssa	sano i ssa	a>o	sana	word
asema	asema ssa	asem i ssa	a>0	asema	station
ystävä	ystävä ssä	ystäv i ssä	ä>0	ystävä	friend
omena	omena ssa	omeno i ssa	a>o	omena	apple
kännykkä	kännykä ssä	kännykö i ssä	ä>ö	kännykkä	cellular phone
maa	maa ssa	ma i ssa	aa>a	maa	country, land
yö	yö ssä	ö i ssä	yö>ö	yo	night

As the table shows, to the left of the plural **-i-** *all* stem-final **e**'s are deleted (>0, e.g. **talvi**). TE-stems like **käsi** change their **t** to **s**, as in the singular nominative.

*All* stem-final **i**'s, as in **kaupunki**, change to **e**.

In bisyllabic words, *all* stem-final **ä**'s are deleted (**kesä**); **a** is deleted only if **u** or **o** is the first or only vowel of the first syllable (**juna**).

Otherwise, **a>o**, as in **sana**.

In polysyllabic words, **a** and **ä** are sometimes deleted (as in **asema** and **ystävä**), and sometimes change (**a>o**, **ä>ö**, as in **omena** and **kännykkä**).

The diphthongs **ie**, **yö**, **uo** are shortened to **e**, **ö**, **o**. All long (double) vowels are shortened, e.g. **aa>a**, **uu>u**. Notice that such long vowels may themselves be from sequences with **Q** or **X** (**huoneQ|i|ssa>huone|i|ssa**; **hampaX|i|ssa>hampa|i|ssa**). Consonants to the left of such shortened vowels do not get compressed (**mp** of **hampa|i|ssa**); contrast the compressed **ng** of **kaupunge|i|ssa**.

Here are some more examples (compare with the examples given above):

Euroopa n ma i ssa	Sirka n silm i ssä
Helsinki n kadu i lla	Venäjä n uus i lla yliopisto i lla
Rooma n ö i ssä	mon i ssa edellise n hallitukse n
Suome n talv i ssa	uudistuks i ssa

As in the singular, the illative presents a few hiccups. Its ending is **-#n** as usual if the generic plural **-i-** to its left is the only vowel; but if there *is* a single stem-final vowel, you use **-h#n** followed by a copy of that vowel. Compare these plural inessive and illative forms:

	<i>-i- alone</i>	<i>stem-vowel plus -i-</i>
pINE	silm i ssä	sano i ssa, ma i ssa
pILL	silm i in	sano i hin, ma i hin
pINE	järv i ssä	kaupunge i ssa
pILL	järv i in	kaupunke i hin

Finally, if the noun takes **-seen** in the singular illative, its pILL is **-siin**:

sILL	vapaalseen	huonee seen	vieraa seen
pINE	vapa i ssa	huone i ssa	viera i ssa
pILL	vapa i siin	huone i siin	viera i siin

**Exercise 3** Convert the following from singular to plural, or vice versa.

1	kirjassa
2	taloissa
3	saarilta
4	lasista
5	pankille
6	hampaisiin
7	taloon
8	työhön
9	veteen
10	jalkoihin

### **Plural cases. III**

The partitive plural refers to indefinite quantities of things or people. Building it is not so very difficult if you bear in mind that it consists of two parts: the generic plural suffix **-i-**, which is added to the nominal stem, followed by the partitive suffix **-tA**. As in the singular, this **-tA** suffix has two basic shapes, with and without the **t**: **-tA** and **-A**.

Which shape you use for any given noun is fairly predictable according to the following rules. You use **-tA**

[< previous page](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_79

page\_80

[next page >](#)

[next page >](#)

1 if the nominal ends in a long vowel or diphthong. Vowel changes to the left of **-i-** apply as usual:

<b>vapaa</b>	<b>vapa i ta</b>	aa>a	free
<b>tienoo</b>	<b>tieno i ta</b>	oo>o	region
<b>ainoa</b>	<b>aino i ta</b>	oa>o	only
<b>tie</b>	<b>te i tä</b>	ie>e	road
<b>yö</b>	<b>ö i tä</b>	yö>ö	night
<b>voi</b>	<b>vo i ta</b>	oi>o	butter
<b>maa</b>	<b>ma i ta</b>	aa>a	country

2 if the nominal ends in X or Q:

<b>rikas</b>	<b>rikka i ta</b>	(stem: rikkaX)	rich
<b>huone</b>	<b>huone i ta</b>	(stem: huoneQ)	room

3 and *often* if the word is polysyllabic. This is true especially of words ending in **ri**, so from **paperi**, **tuomari**, **traktori** and **professori** we have **papere|i|ta** ‘papers’, **tuomare|i|ta** ‘judges’, **traktore|i|ta** ‘tractors’, and **professore|i|ta** ‘professors’; but it is also likely if the last syllable is **nA**, **kkA**, or **rA**, or if the word ends in **ijA**. These stems have **a>o** and **ä>ö** before the **-i-** pluralizer:

<b>kirsikka</b>	<b>kirsiko i ta</b>	cherry
<b>kynttilä</b>	<b>kynttilö i tä</b>	candle
<b>peruna</b>	<b>peruno i ta</b>	potato
<b>kitara</b>	<b>kitaro i ta</b>	curl
<b>lukija</b>	<b>lukijo i ta</b>	reader

4 *otherwise*, you use **-A**. The only thing to watch for then is that the **-i-** pluralizer changes to **-j-** whenever it winds up between two vowels (as in **tyttöjä** and **sanoja**):

<b>poika</b>	<b>poik i a</b>	boy
<b>juna</b>	<b>jun i a</b>	train
<b>linkki</b>	<b>linkke j ä</b>	(internet) link
<b>järvi e</b>	<b>järv i ä</b>	lake
<b>opettaja</b>	<b>opettaj i a</b>	teacher
<b>tyttö</b>	<b>tyttö j ä</b>	girl
<b>sana</b>	<b>sano j a</b>	word

**Exercise 4** Put these phrases into the plural partitive. If you’re not sure of the meaning (or the stem!) of a word, check in the glossary at the back of this book.

1 uusi talo

[< previous page](#)

page\_80

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_81

[next page >](#)

2	halpa takki
3	vapaa kansa
4	hyvä ystävä
5	nuori opiskelija
6	vanha opettaja

### *Direct object roundup: the forms of the accusative*

You've already met with the several different ways Finnish has of marking the direct object of a sentence, but it'll be a good idea to round them up now and have a look at them all at once.

Actually, it all boils down to two possibilities, the partitive and the accusative. The partitive is used to mark 'incomplete' or negated direct objects, the accusative to mark 'complete' direct objects.

The main difficulty about the accusative case is that it has no one dedicated suffix. Instead, it 'borrows' the suffixes of various other cases. There are three basic scenarios:

1 For numerals, the accusative is the same as the nominative. Compare:

**Tässä on kolme voileipää.**

Here are *three* sandwiches, (**kolme**=subject)

**Mä syön kolme voileipää.**

I'll eat three sandwiches, (**kolme**=direct object)

Words like **pari** 'pair, a couple of' act like numerals in this connection:

**Mä ostan pari pulloa viiniä.**

I'll buy a couple of bottles of wine.

As mentioned in the previous section, nouns in the plural behave the same way: their accusative is the same as their nominative (**Tässä on voileivä|t** 'Here are the sandwiches'; **Mä syön voileivä|t** 'I'll eat up the sandwiches').

2 For nouns in the singular, the accusative is the same as the genitive *if the verb has a person suffix* (i.e., first, second, or third person, singular or plural):

**Mä syö|n voileivä|n.**  
**Ne osta|a lampu|n.**

I'll eat a/the sandwich.  
They'll buy a/the lamp.

Page 82

### Milloin sä lähetät toin kirjeen?

When are you going to send that letter?

but the accusative is the same as the nominative *if the verb does not have a person marker*: most commonly, this means that the verb is an imperative, infinitive, or indefinite. Examples:

<b>Kerro Q totuus!</b>	Tell the <i>truth!</i>
<b>Avat kaa ikkuna!</b>	Open the <i>window!</i>
<b>Mun pitää syö dä voileipä.</b>	I have to eat <i>a/the sandwich</i> . (More on this construction in Unit 9)
<b>Me syö dään voileipä.</b>	We'll eat <i>a/the sandwich</i> .

### Sopimus allekirjoitetaan Washingtonissa.

*A/the treaty* is being signed in Washington.

3 The personal pronouns have their own special accusative suffix, **-t**:

<b>Se tunte e m(in)u/t.</b>	(S)he knows <i>me</i> .
<b>Sä tunne t meidä t.</b>	You know <i>us</i> .
<b>Me tunne mme häne t.</b>	We know <i>him/her</i> .
<b>Hänet tunne taan.</b>	(S)he is known.
<b>Ne näke e s(in)u/t joka päivä.</b>	They see <i>you</i> every day.
<b>Mä näe n teidä t, kun mä palaa n.</b>	I'll see <i>you</i> (formal/plural) when I get back.

**Exercise 5** Supply the missing accusative forms of the words given in brackets.

1 I'm going to buy a lamp.	Mä ostan____. ( <b>lamppu</b> )
2 Let's eat some sandwiches.	Syödään____. ( <b>voileipä</b> )
3 Open the door!	Avaa____! ( <b>ovi e</b> )
4 Whose car is she driving?	Kenen ____ se ajaa? ( <b>auto</b> )

### *Noun phrase agreement*

With the exception of the numerals and a few words which do not decline (see below), all modifiers which come before a noun must agree with it in number and case. So a noun phrase such as **tämä uusi talo** 'this new house' is **tä|ssä uude|ssa**



**talo|ssa** in the singular inessive ('in this new house') and **nä|i|hin uus|i|iin talo|i|hin** in the plural illative ('into these new houses').

Noun phrases which contain a numeral are slightly different. If

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_82</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_83</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 83

the phrase is in the nominative or accusative, the noun and any adjectives between the numeral and the noun go into the partitive singular, while any modifier before the numeral goes into the plural, for example

**Nämä viisi vanha|a kirja|a on sinun.**

These five old books are yours.

**Mä maksan seuraavat kaks kalja|a.**

I'll pay for the next two beers.

A few words do not decline, i.e. they remain invariable while the rest of the noun phrase takes on various number and case suffixes. The most common are **pikku** 'little', **eri** 'various', **joka** 'each, every', **itse** 'none other than', **ensi** 'next', **viime** 'last (=the most recent)', **koko** 'the whole'. Examples: **viime vaale|i|ssa** 'in the last elections', **eri sy|i|stä** 'for various reasons', **kahde|lla eri kanava|lla** 'on two different channels'.

## Dialogue 2

### *Kauppatori*

#### **An open-air (summer) market**

*Pia and Norman get talking about food as they walk along the **Esplanadi**, Helsinki's showcase east-west avenue*

PIA: Tykkäätsä muuten silakasta?

NORMAN: En oo koskaan maistanu!<sup>1</sup> Mutta tykkään kyllä kalasta.

PIA: No sittehän me mennään silakkamarkkinoille!

NORMAN: Missä ne<sup>2</sup> on?

PIA: Tossa kauppatorin rannassa. Silakkamarkkinat on vuosittain tähän aikaan, kun

saariston kalastajat tulevat Helsinkiin myymään saalistaan.

NORMAN: Joo mennään vaan sinne ja sit samalla ostetaan vihanneksia ja hedelmiä torilta.

PIA: Illalla syödäänki sitte perunoita ja sinappisilakoita.

PIA: *Do you like silakka, by the way?*

NORMAN: *I've never tried (lit. tasted) it! But I do like fish.*

PIA: *Well then, we're going to the silakka-market!*

NORMAN: *Where is it?*<sup>2</sup>

[< previous page](#)

page\_83

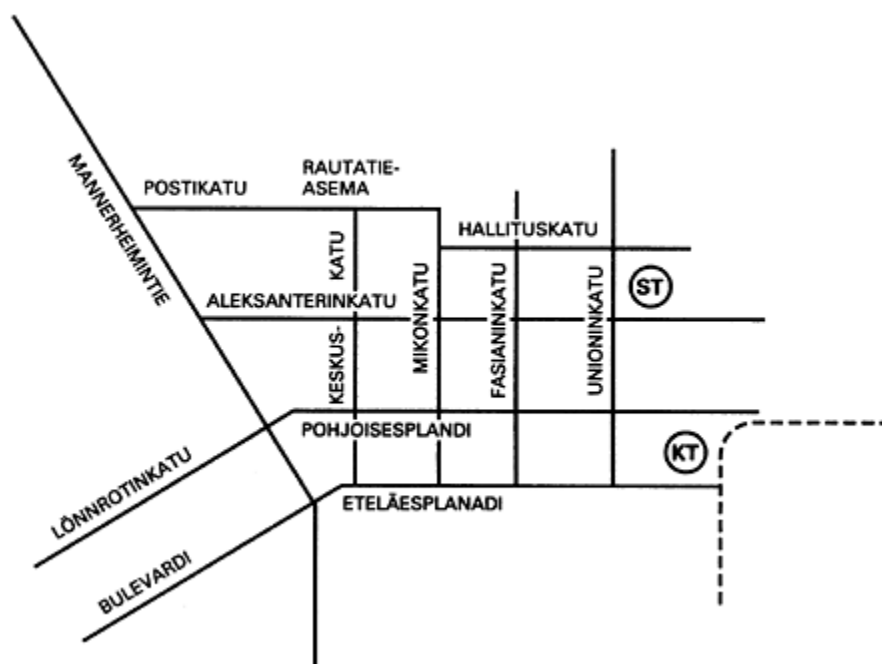
[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_84

[next page >](#)

Page 84



PIA: *(There) on the edge/shore of the kauppatori. There's a silakka-market every year at this time, when the fishermen from the archipelago come to Helsinki to sell their catch.*

NORMAN: *OK, let's go (there) and (at the same time let's) buy some vegetables and fruits (from the market).*

PIA: *And tonight let's eat potatoes and mustard-herring.*

1 **En oo koskaan maistanu** 'I've never tasted (any).' You'll learn about these verb forms in Unit 7.

2 The plural pronoun **ne** is used because **markkina|t** 'market' is plural in Finnish.

### Vocabulary

<b>hedelmä</b>	fruit, pP	<b>myy mä än</b>	(in order) to sell
<b>hedelmiä</b>			
<b>kala sta ja</b>	fisherman	<b>no</b>	well, ...
<b>—ki(n)</b>	and, also, as well	<b>peruna</b>	<b>potato</b>
<b>koskaan</b>	(in negative contexts) never	<b>saaliX</b>	catch, booty
<b>maistanu→</b>		<b>saar isto</b>	archipelago ( <b>saari e</b> island)
<b>maista nut</b>		<b>silakka</b>	Baltic (smaller)
<b>muuten</b>	by the way; otherwise		herring

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_84](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_85](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 85

<b>sinappi</b>	mustard	<b>tori</b>	market
<b>sinne</b>	(to) there	<b>tossa→</b>	
<b>sitتهän→</b>		<b>tu ssa</b>	
<b>sitten hän</b>		<b>tykkäX-</b>	likes
<b>syödäänki→</b>		<b>vihannes kse</b>	vegetable
<b>syödäänkin</b>		<b>vuosittain</b>	every year, yearly
<b>tähän aikaan</b>	at this time		

### Language points

#### *On the telephone (puhelimessa)*

'Telephone' is **puhelin**, stem: **puhelime-**. Its partitive is **puhelin|ta**, so 'May I use the telephone?' is **Saanko käyttää puhelin|ta?**

'To call' someone is **soitta-**, the same verb used to refer to the playing of musical instruments. You call *to* a person (with the allative **-lle**):

**Mä soitan Liisa|lle.**

I'll call Lisa,

but you call *into* a number (with the illative):

**Soita mulle tähän numero|on.** Call me at this number.

Finns answer the phone in a variety of ways: a simple **Haloo**; saying their name; saying the number dialled; or putting the subscriber's surname into the adessive, e.g. **Lehtose|lla** 'at Lehtonen('s residence)'. 'Lauri speaking' is **Lauri puhelime|ssa**.

When you initiate the call, identify yourself by saying **täällä (on/puhuu)** or **tässä (on/puhuu)** (lit. 'Here is/speaks...') plus your name. If the connection (**yhteys**) is poor, you can say so: **Yhteys on huono**, or simply **Ei kuulu** lit. 'It isn't audible.' Even more than usually, you may want to ask the other person to speak more slowly (**hitaammin**) or more loudly (**kovempaa**).

You can ask whether someone is available to come to the phone by saying **Onko X tavattavissa?** If they're not, you can always leave a message (**Voinko jättää sanan?**) or call back later (**Soitan uudelleen**). You won't get through at all, of course, if the number is engaged (**varattu**), doesn't answer (**ei vastaa**), or is wrong (**väärä**).

On the phone, 'goodbye' is **kuulemiin** lit. 'until hearing', from **kuule-** 'hears'.

[< previous page](#)

page\_85

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_86

[next page >](#)

Page 86

### Dialogue 3

Here are four quick exchanges which take place over the phone:

#### *Puhelimessa*

##### *On the phone 1*

*First, Liisa wants to reach Lassi; but Matti, his brother, answers, so*

MATTI: Matti Rantanen!

LIISA: Täällä puhuu Liisa Lehtisalo. Onkohan<sup>1</sup> Lassi tavattavissa?

MATTI: Kyllä on. Hetkinen.

LIISA: Kiitos.

MATTI: (answering) *Matti Rantanen.*

LIISA: *This is Liisa Lehtisalo. Could I speak with Lassi?*

MATTI: *Of course. Just one moment.*

LIISA: *Thank you.*

1 **Onko|han** Both Liisa and Marja in the next dialogue use the extremely frequent clitic —**hAn** to solicit cooperation/agreement from their collocutors.

### ***On the phone 2***

*Marja fails to reach Juhani on her first try, so she says she'll ring back*

KAISA: Kaisa Hakulinen!

MARJA: Täällä puhuu Marja Koponen. Onkohan<sup>1</sup> Juhani Karjalainen tavattavissa (paikalla)?

KAISA: Hän ei ole nyt täällä. Hän tulee takaisin vasta kello neljä.

MARJA: Kiitos. Soitan uudelleen. Kuulemiin.

KAISA: Kuulemiin.

KAISA: *Kaisa Hakulinen!*

MARJA: *It's Marja Koponen. Is Juhani Karjalainen there?*

KAISA: *He isn't here right now. He won't be coming back until (lit. comes back not-until) four o'clock.*

MARJA: *Thank you. I'll ring back later (lit. I'll ring again). Goodbye.*

KAISA: *Goodbye.*

[< previous page](#)

page\_86

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_87

[next page >](#)

Page 87

### ***On the phone 3***

*Pentti wants to reach a certain Hämäläinen (who happens to be a composer), but*

*Hämäläinen is not in, so Pentti leaves a message.*

RITVA: Hämäläisellä. Ritva Nurminen puhelimessa.

PENTTI: Täällä puhuu Pentti Olavinen. Onkohan saveltäjä Hämäläinen tavattavissa?

RITVA: Ei ole. Hän on jo lähtenyt ulos; minä en tiedä varmasti, mihin aikaan hän tulee takaisin.

PENTTI: Voinko jättää sanan?

RITVA: Olkaa hyvää.

PENTTI: Voisitteko pyytää, että hän soittaa minulle? Numero on 45 22 75.

RITVA: Minä sanon.

PENTTI: Kiitos. Kuulemiin.

RITVA: Kuulemiin.

RITVA: *Hämäläinen residence, Ritva Nurminen speaking (lit. in the phone).*

PENTTI: *This is Pentti Olavinen. Is Mr(s)/Ms (lit. composer) Hämäläinen there?*

RITVA: *Not just now. (S)he has gone out already; I don't know exactly when (s)he'll be coming back.*

PENTTI: *May I leave a message?*

RITVA: *Go right ahead.*

PENTTI: *Could you ask (him/her) to call me? (My) number is 45 22 75.*

RITVA: *I'll tell (him/her).*

PENTTI: *Thank you. Goodbye.*

RITVA: *Goodbye.*

#### ***On the phone 4***

*Jouni tries to reach Mika, but Mika has gone out to basketball practice. Jouni leaves a message. **Rva** stands for **rouva** 'Mrs'*

RVA. LEHTONEN: Lehtosella.

JOUNI: Tässä on Jouni Matikainen hei, onks Mika kotona?

RVA. LEHTONEN: Hei Jouni! Mika ei ole nyt kotona. Se lähti koripalloharjoituksiin.

JOUNI: Ai. Koska se tulee kotiin?

[< previous page](#)      [page\\_87](#)      [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#)      [page\\_88](#)      [next page >](#)

Page 88

RVA. LEHTONEN: Joskus kahdeksan jälkeen. Jätänkö viestin?

JOUNI: Joo. Jos se vois soittaa mulle vielä tänään.

RVA. LEHTONEN: Selvä, kerron terveisiä.

JOUNI: Kiitti. Hei!

RVA. LEHTONEN: Hei vaan!

RVA. LEHTONEN: *Lehtonen residence.*

JOUNI: *Hi, it's Jouni Matikainen. Is Mika home?*

RVA. LEHTONEN: *Hi, Jouni! Mika's not home right now. He's gone to basketball practice.*

JOUNI: *Oh. When's he coming home?*

RVA. LEHTONEN: *Sometime after eight. Should I give him (lit. leave) a message?*

JOUNI: *Yea. If he could ring me sometime today.*

RVA. LEHTONEN: *OK. I'll tell him you called.*

JOUNI: *Ta. 'Bye!*

RVA. LEHTONEN: *'Bye!*

### ***Vocabulary***

<b>että</b>	that (conjunction)	<b>mihin aikaan</b>	at what time?
<b>harjoituksiin</b>	into practice	<b>mulle</b>	→
	(sessions)	<b>minulle</b>	
<b>hei!</b>	hi!	<b>numero</b>	number
<b>X:n jälkeen</b>	after X	<b>onko han</b>	is...at all?

<b>jättä</b>	leaves (something somewhere)	<b>paikalla</b>	there, on the spot
		<b>puhelimessa</b>	(speaking) on the phone
<b>jos</b>	if		
<b>joskus</b>	some time, sometimes	<b>pyytää</b>	requests, asks someone to do something
<b>kello</b>	clock, watch; o'clock		
<b>kerto-</b>	tells, recounts, talks about	<b>sana</b>	word
<b>kiitti</b> → <b>kiitos</b>		<b>saveltäjä</b>	composer
<b>kori pallo</b>	basketball	<b>se lähti</b>	(s)he left
		<b>se on</b>	(s)he has left
<b>koska</b>	when?	<b>lähte nyt</b>	
<b>kotiin</b>	(coming, going) home	<b>selvä</b>	clear; OK
<b>kotona</b>	(at) home	<b>soitta a</b>	calls, rings, plays (instrument)
<b>kuulemiin</b>	(on telephone) Goodbye	<b>täällä</b>	here
<b>kyllä</b>	yes, indeed	<b>takaisin</b>	back (from where one has gone)
		<b>tänään</b>	today

[< previous page](#)

page\_88

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_89

[next page >](#)

Page 89

<b>tässä</b> → <b>tässä</b>		<b>varmasti</b>	certainly, for certain
<b>tavattav i ssa</b>	reachable	<b>vasta</b>	not until
<b>terveis i ä</b>	greetings	<b>vielä</b>	still
<b>tietä</b>	knows	<b>vielä</b>	while it is still
<b>ulos</b>	(coming or going) out	<b>tänään</b>	today, i.e. before tomorrow
<b>uudelleen</b>	again	<b>viesti</b>	message, bit of information
<b>vaan</b>	(expresses agreement, encouragement)		

**Exercise 6** Make up your own short (successful and unsuccessful) telephone dialogues. Phone friends and relative strangers in order to practise your skills with **s(in)ä** and **te**.

**Language points**

**More noun types: stems in =iME and =UKsE**



Many Finnish nouns which denote machines, tools, or instruments are built with the suffix =**iME** (for the significance of capital letters in such forms, see the Nuts and bolts section, pages 7 and 8). The citation form ends in **n**:

**puhelin** telephone (cf. **puhu-** ‘speaks’)  
**avain** key (cf. **avaX-** ‘opens’)  
**soitin** musical instrument (cf. **soitta-** ‘plays’)  
**elin** organ (of the body; cf. **elä-** ‘lives’)

but the stem’s final **ime** is clear in case forms such as inessive **puhelime|ssa**. Compression rules apply as usual, e.g. compressed **t** in **soitin** and decompressed **tt** in genitive singular **soittime|n**. The partitive is a bit unexpected: **iME**-stems behave like **lumi** ‘snow’, e.g. **puhelin|ta, avain|ta, soitin|ta**.

You will also often meet with words built with the suffixes =**UKsE** and =**mUKsE**. Finnish uses these to build nouns, usually from verbs. The citation form ends in **s**, for example:

**avaus** opening (cf. **avaX-** ‘opens’)  
**vastaus** answer (cf. **vastaX-** ‘answers’)  
**kirjoitus** essay, document (cf. **kirjoitta-** ‘writes’)  
**sopimus** treaty, agreement (cf. **sopi-** ‘fits in well, is OK’)  
**kysymys** question (cf. **kysy-** ‘asks’)

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_89	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_90	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 90

**rakennus** building (cf. **rakenta-** ‘builds’)  
**hakemus** application(-form) (cf. **hake-** ‘fetches’)  
**uudistus** innovation, reform (cf. **uudista-** ‘makes new’ and **uusi te** ‘new’)  
**hallitus** government (cf. **halliTSE-** ‘rules’)

and the partitive also has only **s**, i.e. these nouns behave like dental stems:

**Mulla on kolme kysymys|tä.** I have three questions.  
**Se etsii vastaus|ta.** (S)he is looking for an answer.

but all other case forms have the **ks**, e.g.

**rakennukse|n toisella puolella** on the other side of the building  
**Ne allekirjoittaa** They will sign the treaty.  
**sopimukse|n.**  
**Hakemukse|ssa ei ole nimeä.** There’s no name on the

application.

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_90](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_91](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 91

6

**Mennääks kiskalle!**

**Let's go to the kiosk!**

**In this unit you will:**

- learn more about shopping
- learn about Independence Day in Finland
- go on a visit to Granny's
- learn how to form and use the past tense
- learn another way to link verbs: the third infinitive
- learn how to make adverbs

**Dialogue 1** 

*Leipomossa*

**At the baker's**

MYYYJÄ: Päivää, mitä teille saisi olla?

ROUVA LEHTONEN: Ovatko nuo lakkaviinerit tuoreita?

MYYYJÄ: Kyllä, tänä aamuna leivottuja.

ROUVA LEHTONEN: Ottaisin niitä neljä.

MYYYJÄ: Ja muuta?

ROUVA LEHTONEN: Onkos teillä perunalimppua?

MYYYJÄ: On kyllä. Montako saisi olla?

ROUVA LEHTONEN: Yksi riittää, kiitos.

ASSISTANT: *(Good) day. What would you (like to) have?*

MRS LEHTONEN: *Are those arctic cloudberry danish fresh?*

ASSISTANT: *Yes (indeed), (they're) baked this morning.*

ASSISTANT: *I'll take (lit. I would take) four of them.*

MRS LEHTONEN: *And (anything) else?*

MRS LEHTONEN: *Do you have any potato loaves?*

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_91</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_92</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 92

ASSISTANT: *Certainly. How many would you like?*

MRS LEHTONEN: *One will be enough, thanks.*

### Vocabulary

<b>lakka</b>	arctic cloudberry	<b>myy-</b>	sells
<b>leipomo</b>	bakery	<b>niitä</b>	of them (pP of <b>se</b> )
<b>leivo ttu</b>	baked	<b>nuo</b>	those (pN of <b>tu</b> )
<b>limppu</b>	(round) loaf	<b>otta isi n</b>	I would take
<b>mon ta ko</b>	how much?	<b>tä nä aamu na</b>	this morning
<b>muu</b>	other, else	<b>tuoreQ</b>	fresh
<b>myy jä</b>	seller	<b>viineri</b>	Danish pastry

### Language Points

#### *More on pronouns: plural forms of demonstratives*

So far you have met various forms of the demonstrative pronouns **tämä** 'this', **tu** 'that' and **se** 'it'. Here are the full paradigms of these three little words. Notice that the plural forms (**nämä**, **nuo**, and **ne**) all begin with **n**; their differences are therefore all the more important to study so that you don't mix them up.

The asterisked forms are provided to whet your appetite; you'll learn them in later lessons.

	<i>'this'</i>	<i>'that yonder'</i>	<i>'that, it'</i>
sN	<b>tämä</b>	<b>tu</b>	<b>se</b>
sG	<b>tämä n</b>	<b>tu n</b>	<b>se n</b>
sP	<b>tä tä</b>	<b>tu ta</b>	<b>si tä</b>
sELA	<b>tä stä</b>	<b>tu sta</b>	<b>sii tä (!)</b>
sINE	<b>tä ssä</b>	<b>tu ssa</b>	<b>sii nä (!)</b>
sILL	<b>tä hän</b>	<b>tu hon</b>	<b>sii hen</b>
sABL	<b>tä ltä</b>	<b>tu lta</b>	<b>si ltä</b>
sADE	<b>tä llä</b>	<b>tu lla</b>	<b>si llä</b>
sALL	<b>tä lle</b>	<b>tu lle</b>	<b>si lle</b>

sESS  
sTRA

tä|nä  
tä|ksi\*

tu|na  
tu|ksi\*

si|nä  
si|ksi\*

[< previous page](#)

page\_92

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_93

[next page >](#)

Page 93

	<i>'these'</i>	<i>'those yonder'</i>	<i>'those, they'</i>
pN	<b>nämä</b>	<b>nuo</b>	<b>ne</b>
pG	<b>näi den*</b>	<b>no i den*</b>	<b>ni i den*</b>
pP	<b>nä i tä</b>	<b>no i ta</b>	<b>ni i tä</b>
pELA	<b>nä i stä</b>	<b>no i sta</b>	<b>ni i stä</b>
pINE	<b>nä i ssä</b>	<b>no i ssa</b>	<b>ni i ssä</b>
pILL	<b>nä i hin</b>	<b>no i hin</b>	<b>ni i hin</b>
pABL	<b>nä i ltä</b>	<b>no i lta</b>	<b>ni i ltä</b>
pADE	<b>nä i llä</b>	<b>no i lla</b>	<b>ni i llä</b>
pALL	<b>nä i lle</b>	<b>no i lle</b>	<b>ni i lle</b>
pESS	<b>nä i nä</b>	<b>no i na</b>	<b>ni i nä</b>
pTRA	<b>nä i ksi*</b>	<b>no i ksi*</b>	<b>ni i ksi*</b>

Here are some examples of the demonstrative pronouns in action:

**Ota kaks no|i|ta suur|i|a leip|i|ä!**

Take two of those large loaves. (pP)

**Mä otan viis ni|i|tä.**

I'll take five of them. (pP)

**Suomessa nä|i|tä kiel|i|ä ei opiskella.**

These languages aren't studied in Finland. (pP)

**Kerro jotain ni|i|stä!**

Say something about them! (pELA)

**Onks se sii|nä paika|ssa?**

Is it in that place? (sINE)

*Adverbs of place and of manner*

## Adverbs of place

Finnish is rich in little words which indicate where, whence, and whither. Corresponding to the simple English word 'here', for example, is any of four different forms, depending on whether or not motion is implied and on the relative size of the space meant. Study this little chart, which summarizes the forms. Which forms are identical with those of **se** and **tämä**? (You can check your memory by peeking back at the previous section.)

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_93	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_94	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 94

	nearer speaker ↔ further from speaker			
smaller area	<b>tä ssä</b>	<b>si inä</b>	<b>tu ssa</b>	stationary
	<b>tä hän</b>	<b>si hen</b>	<b>tu hon</b>	moving towards
	<b>tä stä</b>	<b>si tä</b>	<b>tu sta</b>	moving away
larger area	<b>tää llä</b>	<b>sie llä</b>	<b>tu lla</b>	stationary
	<b>tä nne</b>	<b>si nne</b>	<b>tu nne</b>	moving towards
	<b>tää ltä</b>	<b>sie ltä</b>	<b>tu lta</b>	moving away

Examples:

<b>Se kutsui m(in)ut tänne.</b>	(S)he invited me (to) here.
<b>Kai tähän saa istua?</b>	Might one sit (to) here, perhaps?
<b>Kirjoita nimesi tähän.</b>	Write your name (to) here.
<b>Me mennään sinne museoon.</b>	Were going (to there) to the museum.
<b>Tässä on majoneesia.</b>	Here's some mayonnaise.
<b>Etkö tunne ketään täällä?</b>	Don't you know anyone here?
<b>Käy tuonne sohvalle.</b>	Go (lie down) on(to) the sofa (to) over there.

## Adverbs of manner

These are most commonly formed from adjectives; the suffix used in this derivation is =**sti**, added directly to the stem. To the left of this tight-lid suffix, Q and X are read as #, as usual. Examples:

Adjective	Adverb	English
<b>huono</b>	<b>huono sti</b>	badly
<b>hieno</b>	<b>hieno sti</b>	finely
<b>hirveä</b>	<b>hirveä sti</b>	frightfully
<b>kaunis</b>	<b>kaunii sti</b>	beautifully (stem: <b>kauniX</b> )
<b>äänekäs</b>	<b>äänekkää sti</b>	vociferously (stem: <b>äänekkäX</b> )

**lämmin lämpimä|sti** warmly (stem: **lampimä**; more on this stem type in Unit 8)

A few of the most common adverbs are formed with **=in**:

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_94</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_95</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 95

**hyvä** **hyv|in** well (**hyvä|sti** means ‘farewell’)  
**usea** **use|in** frequently

Examples: **Se laulaa hyvin** ‘(S)he sings well’, **Me käydään usein Ruotsissa** ‘We go to Sweden often.’

It is useful to distinguish such adverbs of manner, which modify verbs, from adverbs of intensity, which modify adjectives. To form these, you simply put the first, intensifying, adjective into the genitive:

**hirveä|n kaunis** frightfully beautiful  
**poikkeuksellise|n tylsä** exceptionally stupid (**poikkeuksellinen** ‘exceptional’)

### *Introduction to participles: past and present, passive and active*

Participles are simply special kinds of adjectives made from verbs, like English ‘broken’ (from ‘break’) in ‘This glass is broken’ or ‘broken promises’.

Finnish has four participles, two with past, or completed, meanings, and two with present (better: non-past), incompleted, meanings. So, for example, the form **leivottu|ja** in the dialogue on page 91 is the partitive plural of the past passive participle, **leivo|ttu** ‘baked’, from the verb **leipo-** ‘bakes’. We might paraphrase and say that **leivottu** means something like ‘(that) which has been baked’; you’ll learn how to form and use this kind of participle in the next unit. Alongside a past passive participle like **leivottu**, Finnish also has a past *active* participle, e.g. **leiponut**. Paraphrasing again, we could say that this form means something like ‘(s)he who has baked, that which has baked’. This form is most commonly used together with other verb forms, in compound tenses. For example:

**Mä olen leipo|nut kaks leipää tänään.**

I’ve baked two loaves today.

There will be more on this use of **nUt**-forms like **leiponut** (perfect tense) in the next unit, and you will meet it again later in this unit, in connection with the *negative past*. But first, some more shopping.

Page 96

## Dialogue 2

### *Kioskit*

### Kiosks

*Kiosks are the Finns' way of picking up small items out of normal business hours. A colloquial variant of **kioski** is **kiska***

### *Kioskille*

### (Going) to the kiosk

OSKARI: Hei Pekka, mennääks kiskalle. Mä sain mun viikkorahan.

PEKKA: Joo, mennään vaan. Isä pyyski mua hakee<sup>1</sup>*Iltasanomat*.

OSKARI: Mun tekee hirveesti mieli Valion suklaatuuttia.

PEKKA: Mäkin saan ostaa jotain hyvää.

OSKARI: *Hey Pekka, let's go to the kiosk. I've (just) got my allowance.*

PEKKA: *OK, let's go. My father asked me to get an Iltasanomat, anyway.*

OSKARI: *I could really go for a Valio chocolate cone.*

PEKKA: *I'm going to buy something good, too.*

1 **pyyski mua hakee**→**pyysikin minua hakemaan** 'asked me to fetch'. You will learn about i-dropping (**pyysi ~ pyys**) and the third infinitive (**hakemaan ~ hakee**) later on in this unit.

### *Kioskilla*

### At the kiosk

MYYJÄ: Mitäs pojille sais olla?

PEKKA: Iltasanomat ja kymmenen noita irtomerkkareita ja yks kingis-puikko.

MYYJÄ: Noin ole hyvä ja se tekee yhdeksän markkaa. Ja mitäs sulle sais olla?  
(*kääntyy Oskarin puoleen*)

OSKARI: Yks suklaatuutti, kiitos.

MYYJÄ: Tossa, kuus markkaa.

POJAT: Kiitti hei!

ASSISTANT: *What'll (you) boys have?*

PEKKA: *An Iltasanomat and ten of those loose sweets, and a kingis-pop.*

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_96	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_97	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 97

ASSISTANT: *All right, here you are; that makes nine marks, then. And what will you have?* (turns towards Oskari)

OSKARI: *One chocolate cone, thanks.*

ASSISTANT: *There (you are); six marks.*

THE BOYS: *Thanks. 'Bye!*

### Vocabulary

<b>hake</b>	fetches	<b>noin</b>	roughly; so
<b>hei!</b>	Hi, Hey	<b>no j ta</b>	of those (pP)
<b>hirveä sti</b>	frightfully	<b>poja t</b>	boys pN
<b>hirveesti→</b>		<b>poj j i lle</b>	to (the) boys
<b>hirveä sti</b>			pALL
<b>Iltasanomat</b>	<i>Evening Paper</i>	<b>X n puole en</b>	to(wards) X
<b>irtomerkkareita</b>	type of loose (penny-)candies	<b>pyys ki→</b>	asked, too
<b>isä</b>	father	<b>pyysi kin</b>	
<b>jo ta in</b>	something	<b>saa n</b>	I'm going to
<b>kingis-puikko</b>	type of ice lolly	<b>sa i n</b>	I've got
		<b>suklaa tuutti</b>	chocolate cone
<b>kiska→kioski</b>		<b>teke e mieli X</b>	could really go for an X
<b>kuus→kuusi</b>	six		
<b>käänty</b>	turns	<b>tossa→tuo ssa</b>	there
<b>mä kin</b>	I, too	<b>Valio</b>	(brand name)
<b>markka</b>	(Finnish) mark	<b>viikko raha</b>	(weekly) pocket money
<b>mennäaks→</b>		<b>yks→yksi</b>	
<b>mennäänkö</b>			



## Language points

### Colloquial forms

You may have noticed that demonstratives have special shortened forms which occur in colloquial contexts, e.g. **tossa** for **tuossa** in the dialogue above. In particular, note:

more formal:	<b>tuo</b>	<b>nuo</b>	<b>tämä</b>	<b>nämä</b>
more colloquial:	<b>toi</b>	<b>noi</b>	<b>tää</b>	<b>nää</b>

**Exercise 1** Practise your knowledge of demonstratives (and revise the accusative) by putting these into Finnish:

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_97	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_98	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 98

- 1 What do you want, these or (**vai**) those?
- 2 What do you want, ice cream (**jäätelö**) or cake?
- 3 Do you want wine, beer, or juice?
- 4 I'll eat these sandwiches.
- 5 Here's a chocolate cone.

### Dialogue 3

#### Mummolaan

#### Going to Granny's

#### Lähtö

#### Setting out

ÄITI: Joko<sup>1</sup> kaikki on valmiina? Nyt pitäis jo<sup>1</sup> lähtee mummon luo.

ISÄ: Onks kukat mukana?

MALTA: Ne on jo autossa.<sup>2</sup>

AITI: Sit mennään!

ISÄ: Ja Matti muistaa sitten<sup>3</sup> ettei ota enempää kuin kaks palaa täytekakkua.

MATTI: Mut ku<sup>4</sup> mummon täytekakku on niin hyvää.

AITI: Ja nyt kyllä mentiin!

MOTHER: *Is everything ready? We ought to be leaving for Granny's now.*

FATHER: *Got the flowers?*

MALTA: *They're in the car.*

MOTHER: *Let's go, then!*

FATHER: *And Matti will remember not to take more than two pieces of (filled) cake, won't he?*

MATTI: *But Granny's filled cake is so good!*

MOTHER: *Right, let's get going!*

1 **Joko**: the little word **jo** is often more an indication of diminishing patience, rather than the equivalent of English 'already'.

2 **autossa**: most foreign words, acronyms, and slang are susceptible only to quantitative consonant compression (tt>t, etc.; Unit 1). Thus **t** remains **t** in **autossa** and **Natossa** 'in NATO', **k** remains **k** in **hetekalla** 'on the sofa bed', and **p** remains **p** in **mopolla** 'on (her) motor scooter'.

[< previous page](#)

page\_98

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_99

[next page >](#)

Page 99

3 **sitten**: this word often merely indicates earnestness.

4 **ku(n)** 'when, since' here points to an omitted clause like 'it's so difficult for me to restrain myself'

### ***Mummon luona*** ***At Granny's***

MUMMO: Tervetuloa! Olipa hauska<sup>1</sup> että tulitte.

MATTI: Me tuotiin mummolle kukkia.

MUMMO: No kiitos. Tulkaa peremmälle. Mitä teille kuuluu?

AITI: Kiitos ihan hyvää. Entä itsellesi?

MUMMO: Hyvää vaan. Kahvi onkin ihan valmista. Istutaan pöytään!

MATTI: Mummo, saiskos palan kakkua?

MUMMO: Sitä vartenhan se on tehty. Annahan lautasesi Matti!

AITI: Isä ojennahan kuppisi niin kaadan kahvia.

MAIJA: Sunnuntait on aina kivoja, ku tullaan mummolaan!

GRANNY: *Welcome! You've come at just the right time.*

MATTI: *We brought Granny flowers.*

GRANNY: *Well, thank you! Come through! How are you all?*

MOTHER: *Quite well, thanks. And you?*

GRANNY: *Fine, fine. The coffee's just ready, as well. Let's sit down (to table)!*

MATTI: *Granny, can I have a piece of cake?*

GRANNY: *That's what it's made for! Give me your plate, Matti.*

MOTHER: *Pass your cup, Father, and I'll pour the (lit. some) coffee.*

MAIJA: *Sundays, when we come to Granny's, are always wonderful!*

1 **Oli|pa hauska** 'how nice...' The past tense is sometimes used, particularly with —**pA**, to express enthusiasm or sudden discovery.

### *Vocabulary*

<b>aina</b>	always	<b>ihan</b>	quite, rather
<b>auto</b>	car	<b>istu-</b>	sits
<b>enempä ä</b>	more sP	<b>itse si</b>	yourself
<b>entä</b>	and (what about...?)	<b>jo ko</b>	yet (in questions)
<b>ett ei=että+ei</b>		<b>kaata</b>	pours
<b>hauska</b>	pleasant, nice; fun	<b>kaikki e</b>	all, every

[< previous page](#)

page\_99

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_100

[next page >](#)

Page 100

**kakku**

cake

**mut→mutta**

<b>kiva</b>	great, lovely	<b>ojenta-</b>	extends, offers, passes
<b>ku(n)</b>	when, since, because		
<b>kuin</b>	than; as, like	<b>pala</b>	piece
<b>kukka</b>	flower	<b>pere mmä lle</b>	(to) further in
<b>kuppi si</b>	your cup	<b>pitais→pitaisi</b>	
<b>lautase si</b>	your plate	<b>pöytä än</b>	(sitting down) to table
<b>X n luo</b>	to X's place		
<b>X n luona</b>	at X's place	<b>teh ty</b>	made
<b>lähtee→lähteä</b>		<b>tul i tte</b>	you (plural/ formal) came
<b>lähtö</b>	departure		
<b>men tiin</b>	(it's time) we went	<b>tuo tiin</b>	(we) brought
<b>muista</b>	remembers	<b>täyte kakku</b>	filled cake
<b>muka na</b>	along (with one)	<b>valmi i na</b>	ready (pESS)
<b>mummo</b>	grandma, Granny	<b>valmis ta</b>	ready sP
<b>Mummola</b>	Granny's place	<b>X TA varten</b>	for X

## Language points

### The simple past tense

The Finnish simple past tense corresponds to two past tenses in English. These are the English simple past ('I said', 'you took', 'she went', 'they bought'), and the imperfect ('I was saying', 'you were taking', 'she was going', 'they were buying').

The suffix is **-i-**, attached directly to the verb stem. To the *right* of this **-i-** you put the same endings as those of the present tense, except that there is no lengthening of the vowel in the third person. Contrast:

s3 present:	<b>se sano o</b>	(s)he/it says
s3 past:	<b>se sano i</b>	(s)he/it said/was saying

To the *left* of the past-tense **-i-**, certain vowel changes occur. (*Tip:* Since many of these vowel changes—but not all!—are the same as those you learned in connection with the pluralizer **-i-** in the previous unit, a comparison with those rules will be well repaid.)

Here's a summary, which you should have a look through now and use as a reference later. To the left of the **-i-** of the past tense

Class III verbs lose their final **e**:

**mä men|i|n** I went/was going (stem: **mene-**)

Page 101

**sä tul|it** you came/were coming (stem: **tule-**)  
**se oli** (s)he/it was (stem: **ole-**)  
**sä pääs|i|t** you managed to go/come (stem: **pääse-**)

Class IV verbs reduce their long vowel or diphthong. This means:

**aa>a**            **uo>o**  
**ää>ä**            **yö>ö**  
**oi>o**            **ie>e**  
**mä sa|i|n** I received/was receiving (stem: **saa-**)  
**sä to|i|t** you brought/were bringing (stem: **tuo-**)  
**he sö|i|vät** they ate/were eating (stem: **syö-**)  
**ne reago|i** they reacted (stem: **reagoi-**)

In class II verbs, **X** is read as **s**, **XE** as **n**, and **TSE** as **ts**:

**mä** I noticed/was noticing (stem: **huomaX-**)  
**huomas|i|n**  
**pimen|i** it got/was getting dark (stem: **pimeXE-**, from **pimeä**  
**dark**)  
**sä mainits|i|t** you mentioned/were mentioning (stem: **mainiTSE**)

Class I verbs are a bit more complicated. We may summarize their changes as follows:

Stem-final **i**, **e**, **ä** are deleted:

**mä ets|i|n** I searched/was searching (stem: **etsi-**)  
**sä lu|i|t** you read/were reading (stem: **luke-**)  
**se kesti** it lasted/was lasting (stem: **kestä-**)

In bisyllabic stems, final **a** changes to **o** if the first (or only) vowel of the first syllable is unrounded (**i**, **e**, **a**; see page 4):

**mä auto|i|n** I helped/was helping (stem: **autta-**)  
**sä anno|i|t** you gave/were giving (stem: **anta-**)  
**se alko|i** (s)he/it began/was beginning (stem: **alka-**)  
**hän virkko|i** (s)he uttered/was uttering (stem: **virikka-**)

Otherwise, the final **a** is deleted. This deletion of **a** therefore occurs in bisyllabic stems whose first (or only) vowel of the first syllable is rounded, for example:

**mä muut|i|n** I moved house (stem: **muutta-**)  
**sä ost|i|t** you bought (stem: **osta-**)

and in all stems that are more than two syllables long:

Page 102

- mä tarkast|i|n** I checked (stem: **tarkasta-**, cf. **tarkka** exact)  
**mä nukahd|i|n** I fell asleep (stem: **nukahta-**, cf. **nukku**-sleeps)  
**sä opet|i|t** you taught (stem: **opetta-**, cf. **opiskele**-studies)  
**se tuijott|i** (s)he/it stared (stem: **tuijotta-**)

One last rule: a single **t**, if preceded by a vowel, **n**, **l**, or **r**, usually changes to **s** if it is to the left of a stem-final **A** (**a** or **ä**) which is deleted by the **-i-** of the past tense.

Examples:

- mä pyys|i|n** I requested (stem: **pyytä-**)  
**mä ties|i|n** I knew (stem: **tietä-**)  
**sä löys|i|t** you found (stem: **löytä-**)  
**sä kiels|i|t** you forbade (stem: **kieltä-**)  
**se huus|i** (s)he/it shouted (stem: **huuta-**)  
**se lens|i** (s)he/it flew (stem: **lentä-**, cf. **lent**=o+kenttä airport)

The most frequently used verbs which are exceptions to this **t>s** rule are **pitä-** ‘holds’ (**mä pid|i|n**), **vetä-** ‘pulls’ (**mä ved|i|n**), **souta-** ‘rows’ (**mä soud|i|n**), and **nouta-** ‘fetches’ (**mä noud|i|n**).

*Note on consonant compression:* past-tense forms compress exactly as their corresponding present-tense forms. Notice the parallels:

	<i>anta-</i>	<i>luke-</i>	<i>tapaX-</i>	<i>tarkeXE-</i>	stem
present	<b>anna t</b>	<b>lue n</b>	<b>tapaa n</b>	<b>tarkene t</b>	
past	<b>anno i t</b>	<b>lu i n</b>	<b>tapas i n</b>	<b>tarken i t</b>	
	yes		no		compressed

Here are the full past-tense paradigms of four verbs, **otta-** ‘takes’, **huomaX-** ‘notices’, **mene-** ‘goes’, and **jää-** ‘remains, stays’. The more formal first person plural forms (with **-mme**) are given here; for the usual colloquial indefinite forms, see later on in this unit.

	<i>ottah</i>	<i>uomaX</i>	<i>mene</i>	<i>jää-</i>
s1	ot i n	huomas i n	men i n	jä i n
s2	ot i t	huomas i t	men i t	jä i t
s3	se ott i	se huomasi	se meni	se jäi
p1	ot i mme <sup>1</sup>	huomas i mme <sup>1</sup>	men i mme <sup>1</sup>	jä i mme <sup>1</sup>
p2	ot i tte	huomas i tte	men i tte	jä i tte
p3	ne ott i <sup>2</sup>	ne huomasi <sup>2</sup>	ne meni <sup>2</sup>	ne jäi <sup>2</sup>

1 In more colloquial contexts, the past indefinite is used: see the section later in this unit.

2 In more formal contexts: **he otti|vat, he huomasi|vat, he meni|vät, he jäi|vät.**

**Exercise 2** Change these verb phrases from present to past, or vice versa.

Model: **mä lennän>mä lensin**

1	sä ostit
2	he sanovat
3	te osaatte
4	me halusimme
5	mä voin
6	hän muutti
7	ne saapuu
8	mä tarvitsen
9	se juo
10	me huudamme

**Exercise 3** Translate the following sentences into Finnish. In every case, the simple past tense will work.

1	Where were you?
2	What did she say?
3	The cat ate the mouse ( <b>hiiri e</b> ).
4	I helped a little.
5	Did you see him?
6	They took it away.
7	Where did you put ( <b>pistä-</b> ) it?
8	Who mentioned it?
9	Who did you give it to?
10	Where did you find it?

[< previous page](#)

page\_103

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_104

[next page >](#)

## The negative past

The negative past is made of two parts: the negative verb and the *past active participle*. Compare these positive and negative forms:

positive:	<b>mä sano j n</b>	I said
negative:	<b>mä en sano nut</b>	I didn't say
positive:	<b>lu j tteko te</b>	did you read?
negative:	<b>ettekö luke neet</b>	didn't you read?

You build the past active participle by attaching the suffix **-nUt** (singular)/**-neet** (plural) to the verb stem. Attaching it is quite straightforward: you simply add it to the stems of class I and IV verbs:

<b>luke nut</b>	read
<b>sano nut</b>	said
<b>kieltä nyt</b>	prohibited
<b>saa nut</b>	got

The chunks (**X**, **TSE**, **XE**) at the end of class II verbs assimilate to the **n**:

<b>huoman nut</b>	noticed (stem: <b>huomaX-</b> )
<b>mainin nut</b>	mentioned (stem: <b>mainiTSE-</b> )
<b>paen nut</b>	escaped (stem: <b>pakeXE-</b> )

Dental stems (class III) behave in the opposite way: they lose their final **e**, and the **n** of **-nUt** assimilates to their last consonant:

<b>tul lut</b>	come (stem: <b>tule-</b> )
<b>men nyt</b>	gone (stem: <b>mene-</b> )
<b>pääs syt</b>	managed to go/come (stem: <b>pääse-</b> )
<b>pur rut</b>	bitten (stem: <b>pure-</b> )

The two stems **näke-** and **teke-** are idiosyncratic:

<b>näh nyt</b>	seen (stem: <b>näke-</b> )
<b>teh nyt</b>	done (stem: <b>teke-</b> )

(You have already met this behaviour in their indefinite forms: **näh|dään**, **teh|dään**).

*Exercise 4* Change positive to negative, and vice versa.

- 1 Se ei mennyt.
- 2 Ne tuli.



Page 105

- 3       Mä en istunut tässä.
- 4       He eivät sanoneet.
- 5       Näitkö sen?
- 6       Mä en lukenut sitä.
- 7       Me emme ostaneet uutta autoa.
- 8       Me tapasimme.
- 9       Hän sai kirjeen Tanjalta.
- 10      Ne ei lähettäneet rahaa.

#### Dialogue 4

#### *Itsenäisyyspäivä (6.12)*

#### **Finland's Independence Day, 6 December**

(Suomi itsenäistyi Venäjästä 1917)

*At university*

ARTO: Oliver, olet sä kuullut, että yliopistolla on itsenäisyyspäiväjuhla ens viikolla, itsenäisyyspäivänä.

OLIVER: Ai jaa? Onks sinne kutsuttu kaikki opiskelijatkin?

ARTO: Joo on, mutta liput on kyllä aika kalliit; 50 (viiskyt) markkaa.

OLIVER: Siinä tapauksessa mä taidan jättää ne juhlat väliin. Miten muuten suomalaiset viettävät itsenäisyyspäivää?

ARTO: Aika perinteisesti. Kello kuus illalla sytytetään ikkunalle kaksi kynttilää, joita poltetaan kahdeksaan asti.

OLIVER: Se on varmaan tosi kauniinnäköistä. Mitä ihmiset sitten tekee sinä aikana?

ARTO: Monet katsovat presidentinlinnan tanssiaisia TV:stä. Siellä voi nähdä kaikki Suomen julkkikset. Kutsua linnan tanssiaisiin pidetään kunnia-asiana.

OLIVER: Minusta tuntuu, että minäkin aion viettää itsenäisyyspäivää perinteisesti, sytyttämällä kynttilät ja katsomalla tanssiaisia!

*(Finland became independent of Russia in 1917)*

ARTO: *Oliver, have you heard? There's going to be an Independence Day*

celebration at university next week.

OLIVER: *Oh yes? And are all students invited to it?*

ARTO: *Yes, they are. But the tickets are pretty expensive, to be sure: 50 marks.*

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_105	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_106	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 106

OLIVER: *In that case I'll probably give that celebration a miss. How do Finns celebrate Independence Day, anyway?*

ARTO: *Pretty traditionally. At six o'clock in the evening they light two candles in the window, and burn them (lit. which they burn) until eight.*

OLIVER: *That must be really beautiful-looking. What do people do during that time?*

ARTO: *Many watch the dancing at the Presidential Palace on TV. You can see all of Finland's celebrities there. An invitation to the Palace Ball is considered a great honour.*

OLIVER: *Seems to me I'll be spending Independence Day traditionally, as well, lighting candles and watching the dancing!*

### Vocabulary

<b>ai!</b>	Oh!	<b>kymppi</b> →	
<b>aika</b>	fairly, pretty	<b>kymmenen</b>	
<b>aiko</b>	intends	<b>kymppii</b> →	
<b>ens</b> → <b>ensi</b>	next	<b>kymppi ä sP</b>	
<b>ihmise t</b>	people	<b>kynttilä</b>	candle
<b>itsenäisty</b>	becomes independent	<b>linna</b>	palace, castle, fortress
<b>itsenäisyys te</b>	independence	<b>lippu</b>	ticket; flag
<b>jaa</b>	yeah, yes	<b>miten</b>	how?
<b>jo l ta</b>	which pP (relative pronoun)	<b>mone t</b>	many
<b>juhla</b>	celebration	<b>musta</b> → <b>minusta</b>	in my opinion
<b>julkkis</b>	(stem: <b>julkkikse</b> ; NB no compression) celebrity	<b>muuten</b>	by the way; otherwise
		<b>perinteise sti</b>	traditionally
		<b>pitä-</b>	holds,

<b>jättä ä se n väli in</b>	gives it a miss	<b>poltta-</b>	considers burns
<b>kalliX</b>	beautiful	<b>presidentti si nä aika na</b>	president during/at that time
<b>katso</b>	looks at, watches	<b>sytyttä-</b>	lights, ignites
<b>katso ma lla</b>	by watching	<b>sytyttä mä llä</b>	by lighting
<b>kunnia-asia</b>	matter of honour	<b>tanssiaise t</b>	dance, ball
<b>kutsu</b>	invitation	<b>tapaus kse</b>	case
<b>kutsu</b>	invites	<b>tosi</b>	really
<b>kutsu ttu</b>	invited	<b>tuntu-</b>	seems
<b>kuul lut</b>	heard		

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_106](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_107](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 107

<b>varma an</b>	certainly	<b>X #n asti</b>	until X
<b>viettä-</b>	spends (time); celebrates	<b>X n näköinen</b>	X-looking, looking like X
<b>voi</b>	one can	<b>yliopisto</b>	university

## Language points

### The third infinitive

We'll skip the second infinitive here and go straight to the third infinitive, because it's a much more useful form to know when you're starting Finnish.

You form it by adding **=mA** to the verb stem; any **X** at the end of the stem gets read as **A**. Here are examples from each verb class, with illative, elative, and inessive endings:

Stem	Third infinitive	Illative	Elative	Inessive
hake-	<b>hake ma</b>	<b>hake ma an</b>	<b>hake ma sta</b>	<b>hake ma ssa</b>
tapaX-	<b>tapaa ma</b>	<b>tapaa ma an</b>	<b>tapaa ma sta</b>	<b>tapaa ma ssa</b>
opiskele-	<b>opiskele ma</b>	<b>opiskele ma an</b>	<b>opiskele ma sta</b>	<b>opiskele ma ssa</b>
käy-	<b>käy mä</b>	<b>käy mä än</b>	<b>käy mä stä</b>	<b>käy mä ssä</b>

The most common use of the third infinitive is as a continuation or an accompaniment to some other verb. It then stands in some case form; this is the *illative* in goal-like situations:

<b>Mä tulen hake ma an liput.</b>	I'll come and fetch the tickets.
<b>Mennään hiihtä mä än!</b>	Let's go skiing!
<b>Se tuli käy mä än.</b>	(S)he came to visit.
<b>Se hakee opiskele ma an</b>	(S)he is applying to study at

**yliopistoon.** university.  
**Se kumartui nosta|ma|an sitä.** (S)he bent down to pick it up.  
**Se pyysi mua hake|ma|an sen.** (S)he asked me to fetch it.  
**Ne pakotti mut teke|mä|än sen.** They forced me to do it.

Verbs which are common with this sort of construction include **pakotta-** ‘forces’, **saa-** ‘gets’, **autta-** ‘helps’, **pyytä-** ‘asks’, and **käske-** ‘orders, commands’.

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_107	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_108	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 108

The *elative* is used to convey the notion of source or of distancing:

**Me tullaan hiihtä|mä|stä.**

We’re (just) coming from skiing.

**Hän esti minua lähte|mä|stä.**

(S)he kept me from leaving.

**Lääkäri kielsi sitä tupakoi|ma|sta.**

The doctor ordered her/him not to smoke, (lit. prohibited her/him from smoking)

The *inessive* applies to simultaneity or duration:

**Se oli Suomessa teke|mä|ssä elokuvaa.**

(S)he was in Finland making a film.

**Se ero on koko ajan häviä|mä|ssä.**

That distinction is disappearing all the time. (häviX- disappears, vanishes)

The *adessive* is frequently used to convey means or method:

**sytyttä|mä|llä kynttilät**

by lighting the candles

**Se haluaa auttaa tarjoa|ma|lla työtä.**

(S)he wants to help by offering work.

Finally, the *abessive* (-**ttA**) indicates that something did *not* happen; any subject of such a verb form is put into the genitive.

### Se lähti Pekan huomaamatta.

(S)he left without Pekka's noticing.

**Exercise 5** It follows from what you have just read in the section above that you can say *Sit down and wait!* by combining the imperative of 'sit' (formal **istukaa**, intimate **istuQ**) with the illative of the third infinitive of 'wait' (**odotta|ma|an**). Practise this model by putting these into Finnish; use both formal and intimate forms of the imperative:

- 1 Come (plural) home and eat!
- 2 Run (singular intimate) over there (**tuonne**) and have a look (**katso-**)!
- 3 Go (singular intimate) swimming (**ui-**)!
- 4 Go (plural; use **lähte-**) for a walk (**kävele-**)!

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_108](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_109](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 109

### *The past indefinite*

Forming the past indefinite of a verb is easy if you know its present indefinite; if you feel shaky about forming those, you might want to revise now (Unit 5).

The procedure is this: if the present indefinite ends in vowel plus **tAAn**, change the **tAAn** to **ttiin**:

present indefinite:	<b>anne taan</b>	<b>halu taan</b>	<b>tarvi taan</b>
past indefinite:	<b>anne ttiin</b>	<b>halu ttiin</b>	<b>tarvi ttiin</b>

Otherwise, change **dAAn**, **nAAn**, **rAAn**, **tAAn** or **lAAn** to **tiin**:

present indefinite:	<b>saa daan</b>	<b>pur raan</b>	<b>pääs tään</b>	<b>opiskel laan</b>
past indefinite:	<b>saa tiin</b>	<b>pur tiin</b>	<b>pääs tiin</b>	<b>opiskel tiin</b>

**Exercise 6** Change present to past, and vice versa.

- 1 Me mennään hiihtämään.
- 2 Me katsottiin televisiota.
- 3 Mitä me syöttiin?
- 4 Me halutaan rauhaa (peace).

### *More on colloquial forms*

Earlier in this unit, colloquial variants such as **tossa** (for **tuossa**) were mentioned. Three more types of pronunciation characteristic of colloquial speech are (1) omission of final **i** after **s** as in **isä pyys** for **isä pyysi** ‘father asked (me)’, (2) levelling of vowel sequences such as **iä, eä, ua** into **ii, ee, uu**: **kymppii** for **kymppiä**, **hirveesti** for **hirveästi**, **kossuu** for **kossua**, and (3) the omission of the **-mA-** of the third infinitive illative of verbs class I and III, i.e. just **-#n** instead of **-mA-#n**, e.g. **hakeen** instead of **hakemaan**, **tuleen** instead of **tulemaan**. In casual speech this final **n** is usually simply nasality, or even dropped; more in Unit 7.

When you speak, you should practise using both types of pronunciation, the more formal and the more colloquial.

**Exercise 7** Here are some colloquial forms. Guess at the forms in more formal Finnish, then check your answers in the back of this book.

- |   |            |
|---|------------|
| 1 | tärkee     |
| 2 | oikeestaan |

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_109	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_110	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 110

- |   |         |
|---|---------|
| 3 | hulluks |
| 4 | puhuun  |
| 5 | pitäis  |

### *Emphasis and word order*

To lend special emphasis to a part of a sentence, you can simply say that part more loudly, e.g. **Mä tilasin kahvin** ‘I ordered a *coffee*’ But Finns also emphasize by moving the subject or the object away from its normal position. Thus another way to emphasize that it’s coffee that you ordered is to say: **Kahvin mä tilasin**. ‘It’s a *coffee* I ordered.’ Similarly, you can emphasize the subject by saying **Kahvin tilasin minä** ‘It’s I who ordered the coffee.’ Notice that in both these examples, the emphasized words are either last or first in the sentence.

And that is the basic rule. There are three fine points which you will also find useful to know:

- 1 When the emphasized word is at the beginning of the sentence, the verb comes last, e.g. **Kahvin mä sulle tilasin** ‘It’s *coffee* I ordered for you’, **Minä kahvin sulle tilasin** ‘It’s *I* who ordered you coffee.’
- 2 To emphasize the verb, put it first in the sentence. Finns often add the clitic-**pA(s)**, e.g. **Tilasinpa(s) sulle kahvin!** ‘I *did* order you a coffee!’
- 3 To emphasize something which is being negated, sandwich it between the

negative verb and the connegative, and say the emphasized word more loudly, e.g. **En minä kahvia tilannut** 'It wasn't *I* who ordered coffee' or **En minä kahvia tilannut** 'It wasn't *coffee* I ordered'.

[< previous page](#)

page\_110

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_111

[next page >](#)

Page 111

7

**Eiiks ookki ihana päästä kotiin joulunviettoon!**

**Isn't it great to get home for Christmas!**

**In this unit you will learn:**

- about Finnish banknotes, and who is on them
- about number words like 'tenner', 'trio', 'triplets', and 'triangle'
- taxi talk
- more about food, particularly Christmas specialities
- how to form and use the perfect tense and its associated participles

**Dialogue 1** 

*Seteleitä*

**Finnish Banknotes**

PAUL: Hei kuka tässä kahden kymppin setelissä on?

MATTI: Väinö Linna, hyvin tunnettu kirjailija. Se on kirjoittanut kaks tosi hyvää teosta, joista molemmista on tehty myös filmi: *Täällä pohjan tähden alla* ja *Tuntematon sotilas*.

PAUL: Kulttuurihenkilö siis. Meillä USA:ssa seteleissä on presidenttejä.

MATTI: No niin oli meilläkin aikaisemmin, mut nyt on sitten suomalaisia kulttuurivaikuttajia.

PAUL: Kenen muun kuvia on suomalaisissa seteleissä?

MATTI: Viiskymppisessä on Alvar Aalto, varmaan kuuluisin Suomen arkkitehteistä, satasessa on Jean Sibelius, sanooks nimi sulle jotain?

[< previous page](#)

page\_111

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_112

[next page >](#)

PAUL: Sibeliuksesta mä oon kuullu. Mä olin jopa kesällä konsertissa, jossa soitettiin enimmäkseen Sibeliusta, mm. (muummuassa) Finlandia hymni.

MATTI: Viissatasessa on Elias Lönnroth, Kalevalan kokoaja ja tonnissa on Antti Chydenius, 1800-luvun liberaali taloustieteilijä ja pappi.

PAUL: *Say, who's this on (lit. in) the ten(-mark) note?*

MATTI: *Väinö Linna, a well-known writer. He wrote two really good works, both of which have been made into films: Here beneath the Northern Star, and The Unknown Soldier.*

PAUL: *A culture-hero (lit. culture-person), then. In the States we have presidents on our banknotes.*

MATTI: *Well, we did, too, formerly, but now we have Finns who have had cultural influence.*

PAUL: *Who else's picture's on Finnish banknotes?*

MATTI: *Alvar Aalto, surely the most famous Finnish architect, is on the 50(-mark note). Jean Sibelius is on the hundred; does the name ring a bell (lit. say anything to you)?*

PAUL: *Sibelius I've heard about. I was even at a concert (last) summer where they played mostly Sibelius, including Finlandia Hymn.*

MATTI: *On the 500 note is Elias Lönnroth, the compiler of the Kalevala; and on the thousand is Antti Chydenius, the nineteenth-century liberal economist and clergyman.*

### Vocabulary

<b>X n alla</b>	under X	<b>kirjoitta nut</b>	written
<b>aikaisemmin</b>	earlier	<b>kokoaja</b>	collector, compiler
<b>arkkitehti</b>	architect	<b>konsertti</b>	concert
<b>enimmäkseen</b>	for the most part	<b>kulttuuri</b>	culture
<b>filmi</b>	film	<b>kuullu→kuul lut</b>	heard
<b>henkilö</b>	person	<b>kuuluis in</b>	the most famous
<b>hymni</b>	hymn	<b>kuva</b>	picture
<b>hyvin</b>	well; very	<b>liberaali</b>	liberal
<b>jo i sta</b>	from which	<b>1800-luku</b>	nineteenth century
<b>jopa</b>	even	<b>mm. muu n</b>	<i>inter alia</i>
<b>jossa</b>	in which	<b>mua ssa</b>	
<b>kene n</b>	whose?	<b>(muummuassa)</b>	



**kirjailija** writer      **molemmi|sta** from both

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_112](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_113](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 113

<b>oon</b> → <b>ole n</b>		<b>tieteilijä</b>	scientist; scholar
<b>pappi</b>	minister, pastor, parson	<b>tonni</b>	one grand; 1,000 marks
<b>pohja</b>	bottom, basis; north	<b>tunne ttu</b>	known
<b>presidentti</b>	president	<b>tunte ma ton</b>	unknown
<b>satanen</b>	100-er (100-mark note)	<b>tähti</b> <i>te</i>	star
<b>seteli</b>	banknote	<b>vaikutta ja</b>	one who influences
<b>siis</b>	then, so	<b>varmaan</b>	certainly, surely
<b>sotila</b> <b>X</b>	soldier	<b>viiskymppinen</b>	50-er (50-mark note)
<b>talous</b> <i>te</i>	economy	<b>viissatanen</b>	500-er (500-mark note)
<b>teos</b> <i>kse</i>	work (of art)		

### Language points

#### Nouns from numbers

You have already met the simple numerals in Unit 2. Here you make the acquaintance of some of the more common nouns derived from these.

In addition to words like **viisi|kymppi|nen** ‘50-mark note’, **sata|nen** ‘100-mark note’, which are derived simply by the addition of **=nen**, there are also derivatives built, somewhat capriciously, with **=Onen** and **=ikko**. These refer to anything with a number written on it, a door, for example, or a bus; or even to the figure of the number itself:

1 ykkönen	7 seiska
2 kakkonen	8 kasi
3 kolmonen	9 ysi
4 nelonen	10 kymppi
5 viitonen	100 satanen
6 kuutonen	

So **kasi** can mean ‘figure 8’ or ‘the number 8 bus’ or ‘room number 8’, depending on the context. (Another way to refer to the bus is **bussi numero kahdeksan**.)

Another flock of useful vocabulary is made from numerals plus **=iO**:

<b>yksiö</b>	bedsit	<b>neliö</b>	square
<b>kaksio</b>	two-room flat	<b>kuutio</b>	cube

**kolmio** triangle

[< previous page](#) [page\\_113](#) [next page >](#)

[< previous page](#) [page\\_114](#) [next page >](#)

Page 114

Notice also **kulmio**, from **kulma** ‘corner’, which forms words like **viisi|kulmio** ‘pentagon’, **kuusi|kulmio** ‘hexagon’, and **kahdeksan| kulmio** ‘octagon’.

**Kaksose|t** are ‘twins’; **kolmose|t** are ‘triplets’.

There are also =**isen** forms of numerals, which give approximate quantities: **nelisen kilo|a** ‘about 4 kilos’, **viitisensataa markka|a** ‘about 500 marks’.

### *Unknown and helpless: ways of saying ‘without’*

You have already seen that one way to say ‘without sugar’ is to use **ilman** ‘without’ with the noun for ‘sugar’ in the partitive: **ilman sokeri|a**. Another way uses the suffix =**ttOmA**. This suffix is called the ‘privative’ because it deprives us of whatever the stem we add it to is offering. Added to nouns, it means something like ‘X-less’ or ‘X-free’.

<b>raha</b>	money	<b>raha ton</b>	moneyless
<b>uni e</b>	sleep, dream	<b>une ton</b>	sleepless
<b>hammas</b>	tooth (stem: <b>hampaX</b> )	<b>hampaa ton</b>	toothless

You add it to the third infinitive of verbs. The result is an adjective meaning something like ‘which hasn’t been X’d’, or ‘which doesn’t X’, for example:

**odotta|ma|ton** unexpected (**odotta-** ‘waits; expects’)  
**liikku|ma|ton** unmoving (**liikku-** ‘moves’)  
**tunte|ma|ton** unknown (**tunte-** ‘knows’)  
**sopi|ma|ton** inappropriate, unsuitable (**sopi-** ‘fits in well, is appropriate’)

As you can see, the **mA** at the end of the privative suffix comes out as **n** in the citation form; this **n** duly acts as a tight lid, compressing the **tt** to its left to **t**.

But the double **tt** hasn’t gone away. You can tell that it is still there because even though it looks and sounds like a single **t**, it compresses consonants to *its* left:

<b>apu</b>	help	<b>avuton</b>	helpless
<b>paita</b>	shirt	<b>paidaton</b>	shirtless
<b>jalka</b>	foot, leg	<b>jalaton</b>	without feet, without legs
<b>lanka</b>	wire	<b>langaton</b>	wireless

The double **tt** is there to see and hear plainly in most case forms, where the **m** is followed by a vowel and so there is no compression:

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_114	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_115	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 115

**uusi versio Tunte|ma|ttoma|sta sotilaa|sta**

a new version of *The Unknown Soldier* sELA

**une|ttom|i|a ö|i|tä**

sleepless nights pP

The **mA** changes to **n** also in the partitive singular, e.g. **veroton|ta öljy|ä** ‘tax-free oil’; compare **iME**-stems (Unit 5).

For revision and reference, here are the full paradigms of **langaton** ‘wireless’ and **puhelin** ‘telephone’:

**lanka=ttoMA puhel=iME**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
N	<b>langaton</b>	<b>langattoma t</b>	<b>puhelin</b>	<b>puhelime t</b>
G	<b>langattoma n</b>	<b>langattom i en</b>	<b>puhelime n</b>	<b>puhelim i en</b>
P	<b>langaton ta</b>	<b>langattom i a</b>	<b>puhelin ta</b>	<b>puhelim i a</b>
ELA	<b>langattoma sta</b>	<b>langattom i sta</b>	<b>puhelime sta</b>	<b>puhelim i sta</b>
INE	<b>langattoma ssa</b>	<b>langattom i ssa</b>	<b>puhelime ssa</b>	<b>puhelim i ssa</b>
ILL	<b>langattoma an</b>	<b>langattom i in</b>	<b>puhelime en</b>	<b>puhelim i in</b>
ABL	<b>langattoma lta</b>	<b>langattom i lta</b>	<b>puhelime lta</b>	<b>puhelim i lta</b>
ADE	<b>langattoma lla</b>	<b>langattom i lla</b>	<b>puhelime lla</b>	<b>puhelim i lla</b>
ALL	<b>langattoma lle</b>	<b>langattom i lle</b>	<b>puhelime lle</b>	<b>puhelim i lle</b>
ESS	<b>langattoma na</b>	<b>puhelime na</b>	<b>puhelim i na</b>	<b>langattom i na</b>
TRA	<b>langattoma ksi</b>	<b>langattom i ksi</b>	<b>puhelime ksi</b>	<b>puhelim i ksi</b>

**Exercise 1** Here are some nouns. What are their privatives?

- 1 loppu ‘end’
- 2 kenkä ‘shoe’
- 3 työ ‘work’
- 4 polku ‘path’
- 5 hammas ‘tooth’
- 6 maku ‘taste’
- 7 muoto ‘shape, form’

8	lumi ‘snow’
9	aurinko ‘sun’
10	virheQ ‘mistake’

**Exercise 2** Guess the English equivalents of these privatives built from verbs:

1	olematon
2	kirjoittamaton
3	pesemätön
4	leipomaton
5	syömätön
6	asumaton

[< previous page](#)      [page\\_115](#)      [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#)      [page\\_116](#)      [next page >](#)

Page 116

### *Past passive participle*

<b>Me ei menty sinne.</b>	We didn’t go there.
<b>Kirjettä ei annettu takaisin.</b>	They didn’t give the letter back/ The letter wasn’t returned.

As you can see from these examples, the past tense of the negative indefinite is formed with the negative form *ei* plus a verb form ending in **-(t)U**. This is one of the most common uses of this form, but there are several others, as well. You learn how to build this form (which is called the past passive participle) and more about using it in this section.

The past passive participle is really just an adjective made from verbs; it corresponds to the English ‘written’ and ‘falsified’ of ‘written instructions’ and ‘falsified ID’, but it is much more widely used in Finnish. For transitive verbs, a mechanical translation would go something like ‘which has been X’d’; for intransitive verbs, something like ‘which has X’d’. You will learn one very common use of this participle later in this unit; but first let’s see how to form it.

You form the past passive participle as follows:

Add **-tU** to verbs of classes III and IV (notice that class III verbs lose their final **e**):

<b>opiskel tu</b>	(stem: <b>opiskele-</b> ‘studies’)
<b>pes ty</b>	(stem: <b>pese-</b> ‘washes’)
<b>men ty</b>	(stem: <b>mene-</b> ‘goes’)
<b>saa tu</b>	(stem: <b>saa-</b> ‘gets’)
<b>syö ty</b>	(stem: <b>syö-</b> ‘eats’)

Add **-ttU** to verbs of class I. Stem-final **A>e**:

<b>sano ttu</b>	(stem: <b>sano-</b> ‘says’)
<b>etsi tty</b>	(stem: <b>etsi-</b> ‘searches for’)
<b>lue ttu</b>	(stem: <b>hike-</b> ‘reads’)
<b>kanne ttu</b>	(stem: <b>kanta-</b> ‘carries’)
<b>kielle tty</b>	(stem: <b>kieltä-</b> ‘forbids, prohibits’)

Class II verbs also take **-ttU**, and they lose their final chunks **X**, **TSE**, **XE**, as well:

<b>huoma ttu</b>	(stem: <b>huomaX-</b> ‘notices’)
<b>tarvi ttu</b>	(stem: <b>tarviTSE-</b> ‘needs’)
<b>vaie ttu</b>	(stem: <b>vaikeXE</b> ‘falls/is silent’)

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_116</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_117</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 117

The past passive participles of the verbs of knowing **tietä-** and **tunte-** deserve special attention. From **tietä-** is formed, alongside the regular **tiede|tty**, the irregular past passive participle **tietty**; this latter is common in the meaning not only of ‘(well-)known’ but also of ‘certain (specific)’ as in **tiety|i|ssä tapauks|i|ssa** ‘in certain cases’. From **tunte-**, the regularly formed **tunne|ttu** means ‘well-known, famous’; ‘known’ in the sense of ‘familiar’ is **tuttu**.

*Note on compression.* As with the privative suffix, consonants which have been compressed by the past passive participle suffix remain compressed, regardless of any compression which that suffix itself may undergo. Thus the genitive singular of **käyte|tty** ‘(which has been) used’ (stem: **käyttä-**) is **käytety|n**, and the genitive singular of **unohdettu** ‘(which has been) forgotten’ (stem: **unohta-**) is **unohdetu|n**.

For your studying pleasure and for later reference, here’s a table of the full paradigms of the past passive participles of **käyte|tty** ‘used’ (from **käyttä-** ‘uses’) and **saatu** ‘received, acquired’. Look closely and you’ll see that there’s nothing so terribly new here; these are just adjectives, and as such they inflect like **reilu** ‘upright, straightforward’ or **juttu** ‘story, affair, thing’. The paradigm for the latter is placed alongside for the sake of comparison.

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
N	<b>käytetty</b>	<b>käytety t</b>	<b>saatu</b>	<b>saadu t</b>	<b>juttu</b>	<b>jutu t</b>
G	<b>käytety n</b>	<b>käytetty j en</b>	<b>saadu n</b>	<b>saatu j en</b>	<b>jutu n</b>	<b>juttu j en</b>
P	<b>käytetty ä</b>	<b>käytetty j ä</b>	<b>saatu a</b>	<b>saatu j a</b>	<b>juttu a</b>	<b>juttu j a</b>
ELA	<b>käytety stä</b>	<b>käytety i stä</b>	<b>saadu sta</b>	<b>saadu i sta</b>	<b>jutu sta</b>	<b>jutu i sta</b>
INE	<b>käytety ssä</b>	<b>käytety i ssä</b>	<b>saadu ssa</b>	<b>saadu i ssa</b>	<b>jutu ssa</b>	<b>jutu i ssa</b>
ILL	<b>käytetty yn</b>	<b>käytetty i hin</b>	<b>saatu un</b>	<b>saatu i hin</b>	<b>juttu un</b>	<b>juttu i hin</b>
ABL	<b>käytety ltä</b>	<b>käytety i ltä</b>	<b>saadu lta</b>	<b>saadu i lta</b>	<b>jutu lta</b>	<b>jutu i lta</b>
ADE	<b>käytety llä</b>	<b>käytety i llä</b>	<b>saadu lla</b>	<b>saadu i lla</b>	<b>jutu lla</b>	<b>jutu i lla</b>
ALL	<b>käytety lle</b>	<b>käytety i lle</b>	<b>saadu lle</b>	<b>saadu i lle</b>	<b>jutu lle</b>	<b>jutu i lle</b>

ESS käytetty|nä käytetty|i|nä saatu|na saatu|i|na juttu|na juttu|i|na  
TRA käytety|ksi käytety|i|ksi saadu|ksi saadu|i|ksi jutut|ksi jutut|i|ksi

The past passive participle is used as an adjective most often in written Finnish.  
Have a look at these rather formal examples of the past passive participle in action:

[< previous page](#) [page\\_117](#) [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#) [page\\_118](#) [next page >](#)

Page 118

**kive|ty|llä kadu|lla**

on a paved street (stem: **kiveX-** ‘paves’, cf. **kivi e** ‘stone’)

**kielle|ty|n kirja|n nimi**

the title of the banned book

**viime kevää|nä ava|tu|ssa panki|ssa**

in the bank (which was) opened last spring

**edellämainittu|i|hin ryhm|i|in**

into the above-mentioned groups (**ryhmä** ‘group’)

**niin sanottu|j|en normaal|i|en ihmis|t|en maailma|ssa**

in the world of so-called normal people

**Exercise 3** In this exercise you revise the privative and practise your past passive participles by converting one to the other and vice versa. The verb roots are **rakenta-** ‘builds’, **käyttä-** ‘uses’, **maalaX-** ‘paints’, **keittä-** ‘cooks’ and **kuori-** ‘peels’.

*Example:* **pesemätön** ‘unwashed’ > **pesty** ‘washed’.

- |   |              |
|---|--------------|
| 1 | rakentamaton |
| 2 | käytetty     |
| 3 | maalattu     |
| 4 | syömätön     |
| 5 | keittämätön  |
| 6 | kuorittu     |

### *The perfect tense*

The Finnish perfect tense means very much the same as the English perfect (‘I have written to him’, ‘she has come back’). In speech, its main function is to refer to

things that happened in the past but which still have relevance today.

Finnish often uses its perfect where English does just as well with a simple past. For example, in the dialogue above we have **Se on kirjoittanut kaks tosi hyvää teosta** 'He wrote two really good works.' Finnish uses the perfect tense here because it is the fact that the works still exist and can be enjoyed that is important, not merely the fact that Väinö Linna sat down at some time in the past and wrote them.

The way the perfect is formed differs from the English perfect in one important way. Unlike in English, where you use forms of the verb 'has' ('he has written'), in Finnish you use forms of the verb 'is', **ole-**. Have a look at these examples:

**Olen kirjoittanut sille.** I have written to him. (lit. 'I am...')

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_118	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_119	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 119

**Se on tullut takaisin.** She has come back. (lit. 'She is...')

The other part of the perfect is built from the main verb (here: 'write', 'come') in a form you have already learned. This is the past active participle, built with the suffix **-nut** (singular), **-neet** (plural) which you met in Unit 6. The singular-vs.-plural distinction is vital in second person forms; notice the difference between the following examples:

**Te olette tullut takaisin.**

You (singular, formal) have come back.

**Te olette tulleet takaisin.**

You (plural, possibly formal) have come back.

Here are some more examples of the perfect in action:

**Mä oon aina unelmoi|nut elämästä teatterissa.**

I've always dreamt of a life in the theatre, (**unelmoi-** 'dreams')

**On lakan|nut satamasta.**

It has stopped raining. (**lakkaX-** 'desists', **sata-** 'rains')

**Hän on autta|nut minua monin tavoin.**

(S)he has helped me in many ways.

**Olen hake|nut kahteen eri yliopistoon.**

I've applied to two different universities.

**Oletteko te asu|neet Helsingissä kauan?**

Have you (plural/formal) lived in Helsinki long?

Note that the past active participle is not the exact equivalent of English passive participles such as 'written'. For example, you do not say 'written instructions' and the like with **kirjoittanut**; contrast the past passive participle. (In a later unit we'll revise all the participles together.)

There is one further detail. Since in colloquial Finnish the first person plural is normally expressed by means of the indefinite, you must know how to form and recognize the perfect indefinite. Its makeup is, rather logically, (1) the indefinite of the verb **ole-** 'is' (**olla**), plus (2) the past passive participle. Examples:

**Me ollaan jo puhu|ttu tästä.** We've already talked about this.

**Me ollaan juo|tu kaikki oluet.** We've drunk all the beers.

Here is the full perfect-tense paradigm of **osta-** 'buys':

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_119</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_120</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 120

*Singular*

**1 (mä) oon ostanut**

**2 (sä) oot ostanut<sup>2</sup>**

**3 se on ostanut**

1 In more formal Finnish, **me olemme ostanee**.

*Plural*

**me ollaan ostettu<sup>1</sup>**

**(te) olette ostanee<sup>2</sup>**

**ne on ostanut<sup>3</sup>**

2 To address one person with politeness (and more formality), you say **te olette ostanut**.

3 In more formal Finnish, **he ovat ostanee**.

The *negative perfect* is formed with the appropriate negative forms of the verb **ole-**:

*Singular*

**1 mä en ole ostanut**

**2 sä et ole ostanut**

*Plural*

**me ei olla ostettu<sup>1</sup>**

**te ette ole ostanee**



3 **se ei ole ostanut** **ne ei ole ostanut**<sup>2</sup>  
1 In more formal Finnish, **me emme ole ostaneeet**.

2 In more formal Finnish, **he eivät ole ostaneeet**.

Here are some examples of the perfect tense in action. Note that omission (or assimilation, written here with superscript letters) of the final **t** is common.

<b>Se on kertonu<sup>k</sup> kaiken poliisille.</b>	(S)he has told the police everything.
<b>Ootsä koskaan lukenut tätä romaania?</b>	Have you ever read this novel?
<b>Mä oon soittanut taksin.</b>	I've called (for) a taxi.
<b>Me ollaan soitettu taksi.</b>	We've called (for) a taxi.
<b>Me ei olla oltu yhteydessä.</b>	We haven't been in touch.
<b>En ole<sup>n</sup> nähny<sup>(m)</sup> mitään.</b>	I haven't seen anything.
<b>Ettekö ole<sup>s</sup> saaneet lippuja?</b>	Haven't you (plural) got the tickets?
<b>Ootsä aina asunut täällä?</b>	Have you always lived here?
<b>Mä en ole<sup>v</sup> vielä päässyt ulos koko päivänä.</b>	I haven't (yet) been able to get out all day.
<b>Se ei ole<sup>k</sup> koskaan tehnyt muuta.</b>	(S)he's never done anything else.

[< previous page](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_120

page\_121

[next page >](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 121

<b>Tämä ei ole mitenkään helpottanut asiaa.</b>	This hasn't made the matter any easier.
---	---

**Exercise 4** Change the verb forms in these snippets into the perfect tense, then translate into English.

- 1 mä tulen
- 2 se hakee
- 3 ne saapuu
- 4 Ootsä Hesassa?
- 5 mä avaan ikkunan
- 6 me avataan ikkuna
- 7 me tullaan
- 8 hän tarvitsee apua
- 9 Mistä se saa rahan?
- 10 se pakenee

**Exercise 5** Change affirmative to negative and vice versa. Remember to change accusative/partitive, something/nothing (**jotain/ mitään**), yet/already (**vielä/jo**) as

appropriate.

*Example:* Ootsä lähettänyt kirjeen? Etsä ole<sup>1</sup> lähettänyt kirjettä?

- 1 Se on lähtenyt.
- 2 Mä olen huomannut sen.
- 3 Ne ei ole<sup>s</sup> sanonut mitään.
- 4 En mä ole<sup>v</sup> vielä nähnyt sitä.
- 5 Me ollaan jo puhuttu siitä.
- 6 Mä en ole tavannut häntä.

## Dialogue 2

### *Taksissa*

#### **A ride in a taxi**

To revise some of the grammar and vocabulary you've learned so far, ride with Juuso as he takes a taxi from Helsinki Station to Haukilahti ('Pike Bay'). Notice the use of the genitive (**taksi|n**) in **Taksin|kuljettaja** 'taxi driver'.

*Juuso takes a taxi from Helsinki Railway Station*

JUUSO: (*taksinkuljettajalle*) Oletteko vapaa?

TAKSINKULJETTAJA: Kyllä. Mihin mennään?

JUUSO: Haukilahteen, kiitos.

TAKSINKULJETTAJA: Mihin pain Haukilahtea?

JUUSO: Kuhatie neljään.

TAKSINKULJETTAJA: Osaatteko neuvoa Länsiväylältä? Olen ajanut niin vähän Espoossa, etten ole aivan varma siitä missä pain Haukilahtea Kuhatie on.

[< previous page](#)

page\_121

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_122

[next page >](#)

Page 122

JUUSO: Kyllä osaan. Paljonko se tulee maksamaan?

TAKSINKULJETTAJA: Siinä<sup>1</sup> 7–8 (seitsemän kahdeksan) kymppiä.

JUUSO: (*to the taxi driver*) Are you (*formal*) free?

TAKSINKULJETTAJA: *Yes. Where shall we go?*

JUUSO: *To Haukilahti, thanks.*

TAKSINKULJETTAJA: *(To) where (abouts) in Haukilahti?*

JUUSO: *To 4 Kuhatie ('Pike-perch Road').*

TAKSINKULJETTAJA: *Can you advise me from Länsiväylä (on)? I've driven so little in Espoo that I'm not quite sure (of it) where (abouts) Kuhatie is.*

JUUSO: *Sure, I can (advise you). How much will it come to (to cost)?*

TAKSINKULJETTAJA: *About 70 or 80 (marks).*

1 **siinä** 'about' (lit. 'in it')

### *Vocabulary*

<b>aivan</b>	quite	<b>neuvo-</b>	advises
<b>aja</b>	drives	<b>päin</b>	towards, about
<b>asema</b>	station	<b>rauta tie</b>	railway
<b>ett en=että e n</b>		<b>taksi</b>	taxi
<b>kuljetta</b>	drives	<b>vähän</b>	(a) little

**Exercise 6** Make up your own taxi dialogue. Tell the driver where you want to go, say where that is, ask how much it'll cost and how long it'll take. Here's some vocabulary to get you started:

**taksi|mittari** taxi metre      **taksi|asema** taxi rank

**Paljonko maksu on kilometri|ltä?**

How much is the charge per kilometre? (**tunni|lta** 'per hour')

**Kauanko sinne kestää ajaa?**

How long does it take to drive there?

**Voi(si)tteko viedä minut tähän osoittee|seen?**

Could you take me to this address?

Don't forget to use imperatives to get the driver to stop (**pysähty-**), keep going (**jatka-**), slow down (**hidasta-**), or wait (**odotta-**). When you get there, say:

**Tässä on hyvä, kiitos.**

Here is fine, thanks.

**Pitäkää lopu|t!**

Keep the change.

Page 123

### Dialogue 3

Listen to Tanja and Raija as they anticipate returning to Finland for Christmas.

#### *Jouluherkkuja* Yuletide treats

*On a plane about to take off for Finland*

RAIJA: Eiks ookki ihana päästä kotiin joulunviettoon.

TANJA: Nii. Tässä ei ookkaan vielä päässy jouluntunnelmaan.

RAIJA: Mä meen jouluks mummolaan. Entäs sä?

TANJA: Mä oon vaan kotona ja meinaan syödä paljon kinkkua.

RAIJA: Mun tekee tosi paljon mieli äidin imellettyä perunalaatikkoa.

TANJA: Teettekste ite lanttu- ja porkkanalaatikonki?

RAIJA: Joo. Me tehdään kotona kaikki jouluruuat, sillit, silakat, lipeäkala, rosolli ja jopa joulusinappi.

TANJA: Tykkäätsä todella lipeäkalasta?

RAIJA: No en, mut se kuuluu traditioon.

TANJA: Meillä leivotaan vaan piparit ja joulutortut ite.

RAIJA: *Isn't it great to be able to get home for Christmas!*

TANJA: *Yes. I haven't been able to get into a Christmasy mood here.*

RAIJA: *I'm going to my grandmother's for Christmas. What about you?*

TANJA: *I'll just be staying home, and I intend to eat a lot of ham.*

RAIJA: *I really could go for some of my mother's malted-potato casserole.*

TANJA: *Do you make your own swede casserole and carrot casserole, as well?*

RAIJA: *Sure. We make all the Christmas dishes at (our) house: herring, Baltic*

*herring, slippery cod, rosolli, and even Christmas mustard.*

TANJA: *Do you actually **like** slippery cod?*

RAIJA: *Well, no, but it's part of the tradition.*

TANJA: *At our house the only things we bake ourselves are gingersnaps and Christmas cake.*

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_123	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_124	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 124

### *Vocabulary*

<b>herkku</b>	gourmet item	<b>oon</b> → <b>ole</b>   <b>n</b>	
<b>ihana</b>	wonderful, lovely	<b>pipari</b>   <b>t</b>	gingersnaps
<b>imelle</b>   <b>tty</b>	malted	<b>porkkana</b>	carrot
<b>ite</b> → <b>itse</b>	self	<b>rosolli</b>	salad of salted herring,
<b>joulu</b>	Christmas		beetroot, carrots, etc.
<b>joulu</b>   <b>ks</b> →	for Christmas		
<b>joulu</b>   <b>ksi</b>		<b>ruua</b>   <b>t</b>	! pN of <b>ruoka</b>
<b>joulusinappi</b>	Christmas mustard		
<b>kinkku</b>	ham		'food, dish'
<b>kuulu</b>	belongs	<b>silli</b>	herring
<b>laatikko</b>	box; casserole	<b>teettekste</b> →	
<b>lanttu</b>	swede, rutabaga	<b>teettekö</b> <b>te</b>	
<b>lento</b>   <b>kone</b> Q	aeroplane	<b>tode</b>   <b>lla</b>	really, trully
<b>lipeäkala</b>	slippery cod, cod	<b>torttu</b>	cake
	soaked in lye	<b>traditio</b>	tradition
<b>meen</b> → <b>mene</b>   <b>n</b>		<b>tunnelma</b>	feeling, mood
<b>meina</b> X-	intends, means to	<b>vaan</b> → <b>vain</b>	only, just
<b>nii</b> → <b>niin</b>		<b>vietto</b>	
<b>ookkaan</b> →			( <b>viettä</b> - 'spends, celebration celebrates')
<b>olekaan</b>			
<b>ookki</b> → <b>olekin</b>			

### [Language points](#)

### *Colloquial pronunciation: three more fine points*

1 In colloquial contexts like that of the dialogue above, most Finns usually pronounce the common verbs **ole-**, **tule-**, **mene-**, and **pane-** ‘puts’ in a shortened way, namely as **oo-**, **tuu-**, **mee-**, and **paa-**. Here are examples of the forms in question:

more formal: **ole|n ei ole|Q tule|t mene|t pane|tte mene|<sup>s</sup> sinne!**

more colloquial: **oo|n ei o(o)|Q tuu|t mee|t paa|tte mee|<sup>s</sup> sinne!**

The **-Q** suffix of the imperative and connegative (as in **ei o**) means that following consonants will sound long; this lengthening is reflected in spellings such as **ookkaan** (formal **olekaan**).

2 Notice also that final **n** (but not the **n** of the genitive, or of the first person singular of verbs) is often merely nasality, or even

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_124	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_125	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 125

dropped: to indicate this, we will write **ku** instead of **kun**, **ookki** instead of **ookkin** (formal: **olekin**).

3 Many Finns pronounce **tt** (or even **t**) instead of **ts** in certain common words such as **itse** ‘self’ at least when they are in colloquial mode. Other examples are **kattoo** (>**katso**) ‘looks at, watches’) and **seittemän** (>**seitsemän**).

### **Extra reading**

#### *Imelletty perunalaatikko*

#### **A recipe for malted potato casserole**

There’s a translation of this recipe at the back of the book (see exercise 7); but try not to peek until you’ve given it an honest try with the help of the vocabulary given here.

#### *Imelletty perunalaatikko*

2 kg perunoita	2–3 rkl voisulaa
1 dl vehnä jauhoja	2 tl suolaa
4–5 dl maitoa	muskottipähkinää

Keitä perunat kypsiksi ja kuori ne heti höyryttämisen jälkeen. Survo perunat ja

ripota jauhot joukkoon. Anna seoksen imeltyä muutama tunti tai vaikka seuraavaan päivään. Sekoita pari kertaa. Lisää maito, voi ja mausteet. Kaada seos voideltuun uunivuokaan ja kypsennä 150 asteessa noin kaksi tuntia.

### Vocabulary

<b>anna X n</b> <b>Y TAQ</b>	let X Y	<b>joukko</b>	mass, bulk, heap
<b>asteQ</b>	degree	<b>kaata</b>	pours
<b>dl (deka litra)</b>	decalitre	<b>keittä-</b>	cooks, boils
<b>heti</b>	at once, right away	<b>kg</b> <b>(kilo gramma)</b>	kg
<b>höyryttäminen</b>	allowing to steam	<b>kuori-</b>	peels
<b>imelle tty</b>	malted	<b>kypsentä-</b>	ripens, roasts
<b>imelty-</b>	malts, becomes malted	<b>kyps i ksi</b>	‘until they are ready’ ( <b>kypsä</b> pTRA)
<b>jauho t</b>	flour, meal	<b>lisäX-</b>	adds

[< previous page](#)

page\_125

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_126

[next page >](#)

Page 126

<b>mausteQ</b>	spice	<b>survo-</b>	crushes, mashes, grinds
<b>muskotti pähkinä</b>	nutmeg	<b>tai</b>	or
<b>muutama</b>	a few	<b>tl</b>	teaspoon
<b>pari kerta a</b>	a few times	<b>(tee lusikka)</b>	
<b>ripotta-</b>	sprinkles	<b>tunti</b>	hour
<b>rkl</b>	tablespoon	<b>uuni</b>	oven
<b>(ruoka lusikka)</b>		<b>vaikka</b>	or even
<b>sekoitta-</b>	mixes, stirs, shuffles	<b>vehnä</b>	wheat
<b>seos kse</b>	mixture	<b>voi</b>	butter
<b>seuraava</b>	next, following	<b>voi sula a</b>	melted butter
<b>suola</b>	salt	<b>voidel tu</b>	buttered
		<b>vuoka</b>	mould, dish

*Exercise 7* Write out an English translation of the recipe above, then compare it

with that given at the back of this book.

*Exercise 8* Make the casserole!

[< previous page](#)

page\_126

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_127

[next page >](#)

Page 127

8

## Huonosta vielä huonommaksi

### *From bad to worse*

#### **In this unit you will learn:**

- how to say how you're feeling; vocabulary of medicine and illness
- how to form and use the comparative and superlative
- about entering and being in states (the translative and essive cases)
- a little about Finnish sport
- about the stem-type **talous** 'economy'

#### Dialogue 1

##### *Sairaana*

##### **Feeling ill**

*Matthew hasn't been feeling very well for the last few days, so he asks Mikko for advice*

(Tapaavat yliopistolla)

MATTHEW: Kuule Mikko, voisit sä neuvoa mua yhdessä asiassa. Mulla on ollu jo kaks päivää yskä ja kurkkuki on aika kipee. Pitäskö mun mennä lääkäriin?

MIKKO: Mee nyt ihmeessä! Se voi tulla pahemmaks jos viivyttelet.

MATTHEW: Minne mun pitäis mennä?

MIKKO: Lähimpään terveyskeskukseen. Niihin ei tartte varata aikaa. Meet vaan päivystykseen ottamaan. Joskus voi kyllä joutua odottamaan pariki tuntia. Lähin

[< previous page](#)

page\_127

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_128

[next page >](#)

Page 128



terveyskeskus on ihan tässä yliopiston vieressä Yliopistokadulla.

MATTHEW: Kiitti sulle mä lähenki tästä heti sinne.

(At university)

MATTHEW: Listen, Mikko, could you give me some advice on something (lit. a matter). I've had a cough for two days now and (my) throat is pretty sore, too. Should I go to (see) the doctor?

MIKKO: Go now, for goodness' sake! It can get worse if you hang about.

MATTHEW: Where should I go?

MIKKO: To the nearest health centre. You don't have to make an appointment (there). You just go and wait your turn to see the GP on duty. Of course sometimes you may wind up waiting as much as a few hours. The nearest health centre is right here next to the university, in Yliopistokatu.

MATTHEW: Thanks! I'm going to go there right now.

### Vocabulary

<b>asia</b>	matter, affair	<b>pahempi</b>	worse
<b>ihan tässä</b>	just here	<b>pitäskö→</b> <b>pitäisikö</b>	
<b>ihmeQ</b>	wonder		
<b>joutu-</b>	winds up, ends up (used with 3rd infinitive)	<b>sinne</b>	(to) there
		<b>tapaX-</b> <b>tartte→tarvitse</b>	meets
<b>keskus kse</b>	centre	<b>tarviTSE-</b>	is necessary; needs
<b>kipee→kipeä</b>	sore; ill		
<b>kurkku</b>	throat	<b>terveys te</b>	health
<b>lähen→lähde n</b>		<b>varaX-</b>	books, reserves, orders
<b>lähimpään</b>	illative of <b>lähin</b>		
<b>lähin</b>	nearest	<b>viivyttel-</b>	delays, hangs about
<b>minne</b>	(to) where?		
<b>oottamaan→</b> <b>odotta ma an</b>		<b>X n viere ssä</b>	next to X
		<b>yhde ssä</b>	together; at the same time
<b>pahemmaks</b>	sTRA of	<b>yskä</b>	cough

**päivystys** *kse*      **pahempi**  
day rota

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_128](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_129](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 129

## Language points

### *Forming the comparative*

This is the English ‘-er’ of ‘bigger’, ‘smaller’, or the ‘more’ of ‘more beautiful’. In Finnish you add the suffix of the comparative to the adjective stem; the suffix is -**mpA**.

There are just two complications. One is that in the nominative singular this suffix comes out as **mpi**. So we have:

<b>iso mpi</b>	bigger ( <b>iso</b> )
<b>piene mpi</b>	smaller ( <b>pieni e</b> )
<b>korkea mpi</b>	higher ( <b>korkea</b> )
<b>matala mpi</b>	lower ( <b>matala</b> )
<b>kirkkaa mpi</b>	brighter ( <b>kirkkaX</b> )
<b>tuoree mpi</b>	fresher ( <b>tuoreQ</b> )
<b>suomalaise mpi</b>	more Finnish ( <b>suomalainen</b> ; stem: <b>suomalaise-</b> )

The other complication is this: bisyllabic roots which end in single **A** change this vowel to **e**. Thus we have:

<b>kove mpi</b>	harder ( <b>kova</b> ‘hard’)
<b>syve mpi</b>	deeper ( <b>syvä</b> ‘deep’)
<b>vanhe mpi</b>	older ( <b>vanha</b> ‘old’; note <b>se n vanhe mma t</b> ‘his/her parents’)

Finally, as in English, a few of the most frequent forms are irregular:

good	<b>hyvä</b>
better	<b>parempi</b>
best	<b>paras</b> (stem: <b>parhaX</b> , so sG is <b>parhaa n</b> )
long	<b>pitkä</b>
longer	<b>pitempi</b>

*Note:* the Finnish words **kumpi** ‘which? (of two)’, **kumpikin** ‘both’, and **jompikumpi** ‘either (of two)’ all contain the comparative suffix (**jompikumpi** has it twice: its partitive singular is **jompaakumpaa**):

**Kumpi on kalliimpaa, viini vai viina?**

Which is more expensive, wine or spirits?

**Kummatkin vanhemmat jäävät kotiin.**

Both parents are staying home.

**Mitä saisi olla, kahvia vai teetä?**

What'll you have, coffee or tea?

[< previous page](#)

page\_129

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_131

[next page >](#)

Page 131

### *Using the comparative*

If you want to say that A is bigger than B, you have a choice. Typical of more formal Finnish is to put B into the partitive:

**Helsinki on Turkuu suurempi.**

Helsinki is bigger than Turku.

(Notice the word order of this construction.)

The more colloquial option is to use **kuin**:

**Helsinki on isompi kuin Turku.**

To say 'more and more X', 'Xer and Xer', you use **yhä: yhä useammat suomalaiset** 'more and more Finns', **yhä sitkeämpi vastarinta** 'tougher and tougher resistance'.

*Note:* to compare equals, you use **yhtä** (**niin** with adverbs) A **kuin** B (with no comparative suffix, as in English):

**yhtä kevyt kuin höyhen.**

as light as a feather

**Toinen on yhtä hyvä kuin toinenkin.**

One is as good as the other.

**niin usein kuin mahdollista**

as often as possible

*Exercise 1* Put these adjectives into the comparative.

*Example:* iso>isompi

1      nopea 'fast'

- 2 **selvä** ‘clear’
- 3 **mukava** ‘comfortable, pleasant’
- 4 **kiltti** ‘nice, kind, well-behaved’
- 5 **voimakkaX** ‘powerful’
- 6 **pieni e** ‘little’
- 7 **paksu** ‘fat, thick’
- 8 **ohut** ‘thin’
- 9 **punainen** ‘red’
- 10 **terveQ** ‘healthy’

**Exercise 2** Practise using the comparative by writing Finnish comparative sentences with the following sets of nouns and adjectives:

*Example:* **Tanska, Suomi, iso>Suomi on isompi ku(i)n Tanska**

- 1 Sä, mä, nuori
- 2 pihvi, keitto, kallis
- 3 Espanja, Portugali, iso
- 4 lääkäri, lapsi, vanha
- 5 paperi, kulta, kevyt (‘light’; stem: **kevyTe-**)

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_131	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_132	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 132

**Exercise 3** Practise looking for things that are bigger, better, smaller, and more comfortable. Remember to use the partial (partitive) direct-object form.

**Example:** **parempi sanakirja>Mä etsin parempaa sanakirjaa** ‘I’m looking for a better dictionary.’

- 1 kuiva (dry), viini (wine)
- 2 halpa (cheap), vihko (notebook)
- 3 pieni, laukku
- 4 yksinkertainen (simple), vastaus (answer; stem: **vastaukse**)
- 5 makea (sweet), mehu (juice)

**Exercise 4** Now say that you’ve found what you were looking for in the previous exercise. You’ll need to use the complete-object form (accusative=genitive).

**Example:** **Mä oon löytänyt paremman sanakirjan.** ‘I’ve found a better dictionary.’

*Se tulee pahemmaksi (it gets worse): the translative*

The translative suffix is **-ksi**, pronounced colloquially without the i, of course. This

case indicates, among other things, entrance into a state or mode of being. It is therefore often used with verbs such as **muutta-** ‘changes (transitive)’, **muuttu-** ‘changes (intransitive)’, **tule-** ‘becomes’. Examples:

**Se muutti saunan olohuonee|ks.**

(S)he turned the sauna into a living room.

**Asia muuttuu vaikea|ks.**

The matter becomes difficult.

**Rikkaat tulee rikkaamm|i|ks.**

The rich get richer.

**Se tulee yhä vaikea|mma|ksi.**

It gets more and more difficult.

**On tullut tava|ksi.**

It has become a custom.

**Se tuli tunnetu|ksi.**

It became known.

[< previous page](#)

page\_132

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_133

[next page >](#)

Page 133

**Mä kirjoitan sen puhtaa|ksi.**

I'll make a clean copy of it.

The translative is also often used to express the capacity in which something is used; the most common example is **esimerki|ksi** ‘for example’. Further examples are:

**Jälkiruua|ksi oli mansikoita.**

There were strawberries *for dessert*.

**Mä sain sen lahja|ks.**

I got it *as a gift*.

## Dialogue 2

Doctors are forever giving orders, so this is a good opportunity to revise the forms of the imperative (Unit 3).

### *Lääkärissä* At the doctor's

*Matthew waits at the health centre until it's his turn. Then*

LÄÄKÄRI: (*pyytää ovelta*) Matthew Smith, olkaa hyvä. *Matthew menee lääkärin perässä sisään.* Ja mikäs teitä vaivaa?

MATTHEW: Mulla on ollu yskä jo pari päivää, eikä se tunnu oikein menevän ohi<sup>1</sup>. Kurkku on myös aika kipee.

LÄÄKÄRI: Ja kuumetta?

MATTHEW: Ei oo.

LÄÄKÄRI: Katsotaanpa kurkkuun ja kuunnellaan keuhkoja. (*Hän kuuntelee ja katsoo.*) Näyttää siltä että kyse ei ole mistään vakavasta tulehduksesta. Levätkää kotona pari päivää ja juokaa runsaasti kuumaa juotavaa. Flunssa- ja särkylääkkeitä voitte ottaa tarpeen mukaan. Ne helpottavat oloa. Jos olo huononee tulkaa uudelleen.

DOCTOR: (*calls from the doorway*) *Matthew Smith, please.* Matthew goes in after the doctor.

DOCTOR: *And what is troubling you?*

MATTHEW: *I've had a cough for a couple of days now, and it doesn't*

[< previous page](#)

page\_133

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_134

[next page >](#)

Page 134

*really seem to be going away. (My) throat is also pretty sore.*

DOCTOR: *And (do you have) any fever?*

MATTHEW: *No.*

DOCTOR: *Let's have a look into (your) throat and listen to (your) lungs. (S)he listens and looks). It looks as though it isn't a question of any serious inflammation. Rest at home for a few days and drink plenty of hot beverages. You can take 'flu and pain medicines as necessary. They'll help you to feel better (lit. they'll ease the being/condition). If it gets worse, come again.*

1 **eikä se tunnu oikein mene|vä|n ohi** 'and it doesn't really seem to going away'; you'll learn about this construction in Unit 12.

### Vocabulary

<b>flunssa</b>	'flu	<b>ohi</b>	(adv.) past, by, over
<b>helpotta-</b>	eases, relieves	<b>oljo</b>	condition, the way X is
<b>huonoXE-</b>	worsens, gets worse		
<b>juo-</b>	drinks	<b>X n</b>	behind X
		<b>perä ssä</b>	
<b>juo tava</b>	to be drunk, potable	<b>pyytä-</b>	asks, requests
<b>keuhko</b>	lung	<b>runsaasti</b>	in generous quantities
<b>kuuma</b>	hot, warm		
<b>kuumeQ</b>	fever	<b>sisä än</b>	(to) inside
<b>kuuntele-</b>	listens	<b>särky</b>	pain
<b>kyseQ</b>	question, matter	<b>tarpeQ</b>	need
<b>lepaX-</b>	rests	<b>tulehdus</b>	inflammation ( <b>tuli e</b> 'fire')
		<b>kse</b>	
<b>laakkeQ</b>	medicine		
<b>X n mukaan</b>	according to	<b>uudelleen</b>	again
<b>myös</b>	also	<b>vaiva-</b>	troubles
<b>X ltA</b>	seems X	<b>vakava</b>	serious
<b>naytta-</b>			

*Exercise 5* Pick out the imperative forms in the two dialogues above, then convert them from formal to informal or vice versa, as appropriate.

### Additional vocabulary

Whether you're feeling ill or not, some basic anatomical vocabulary is always handy, so have a good look at these items:

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_134</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_135</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 135

<b>tukka</b>	head hair	<b>rinta</b>	breast
<b>otsa</b>	forehead	<b>käsivarsi te</b>	arm
<b>silmä</b>	eye	<b>kyynärpää</b>	elbow
<b>nenä</b>	nose	<b>sormi e</b>	finger

<b>suu</b>	mouth	<b>peukalo</b>	thumb
<b>kieli</b> <i>e</i>	tongue	<b>lanteet</b>	hips
<b>huuli</b> <i>e</i>	lip	<b>reisi</b> <i>te</i>	thigh
<b>leuka</b>	chin	<b>polvi</b> <i>e</i>	knee
<b>korva</b>	ear	<b>sääri</b> <i>e</i>	leg
<b>poski</b> <i>e</i>	cheek	<b>jalka</b>	foot, leg
<b>kaula</b>	neck	<b>varpa</b> X	toe

### Dialogue 3

#### Jorma raukka!

#### Poor Jorma!

*Anna and Sanna are colleagues. At work, they discuss Jorma's health*

SANNA: Hei Anna!

ANNA: Hei. Mitä kuuluu?

SANNA: Kiitos hyvää. Entäs sulle?

ANNA: Hyvää. Mitä perheelles kuuluu?

SANNA: Siinähan se menee...

ANNA: Kuinka Jorma voi? Se näytti vähän väsyneeltä eilen illalla.

SANNA: Nii, se on kai vähän vilustunut. Se sanoo ettei sitä mikään vaivaa, mutta tänä aamuna mä huomasin, että se yski koko ajan kun se pani takkia päälleen.

ANNA: Ei sen pitäis sitten mennä töihin, sen pitäis jäädä kotiin lepäämään. Onks sillä kuumetta?

SANNA: En mä tiedä. Se ei antanu mun mitata sitä.<sup>1</sup> Se sano, ettei se oo mitään ja et se menee nopeasti ohi.

ANNA: No, toivotaan niin.

SANNA: *Hello, Anna.*

ANNA: *Hi. How are things?*

SANNA: *Fine, thanks. And you?*

ANNA: *Fine. How's your family?*

SANNA: *They're all right...*

ANNA: *How is Jorma feeling? He looked a bit done in last night.*



SANNA: *Yes; he may have caught a cold. He says there's nothing*

[< previous page](#)      page\_135      [next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)      page\_136      [next page >](#)

Page 136

*wrong with him, but I noticed this morning that he was coughing all the time he was putting his coat on.*

ANNA: *He shouldn't be going to work, he should be staying home and getting some rest. Does he have a fever?*

SANNA: *I don't know. He wouldn't let me take his temperature. He said it's nothing, that it'll soon pass.*

ANNA: *Well, let's hope so.*

1 **Se ei antanu mun mitata sitä** 'He didn't let me measure it.'

### Vocabulary

<b>aja n: koko ajan</b>	all the time	<b>mittaX-</b>	measures
<b>eilen</b>	yesterday	<b>nii→niin</b>	
<b>et→että</b>		<b>nopea sti</b>	quickly
<b>jää-</b>	stays	<b>pää lle en</b>	onto her/himself
<b>koko</b>	(the) whole, entire; size	<b>sano→sano j</b>	
<b>kuinka</b>	how?	<b>takki</b>	jacket
<b>mi kä än: ei</b>	nothing (sN)	<b>toivo-</b>	hopes
<b>mikään</b>		<b>väsy-</b>	becomes tired
<b>mi tä än: ei</b>	nothing (sP)	<b>vilustu-</b>	catches cold
<b>mitään</b>		<b>yskä-</b>	coughs

### Dialogue 4

#### *Urheilua Suomessa* **On sport in Finland**

*Jeremy asks his friend Jyri about the kinds of sport Finns go in for*

JEREMY: Mitkä urheilulajit kiinnostaa suomalaisia?

JYRI: Luulisin että jääkiekko on suosituin, mut jalkapallo on myös todella suosittu.

JEREMY: Näyttää siltä että jalkapallo on kansainvälisesti suosittua.

JYRI: Suomen erikoisuus on kuitenkin pesäpallo. Sitä voisi pitää Suomen kansallisurheiluna.

JEREMY: Miten sitä pelataan?

JYRI: Vähän niin kuin amerikkalaista baseballia, mut siinä on takaraja lyönneissä ja se on enemmän joukkuepeli.

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_136	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_137	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 137

JEREMY: *What types of sport interest Finns?*

JYRI: *I would think that ice hockey is the favourite. But football is really liked a lot, as well.*

JEREMY: *It seems that football is a favourite internationally.*

JYRI: *In any case, a Finnish speciality is **pesäpallo**. You could think of it as Finland's national sport.*

JEREMY: *How is it played?*

JYRI: *A little like American baseball, but there's a back limit to hits, and it's more of a team sport.*

### **Vocabulary**

<b>basebolli</b>	baseball	<b>pelaX</b>	plays (game)
<b>enemmän</b>	more (adv.)	<b>pesis→pesä pallo</b>	
<b>erikoisu</b>	speciality	<b>pesä pallo</b>	(Finnish ball game)
<b>jalka pallo</b>	football	<b>pitä-</b>	holds; considers to be X
<b>joukkue peli</b>	team sport		
<b>jää kiekko</b>	ice hockey		
<b>kansain välise sti</b>	internationally	<b>suosi ttu</b>	favoured
<b>kansallis urheilu</b>	national sport	<b>suositu in</b>	most favoured, favourite

<b>kiinnosta-</b>	interests		
<b>kuitenki</b> →	anyway	<b>taka raja</b>	back
<b>kuitenkin</b>			boundary, limit
<b>luul isi n</b>	I should/would think	<b>urheilu laji</b>	type of sport
		<b>vo is</b> → <b>vo isi</b>	one could
<b>lyönti</b>	hit, strike		

**Exercise 6** If you're interested in sport (**kiinnostunut urheilusta**), make up your own dialogue, in which friends discuss their favourites. You'll find the following vocabulary useful: The verb **kilpaile-** is 'competes' and **kilpa(ilu)** is 'competition'; so **kilpa-auto** is 'racing car', **kilpa|soutu** is 'competitive racing', and **kilpa|purjehdus** is 'competitive (regatta) sailing'; 'Amateur' is **harrastelija**, 'professional' **ammattilainen**.

<b>tennis</b> <i>kse</i>	tennis
<b>käsi pallo</b>	handball
<b>nurmi pallo</b>	hockey
<b>hiihto urheilu</b>	skiing (for sport)
<b>pyöräily</b>	cycling
<b>kelkkailu</b>	bobsleighbing, tobogganing

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_137</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_138</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 138

<b>korkeus hyppy</b>	high jump
<b>pituus hyppy</b>	long jump
<b>keihään heitto</b>	throwing the javelin (stem: <b>keihäX</b> )
<b>uinti</b> swimming	( <b>ui-</b> 'swims')
<b>joukkueQ</b>	team, side

You may also want to have them argue about the difference between a sport and a game (**pele**). If so, you'll need **šakki** 'chess', and **tammi e** 'draughts, checkers'. You can also talk about playing (**pelaX**) cards (**kortti|a**) or bridge (**bridge|ä**).

## Language points

### The superlative

This is the '-st' of English 'the biggest', 'the smallest', and the 'most' of 'the most unusual'. In Finnish, you add the suffix =**impA**. There are two complications. First, the suffix =**impA** comes out as **-in** in the nominative singular. Thus we have:

stem:	<b>iso</b>	<b>reilu</b>
superlative:	<b>iso in</b>	<b>reilu in</b>
	'the	'the most reliable, the most

biggest' straightforward'

The shape **in** also occurs in the partitive singular, as in:

**Kirjan kolmas luku käsittelee Grönlanti|a, maailman iso|in|ta saar|ta.**

The book's third chapter treats Greenland, the world's largest island.

The **mpA** (with compression: **mmA**) of the superlative suffix is clear from forms such as:

**iso|impa|aan pullo|on** into the largest bottle  
**iso|imma|ssa pullo|ssa** in the largest bottle

The second complication is this. The **i** initial in this suffix causes changes in the end of the stem to which it is attached. Here are examples of the main types:

<b>halpa</b>	cheap	<b>halv in</b>	the cheapest	( <b>a</b> >zero)
<b>korkea</b>	high	<b>korke in</b>	highest	( <b>a</b> >zero)
<b>herkkä</b>	sensitive	<b>herk in</b>	the most sensitive	( <b>ä</b> >zero)

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_138	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_139	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 139

<b>tavallinen</b>	usual, common	<b>tavallis in</b> (stem: <b>tavallise-</b> )	the most common	( <b>e</b> >zero)
<b>siisti</b>	clean	<b>siiste in</b>	the most clean	( <b>i</b> > <b>e</b> )
<b>tuoreQ</b>	fresh	<b>tuore in</b>	the freshest	( <b>Q</b> >zero)
<b>rikas</b>	rich	<b>rikka in</b> (stem: <b>rikkaX</b> )	richest	( <b>X</b> >zero)
<b>kaunis</b>	beautiful	<b>kaune in</b> (stem: <b>kaunix</b> )	the most beautiful	( <b>X</b> >zero, <b>i</b> > <b>e</b> )

*Note on compression.* As forms like **halv|in** and **herk|in** show, attaching the superlative suffix compresses consonants to the left; but as you already know from studying the plural partitive (Unit 5), compression does not take place if a deleted item (either **A** or **X**, as above in **korkein**, **rikkain**) would have been part of a long vowel or diphthong. Thus we have compressed d and t in the superlatives

**outo** strange, eerie    **oudo|in** the strangest

**suosittu** favoured, liked **suositu|in** the most liked, the favourite

but uncompressed **k** in

**korke|in** ‘the highest’, with strong **rk**, from **korkea|impA**

and uncompressed **kk** in

**rikka|in** ‘the richest’, with strong **kk**, from **rikkaX|impA**

Here are the full paradigms of two adjectives, **halpa** ‘cheap’ and **rikas** ‘rich’:

	<b>halpa</b>		<b>rikar</b>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
N	<b>halvin</b>	<b>halvimma t</b>	<b>rikkain</b>	<b>rikkaimma t</b>
G	<b>halvimma n</b>	<b>halvimp i en<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>rikkaimma n</b>	<b>rikkaimpi i en<sup>1</sup></b>
P	<b>halvin ta</b>	<b>halvimp i a</b>	<b>rikkain ta</b>	<b>rikkaimpi i a</b>
ELA	<b>halvimma sta</b>	<b>halvimm i sta</b>	<b>rikkaimma sta</b>	<b>rikkaimm i sta</b>
INE	<b>halvimma ssa</b>	<b>halvimm i ssa</b>	<b>rikkaimma ssa</b>	<b>rikkaimm i ssa</b>
ILL	<b>halvimpa an</b>	<b>halvimp i in</b>	<b>rikkaimpa an</b>	<b>rikkaimpi i in</b>
ABL	<b>halvimma lta</b>	<b>halvimm i lta</b>	<b>rikkaimma lta</b>	<b>rikkaimm i lta</b>
ADE	<b>halvimma lla</b>	<b>halvimm i lla</b>	<b>rikkaimma lla</b>	<b>rikkaimm i lla</b>
ALL	<b>halvimma lle</b>	<b>halvimm i lle</b>	<b>rikkaimma lle</b>	<b>rikkaimm i lle</b>
ESS	<b>halvimpa na</b>	<b>halvimp i na</b>	<b>rikkaimpa na</b>	<b>rikkaimpi i na</b>
TRA	<b>halvimma ksi</b>	<b>halvimm i ksi</b>	<b>rikkaimma ksi</b>	<b>rikkaimm i ksi</b>

[< previous page](#)

page\_139

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_140

[next page >](#)

Page 140

1 You will also come across genitive plurals such as **halvinten**, **rikkainten**, built with a **t**-suffix. You will learn how to form the genitive plural in the next unit.

Notice that in many cases the only difference between the forms of the superlative and the comparative is the **i** to the left of the **mm**:

**syve|mmä|t** the deeper ones **syv|immä|t** the deepest ones

For adjective stems whose last vowel is **i**, you must look to the **i>e** change mentioned above to help you spot the superlative:

comparative: **siisti|mmä|ssä huonee|ssa** in a cleaner room

superlative: **siiste|immä|ssä huonee|ssa** in the cleanest room

Finally, as in English, a few of the most frequently used superlatives are irregular:

**hyvä** good **paras** best

<b>pitkä</b>	long	<b>pisin</b>	longest
<b>paljo n</b>	lots, much	<b>enin</b>	greatest, sG: <b>enimmä n</b>

*Tip.* They're not superlatives, but the words for 'left' (**vasen**) and 'warm' (**lämmin**) have stems which look and behave the same way: **vasempa-** and **lämpimä-**.

**Exercise 7** To check you have learnt how to form it, put the following adjective forms into the superlative, (model: **huonon**> **huonoimman**)

1	ujolta
2	tumma
3	kylmempi
4	kovasta
5	isoon
6	suuret
7	nuorissa
8	terve
9	iloinen
10	pitkälle

### *Using the superlative*

Much as in English, the superlative in Finnish is used to single out the egregious, isolated case. The genitive and the inessive are common markers for the field in which the superlative excels:

**Iso-Saimaa on Suomen suurin järvi.**

Iso-Saimaa is Finland's largest lake.

**Tukholma on suurin kaupunki Ruotsissa.**

Stockholm is the largest city in Sweden.

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_140	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_141	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 141

If selection from a plurality is meant, the plural elative is used:

**Sä oot ahkerin niistä.**

You are the most diligent of the lot (lit. 'out of them').

**Se on vanhin tytöistä.**

She is the oldest (out) of the girls.

You can mitigate your enthusiasm by using the partitive plural of the superlative:

### **München on Saksan suurimpia kaupunkeja.**

Munich is one of Germany's largest cities.

You say 'at his/her/its X-est' by putting the superlative adjective in the plural adessive and slapping on the suffix **-#n**. For example:

<b>huono imm i lla an</b>	at his worst
<b>parha imm i lla an</b>	at her best
<b>syv imm i llä än</b>	at its deepest

You'll find out more about superlative (and comparative) adverbs in Unit 11, and more on the suffix **-#n** in Unit 10.

**Exercise 8** Translate into Finnish:

- 1 She is the youngest in the class.
- 2 Denmark is Europe's oldest monarchy (**kuningaskunta**).
- 3 This bag is heavier than mine, but yours is the heaviest.
- 4 The fastest one wins (**voitta-**), but the slowest one is best.

### *The essive*

This case is the static cousin of the translative: it indicates states and modes of being in which things and people are or were. Contrast the two sentences:

sESS	<b>Se oli sairaa na.</b>	(S)he was ill.
sTRA	<b>Se tuli sairaa ksi.</b>	(S)he became ill.

Here are some more examples:

**Pidä kahvi kuuma|na!**

Keep the coffee hot!

**Ne on asiakkaita nyt, ja ne pysyykin asiakka|i|na.**

They're customers now, and they'll remain customers. (**asiakkaX** customer)

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_141	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_142	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

**Mä opin sen nuore|na.**

I learned it when I was young (lit. as a young [one]).

**Se oppi lukemaan aika piene|nä.**

(S)he learned to read when fairly little.

**Hän oli nuorempa|na unelmoinut elämästä teatterissa.**

When younger, (s)he had dreamt of a life in the theatre.

**Väinämöistä pidetään historiallise|na henkilö|nä.**

Väinämöinen is held to be a historical person.

**Seisoimme liikkumattom|i|na.**

We stood motionless.

**Minulla oli valhe valmii|na.**

I had a lie ready.

The essive has two other common uses which you will learn in the next unit.

### *Stems made with =(U)UTE*

Finnish abounds in abstract nouns like **terveys** ‘health’, **erikoisuus** ‘speciality’, and **talous** ‘economy’. These are all made with the derivational suffix =(U)UTE, most commonly from adjectives, but also from some nouns and even pronouns. Study these examples, noting the meanings and changes in the stems:

<b>helppo</b>	easy	<b>emäntä</b>	mistress of the house; hostess
<b>helppo us</b>	ease, facility	<b>emänn yys</b>	household management
<b>terveQ</b>	healthy		
<b>terve ys</b>	health		
<b>vanha</b>	old	<b>alempi</b>	lower, inferior
<b>vanh uus</b>	old age	<b>alemm uus</b>	inferiority
<b>lapsi e</b>	child	<b>ohut</b>	thin
<b>laps uus</b>	childhood	<b>oh uus</b>	thinness
<b>erikoinen</b>	special	<b>naapuri</b>	neighbour
<b>erikois uus</b>	speciality	<b>naapur uus</b>	neighbourhood
<b>mahd ollinen</b>	possible		
<b>mahdollis uus</b>	possibility		



Page 143

Note the unmotivated compression of consonants in forms built from comparative stems (like **alemmuus**) and in forms like **emännnyys**. Notice also the especially striking **pituus** ‘length, height’ from **pitkä** ‘long, tall’.

In the singular and in the nominative plural, these stems take case suffixes just like **käsi** (Unit 1, *dental stems*), except that they have no **i** at the end of their citation form:

sN	sG	sILL	pN	
<b>käsi</b>	<b>käde n</b>	<b>käte en</b>	<b>käde t</b>	hand
<b>talous</b>	<b>taloude n</b>	<b>taloute en</b>	<b>taloude t</b>	economy

In the other forms of the plural, these stems switch over to being =UKsE stems (Unit 5), so we have, for example, **talo|uks|i|ssa** as the plural inessive of **talous**, **mahdollisuuks|i|in** as the plural illative of **mahdollisuus**.

Page 144

9

## Aika ja tila

### Time and space

#### In this unit you will learn:

- about time expressions
- about prepositions and postpositions
- how to form the genitive plural
- about going to the country, and about the sauna

#### Dialogue 1

##### *Apteekissa*

##### *At the chemist's*

*Past goes to the chemist's to get kitted out for a trip to the country*

APTEEKKARI: Päivää, kuinka voin auttaa?

PASI: Onks teillä jotain tehokasta hyttysenpuremiin?

APTEEKKARI: Kokeile Pantysonia. Se laskee turvotusta ja lievittää kutinaa.

PASI: Hyvä, mä otan sitä ja sitte vielä laastareita, pullo desinfiointiainetta ja kyypakkaus.

APTEEKKARI: Taidat olla mökille menossa!

CHEMIST: *(Good) day, how can I help (you)?*

PASI: *Do you have anything effective against mosquito bites?*

CHEMIST: *Try Pantyson. It reduces swelling and relieves itching.*

PASI: *Fine, I'll take some and (then also) (there'll be) some plasters, a bottle of disinfectant and a snakebite kit.*

CHEMIST: *You must be on (your) way to (your summer) cabin!*

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_144	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_145	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 145

### *Vocabulary*

<b>aineQ</b>	matter, stuff	<b>laske-</b>	lowers, reduces; drops
<b>apteekkari</b>	chemist, pharmacist	<b>lievittä</b>	relieves, alleviates
<b>apteekki</b>	chemist's/pharmacist's shop	<b>meno</b>	going, departure
<b>desinfiointi</b>	disinfection	<b>meno ssa</b>	en route
<b>hyttynen</b>	gnat, midge; mosquito	<b>mökki</b>	(summer) cabin
<b>kokeile-</b>	tries	<b>pakkaus</b> <i>kse</i>	pack, kit
<b>kutina</b>	itch	<b>pullo</b>	bottle
<b>kyy</b>	venomous snake	<b>pure ma</b>	bite
<b>laastari</b>	sticking plaster, bandage	<b>tehokas</b>	effective (stem: <b>tehokkaX</b> )
		<b>turvotus</b> <i>kse</i>	swelling

## Dialogue 2

### *Kutsu maalle*

#### **An invitation to the country**

*Past is not the only one who is headed to the countryside for the weekend. Steve, like many a lucky foreigner in Finland, has been invited by his hosts to their summer cabin. He asks his friend Sami what sorts of things are in store for him, particularly regarding the sauna*

STEVE: Kuule Sami, mut on kutsuttu ens viikonloppuna Aaltosten mökille saunomaan. Kerro jotain saunomisesta.

SAMI: Sauna on perussuomalainen juttu. Suomalaiset ei oikein osaa olla ilman saunaa.

STEVE: Mikä siinä on nyt sit niin erikoista.

SAMI: Kuuman löylyn jälkeen juostaan yleensä talvella lumihankeen ja kesällä järveen. Sen jälkeen on tosi hyvä olo.

STEVE: Mikä se vihta oikein on?

SAMI: Se on kimppu koivun oksia ja sillä sitte vihdotaan löylyssä toinen toista. Se vilkastuttaa verenkiertoa.

STEVE: Saunan jälkeenkö syödään sitte lenkkimakkaraa ja juodaan saunakaljat?

SAMI: Joo. Sulla tulee oleen kiva viikonloppu.

[< previous page](#)

page\_145

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_146

[next page >](#)

Page 146

STEVE: *Listen, Sami, I've been invited to the sauna (lit. to use the sauna) at the Aaltosens' summer cabin next weekend. Tell me something about sauna'ing.*

SAMI: *The sauna is a very basic Finnish thing. Finns really don't know how to be without it.*

STEVE: *So what's so special about it, then?*

SAMI: *After the superheated steam you generally run out into a snowbank or, in summer, into the lake. After that it really feels good.*

STEVE: (And) what is this 'vihta', actually?

SAMI: It's a bunch of birch twigs, and people hit each other with it in the superheated steam. It stimulates the blood circulation.

STEVE: Is it after the sauna that people eat sausages and drink beer, then?

SAMI: Yep. You're going to have a great weekend.

### Vocabulary

<b>Aaltosten</b>	pG of surname Aaltonen	<b>löyly</b>	superheated steam
<b>ens→ensi</b>		<b>mökki</b>	summer cabin
<b>erikoinen</b>	special	<b>oksa</b>	twig, branch
<b>hanki e</b>	drift, bank	<b>oleen→</b>	
<b>juokse-</b>	runs	<b>ole ma an</b>	knows how
<b>juos taan ind</b>		<b>osaX-</b>	basic,
<b>juokse-</b>		<b>perus+</b>	fundamental
<b>juttu</b>	story, thing	<b>sauno-</b>	uses the sauna
<b>järvi e</b>	lake	<b>toinen</b>	one/other of two
<b>kimppu</b>	bunch	<b>veren kierto</b>	blood circulation
<b>koivu</b>	birch	<b>vihta</b>	see dialogue!
<b>kutsu-</b>	invites, calls	<b>vihto-</b>	uses <b>vihta</b>
<b>lenkki</b>	ring/link of	<b>viikon loppu</b>	weekend
<b>makkara</b>	sausage	<b>vilkastutta-</b>	livens, stimulates
<b>lumi e</b>	sausage snow (sP lun ta)	<b>yleensä</b>	generally

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_146](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_147](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 147

### Language points

#### The genitive plural

This corresponds to the English plural 'children's' as opposed to singular 'child's'. For most English words, the placement of the apostrophe is vital: 'boy's' is singular, 'boys'' is plural.

The Finnish genitive plural has a great variety of forms, and many nominals have at least two forms to choose from. You will keep your bearings if you remember that for most nouns, the genitive plural is analogous to the partitive plural: if the pP has -**tA**, the pG will be **-den**, and if the pP has **-A**, the pG will be **-en**. Study these

parallel forms:

stem	yö	huoneQ	hampaX	asema	talo
pP	ö i tä	huone i ta	hampa i ta	asem i a	talo j a
pG	ö i den	huone i den	hampa i den	asem i en	talo j en
	‘night’	‘room’	‘tooth’	‘station’	‘house’

The suffix **-den** has an alternative form **-tten**, so you will also see and hear **ö|i|tten**, **huone|i|tten**, and **hampa|i|tten**.

There are two kinds of nominal that upset this neat parallelism. First, many polysyllabic nouns ending in *i* which form their pP with **-tA** take **-en** in the pG. In such cases, the stem-final vowel vanishes without a trace. For example:

stempaperi	sipuli	dekkari	kolari	apteekkari	
pP	papere i tasipule i tadekkare i takolare i ta			apteekkare i ta	
pG	paper i en	sipul i en	dekkar i en	kolari i en	apteekkar i en
	‘paper’	‘onion’	‘detective	‘car crash’	‘chemist/
			novel’	druggist’	

Second, *e*-stems form their pG more often with **-ten** than with **-en**. So you will usually come across, e.g.,

stem	kiele	naise	puheliME	kysymykse
pP	kiellilä	nais i a	puhelim i a	kysymyks i ä
pG	kiel ten	nais ten	puhelin ten	kysymys ten
	‘language’	‘woman’	‘telephone’	‘question’

You have already met the consonant changes **m>n** (in **puhelin|ten**) and **k>0** (in **kysymys|ten**), and **p>0** (**lapsi e** ‘child’, pG **las|ten**) in connection with the partitive singulars of these words.

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_147</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_148</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 148

Finally, notice that nominals which end in **A** have an extra form in simple **-i-n** which is used in certain fixed or formal expressions and in poetry, e.g. alongside normal **kanso|j|en** there is also **kansa|i|n** ‘of nations’, as in **kansainvälinen** ‘international’.

**Exercise 1** Practise forming the genitive plural by translating these phrases into Finnish:

- 1 the boys’ father
- 2 the girls’ names

- 3 the prices of the larger radios
- 4 the numbers of the rooms
- 5 the laws (**laki**) of many other countries

### Time expressions

It is helpful to distinguish words which refer to specific periods of time such as ‘Monday’, ‘August’, ‘Spring’, and ‘evening’ from words which refer to time-spans, such as ‘minute’, ‘hour’, ‘century’. These two types are discussed in (a) and (b) below. Section (c) lists some very common miscellaneous phrases.

(a) We look first at specific time-words: the days of the week, the months of the year, the seasons, and the various times of the 24-hour cycle.

**viiko|n päivä|t** ‘the days of the week’

Monday	<b>maanantai</b>	<b>maanantai na</b>
Tuesday	<b>tiistai</b>	<b>tiistai na</b>
Wednesday	<b>keskiviikko</b>	<b>keskiviikko na</b>
Thursday	<b>torstai</b>	<b>torstai na</b>
Friday	<b>perjantai</b>	<b>perjantai na</b>
Saturday	<b>lauantai</b>	<b>lauantai na</b>
Sunday	<b>sunnuntai</b>	<b>sunnuntai na</b>

Note that in Finnish the names of the days are not capitalized. ‘On Sunday’, ‘on Monday’, etc. are expressed by the essive (Unit 8). Examples: **keskiviikko|na** ‘on Wednesday’, **tä|nä torstai|na** ‘this Thursday’, **viime perjantai|na** ‘last Friday’, **ensi lauantai|na** ‘next Saturday’. The names of holidays are also in the essive: **joulu|na** ‘on Christmas day’, **vappu|na** ‘on May Day’, **juhannukse|na** ‘on Midsummer’s Day’, **juhannusaatto|na** ‘on Midsummer’s Eve’. ‘Every Sunday’ is **joka sunnuntai|na**; there is also a suffix =**sin**, as in **sunnuntai|sin** ‘Sundays; every Sunday (as a rule)’.

[< previous page](#)

page\_148

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_149

[next page >](#)

Page 149

**vuode|n kuukaude|t** ‘the months of the year’

January	<b>tammikuu</b>	July	<b>heinäkuu</b>
February	<b>helmikuu</b>	August	<b>elokuu</b>
March	<b>maaliskuu</b>	September	<b>syyskuu</b>
April	<b>huhtikuu</b>	October	<b>lokakuu</b>
May	<b>toukokuu</b>	November	<b>marraskuu</b>
June	<b>kesäkuu</b>	December	<b>joulukuu</b>

All the month-names end with the word **kuu** ‘moon; month’; again, note that they are not capitalized in Finnish. ‘In January’, ‘in February’, etc. are expressed by the inessive case, e.g. **syyskuu|ssa** ‘in September’. More examples: **seuraava|ssa helmikuu|ssa** ‘(in) the following February’, **tämä|n vuode|n lokakuu|ssa** ‘in October of this year’.

Dates are expressed just as in English by means of ordinal numerals (‘fifth’, ‘twenty-second’, etc.; you’ll learn how to form these in Unit 11). You either put the ordinal numeral first, in which case the the month-name goes into the partitive, e.g. **kuudes (päivä) elokuu|ta** ‘the sixth (day) of August’, or you place the ordinal second, in which case the month-name is in the genitive, e.g. **elokuu|n kuudes**.

**vuode|n+aja|t** ‘the seasons’

<b>kevät</b> (stem: <b>kevää-</b> !)	<b>kevää llä</b>	Spring
<b>kesä</b>	<b>kesä llä</b>	Summer
<b>syksy</b>	<b>syksy llä</b>	Autumn
<b>talvi</b> e	<b>talve lla</b>	Winter

As you can see from the examples above, ‘in Spring’, etc. is expressed by the adessive case; to single out one season in particular, however, you put the entire expression in the essive: **tuleva|na kesä|nä** ‘in the coming Summer’, **viime kevää|nä** ‘last Spring’, **edellise|nä syksy|nä** ‘the previous Autumn’.

Alongside **kesä** there is also a special word for ‘Summer’ which you will hear most often in poetry and song: **suvi** e.

Words for parts of the day include

<b>aamu</b>	morning	<b>yö</b>	night
<b>ilta</b>	evening	<b>aamu päivä</b>	forenoon
<b>päivä</b>	day, daytime	<b>ilta päivä</b>	afternoon

These words take the same cases as the seasons: adessive if used alone, essive if modified. Here are some examples:

<b>&lt; previous page</b>	<b>page_149</b>	<b>next page &gt;</b>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<b>page_150</b>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 150

<b>aamu lla</b>	in the morning
<b>tä nä aamu na</b>	this morning
<b>erää nä joulukuu n aamu na</b>	(on) one December morning
<b>kahte na perättäise nä aamu na</b>	(on) two consecutive mornings
<b>yö llä</b>	at night

<b>perjantai n ja lauantai n välise nä yö nä tä nä ilta na yhte nä syksy n ilta na seuraava na iltapäivä nä maanantai-iltapäivä nä</b>	during the night between Friday and Saturday this evening (on) one Autumn evening (on) the following afternoon (on) Monday afternoon
--	--

(b) Here are the more common words that refer to time-spans:

<b>sekunti</b>	second	<b>kuukausi</b> <i>te</i>	month
<b>minuutti</b>	minute	<b>vuosi</b> <i>te</i>	year
<b>tunti</b>	hour	<b>vuosikymmen</b>	decade (NB!)
<b>päivä</b>	day	<b>vuosisata</b>	century
<b>vuorokausi</b> <i>te</i>	24-hour period	<b>vuosituhat</b> <i>nte</i>	millennium
<b>viikko</b>	week	<b>hetki, tuokio</b>	instant, flash

You will recognize the second components of ‘century’ and ‘millennium’ as the Finnish words for 100 and 1,000. The word for ‘decade’, however, is built with **kymmen** (stem: **kymmene-**), not **kymmenen**. Note the **te**-stems: **vuosi vuote-** ‘year’ and **kausi kaute-** ‘time-period’.

Just like English, Finnish uses time-span words most commonly to express duration. English usually expresses duration with the preposition ‘for’, as in the sentences ‘I lived there for a year’, ‘I haven’t seen them for a year’, and ‘I’m going to Finland for a year.’ In Finnish, however, these are seen as quite different sets of circumstances and are expressed by three different case suffixes: (1) the time something actually lasted, as in ‘I lived there for a year’, is put in the accusative, e.g. **Mä asuin siellä vuode|n**; (2) the time during which something didn’t happen (‘I haven’t seen them for a year’) goes into the illative, e.g. **En ole nähnyt niitä vuote|en**; (3) the amount of time something is supposed/intended to last (‘I’m going to Finland for a year’) is expressed by the translative (Unit 8), e.g. **Mä menen Suomeen vuode|ksi**.

The translative is also used to express the point of time by which something will happen or be ready, e.g. **Mä tuun sun luoksesi kello viide|ksi** ‘I’ll come to your place by five o’clock.’

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_150</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_151</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 151

Finally, the time-span during which something happens or is accomplished is expressed by means of the inessive, e.g.

<b>puole ssa tunni ssa</b>	in a half hour
<b>muutama ssa tunni ssa</b>	in a few hours
<b>vajaa ssa tunni ssa</b>	in less than an hour
<b>runsaan ssa tunni ssa</b>	in a good hour, in an hour and then some



**kerra|n tan pari viiko|ssa** once or twice a week

(c) Finnish is rich in miscellaneous time expressions. In this section we look at some of the most useful.

<b>aina</b>	always
<b>use in</b>	often ( <b>usea</b> ‘frequent’)
<b>joskus</b>	sometimes ( <b>jos</b> ‘if’)
<b>harvo in</b>	seldom ( <b>harva</b> ‘rare’)
<b>kerra n</b>	once
<b>taas, uude lle en</b>	again
<b>kerra n vielä</b>	one more time, once again
<b>ei vielä</b>	not yet
<b>ei enä ä</b>	not any more
<b>ei koskaan</b>	never
<b>ei koskaan enä ä</b>	never again
<b>nyt</b>	now
<b>nykyisin</b>	nowadays
<b>ennen</b>	previously
<b>nyttemmin</b>	lately
<b>äskettäin</b>	recently
<b>äsken</b>	just now
<b>pian, kohta</b>	soon
<b>heti</b>	straight away, at once
<b>tänään</b>	today
<b>huomenna</b>	tomorrow
<b>ylihuomenna</b>	the day after tomorrow
<b>eilen</b>	yesterday
<b>toissapäivänä</b>	the day before yesterday
<b>pari päivä ä sitten</b>	a few days ago
<b>pari n päivä n kuluttu a</b>	after a few days, a few days later
<b>koko päivä n</b>	all day (long)
<b>joka toinen päivä</b>	every other day

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_151](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_152](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 152

<b>si llä aika a</b>	during that time, meanwhile
<b>tä llä kerta a</b>	this time, on this occasion
<b>sii hen aika an</b>	at that time
<b>sama an aika an</b>	at the same time

**Exercise 2 Mihin aikaan?** expects an answer with clock time. Practise using clock time by giving or making up answers to these questions:

- 1 Mihin aikaan sä heräät?
- 2 Mihin aikaan sä lähdet kotoa töihin?

- 3 Mihin aikaan sä syöt illallista?
- 4 Mihin aikaan sä meet nukkumaan?
- 5 Mihin aikaan juna lähtee?
- 6 Mihin aikaan juna on perillä?
- 7 Mihin aikaan bussi saapuu Helsinkiin?

**Exercise 3** As you have seen above, the question **Montako kertaa?** asks how many times (per X) something happens; X goes into the inessive. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences, supplying either the missing number of times, or the time-frame.

- 1 Eeva harjoittelee soittamaan pianoa joka päivä. Se harjoittelee siis \_\_\_\_ viikossa.
- 2 Sanna juo kahvia vain aamiaisen aikaan. Se juo kahvia siis kerran \_\_\_\_.
- 3 Me mennään saunaan tiistaina ja lauantaina. Me mennään saunaan siis \_\_\_\_\_ viikossa.
- 4 Se käy kylässä naapurin luona vain jouluna ja juhannuksena. Se käy siellä siis kaksi kertaa \_\_\_\_.

### Dialogue 3

#### *Saunanlämmityspuuhissa* Sauna preparations in the country

STEVE: Mikä tän järven nimi on?

JUHA: Pielisjärvi. Se on yks Suomen suurimpia järviä.

STEVE: Täällä on kyllä tosi vihreätä ja puhdasta.

JUHA: Eiköhän aleta<sup>1</sup> heti saunanlämmityspuuhiin, ku se vie kuitenkin aika paljon aikaa.

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_152	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_153	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 153

TIMO: Steve, sä voisit mennä hakeen koivuhalkoja saunan takaa pinosta. Mä ja Juha ruvetaan kantaa vettä järvestä.

JUHA: Sytytetään sitte yhdessä tuli kiukaan alle.

TIMO: Mä käyn vaan laittamassa ruuat ja kaljat kylmään.

STEVE: *What's this lake's name?*

JUHA: *Pielisjärvi. It's one of Finland's largest lakes.*

STEVE: *It really is green and clean here.*

JUHA: *Perhaps we ought to get started warming up the sauna. It always takes quite a bit of time.*

TIMO: *Steve, you could go fetch some birch logs from the pile at the back of the sauna. Juha and I'll start bringing water from the lake.*

JUHA: *Then we'll light the fire together under the **kiuas**.*

TIMO: *I'll just go and put the food and the beers in a cool place.*

1 **Eiköhän aleta** roughly, 'perhaps we ought to begin'; grammatically, we have here the negative (**ei**) interrogative (**-kö**) indefinite (**aletaan/ei aleta**), with mitigation via the clitic **-hän**.

### Vocabulary

<b>X n alle</b>	to underneath X	<b>pino</b>	pile, heap
<b>hakeen</b> → <b>hake ma an</b>		<b>puhtaX</b>	clean, pure (sN: <b>puhdas</b> )
<b>halko</b>	(short) log	<b>puuha</b>	chore, <b>job</b>
<b>kantaan</b> → <b>kanta ma an</b>		<b>rupeX-</b>	starts (used with 3rd infinitive)
<b>käy-</b>	goes, comes, passes	<b>X n taka a</b>	from behind X
<b>kiuas</b>	(stem: <b>kiukaX</b> )	<b>tän</b> → <b>tämä n</b>	
<b>kylmä</b>	cold	<b>vie-</b>	takes (away)
<b>laitta-</b>	prepares, sets up	<b>vihreä</b>	green
<b>lämmitys kse</b>	heating, warming	<b>vo is it</b>	you could, you might

[< previous page](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_153](#)

[page\\_154](#)

[next page >](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 154

### Culture point

Going to the sauna (**sauno|minen**) is one of the most Finnish things one can do. The Finnish sauna is a survival of a practice once widespread in Central and Eastern Europe. Nowadays the Finnish sauna has evolved into several different varieties; the oldest form is best preserved in the smoke sauna, **savusauna**. (The

word **sauna** is connected etymologically with **savu** ‘smoke’.)

In cities, saunas are cunningly integrated as modern facilities into homes, blocks of flats, and the premises of larger companies. But the roots of the sauna are in the countryside: here, the sauna is a building traditionally made of logs (**hirre|t**) and with a turf roof (**turve|katto**). It is usually built near a shore, something which is very easy to do since Finland has over 40,000 lakes. In one typical arrangement the sauna consists of three rooms: the steam (or sweat) room (**lölyhuone**), the washroom (**pesu|huone**), and a room for relaxing in away from the heat, (**takka|huone**).

After showering in the **pesuhuone**, one proceeds to the **lölyhuone**, where there are benches (**lautee|t**) arranged stair-fashion around the ‘stove’. This ‘stove’ is actually a pile of stones (**kiuas**, stem: **kiukaX**) set over a heat-source which is traditionally wood-burning, but which may also, especially in cities, be powered by electricity (**sähkö|llä**) or, more rarely, gas (**kaasu|lla**) or oil (**öljy|llä**).

The **lauteet** are made of wood, a material which is slow to conduct heat and quick to absorb moisture. Sitting-places set at different heights provide a maximum of choice—the higher one sits, the hotter it will be. The floor is the best place for children and beginners: temperatures normally range from 80 to 100 C.

Such high temperatures are bearable because the sauna is a very dry place. The intense heat comes not from hot water or even hot water vapour, but from superheated steam, **löly**, which is produced by the judicious pouring of warm water over the stones of the **kiuas**. This work, **heittä- löly|ä** (lit. ‘throws löly’) is normally carried out by the host or the guest of honour.

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_154](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_155](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 155

### Language points

#### *Prepositions and postpositions*

You have already met the words **ennen** ‘before’ and **jälkeen** ‘after’. Whereas **ennen** precedes the word it goes with and thus is much like an English *preposition*, **jälkeen** comes after its word. It and others like it are therefore called *postpositions*.

Most Finnish prepositions are like **ennen** in that they take the partitive, e.g. **ennen helmikuu|ta** ‘before February’, **ilman sinu|a** ‘without you’.

Most postpositions are like **jälkeen** in that they take the genitive, e.g. **koulu|n jälkeen** ‘after school’, **kirko|n ohi** ‘past the church’.

Many prepositions and postpositions which refer to spatial and temporal relations

come in three varieties, depending on whether movement from or to, or simple location is meant. Thus ‘in front of’ occurs in the three **s**-cases: the inessive, elative, and illative, as **ede|ssä**, **ede|stä**, or **ete|en**:

**Ne odottaa kirkon ede|ssä.**

They’re waiting *in front* of the church.

**Ne tuli kirkon ede|stä.**

They came *from in front* of the church.

**Me mentiin kirkon ete|en.**

We went (*to*) *in front* of the church.

If *both* items are in motion (as in a race), the corresponding **I**-cases are used:

**Se Pysyy kilpailijan ede|llä.**

(S)he keeps ahead of her/his rival.

**L**-cases are also used for non-spatial meanings such as **edellä mainittu** ‘before-mentioned’.

‘At the back of’ or ‘behind’ is **taka|na**, **taka|a**, or **taa|kseQ**:

**Saa nähdä, mitä sanojen taka|na on.**

We’ll have to see what is behind the words.

**Se kävelee kädet selän taka|na.**

(S)he walks with (his/her) hands behind (his/her) back.

**Kuva on otettu selän taka|a.**

The picture has been taken from behind (his) back.

[< previous page](#)

page\_155

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_156

[next page >](#)

Page 156

**Mä nienin näyttämön taa|kse.**

I went (to) behind (the) stage.

Temporal uses of **taka|a** and **taa|kseQ** are also frequent:

**Se viha juontaa satojen vuosien taka|a.**

This hatred stems from hundreds of years back.

**Se ulottuu yli tuhannen vuoden taa|kse.**

It stretches back over a thousand years.

If both items are in motion, **perä|ssä** is common:

**Se juoksee merkkien perä|ssä.**

(S)he runs after brand names.

‘Under’ is **al|la**, **al|ta**, **al|le**:

**Ne asuu saman katon al|la.**

They live under the same roof.

**Mä en etsinyt sitä sängyn al|ta.**

I didn’t look for it (from) under the bed.

**Koira juoksi penkin al|le.**

The dog ran (to) under the bench.

‘Over’ is **yläpuole|lla**, **yläpuole|ta**, **yläpuole|lle**, ‘outside’ is **ulkopuole|lla**, **ulkopuole|ta**, **ulkopuole|lle**, for example:

**Sängyn yläpuolella riippuu kolme kuvaa.**

Above the bed hang three pictures.

**Suomen ulkopuolella ei sitä kovin paljon opiskella.**

Outside Finland it isn’t studied much.

‘On top of is expressed by the adessive, ablative, and allative of **pää** ‘head’: **pää|llä**, **pää|ltä**, **pää|lle**. Examples:

**Kissa nukkuu pianon pää|llä.**

The cat is sleeping on the piano.

**Mä löysin sen kaapin päältä.**

I found it on the cabinet.

**Pistä se takaisin television päälle!**

Put it back on top of the television!

The same word with s-forms refers to the remove at which something is located (or going to, or coming from):

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_156](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_157](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 157

**Ne asuu parin korttelin päässä.**

They live a few blocks away.

**Pysäkki siirrettiin 200 (kahdensadan) metrin päähän.**

The bus stop was moved (to a place) 200 metres away.

**Tie alkaa noin kymmenen kilometrin päästä.**

The road begins (from) about 10 kilometres away (from there/here).

But **päästä** is most often used in time expressions such as **tunni(n) päästä** ‘an hour having passed, after an hour’.

‘Between’ is **väli** in one of the local cases, as in:

**Puhelin oli pöydällä sänkyjen väliissä.**

The telephone was on a table between the beds.

**Timon ja Juhan väliillä oli riita.**

There was a dispute between Timo and Juha.

**Moraalisoinnin ja moraalin väliillä on ero.**

There is a difference between morality and moralizing.

‘Next to’ is most commonly **viere|ssä, viere|stä, viere|en**:

**Tohvelit on tolla** (more colloquial: **tossa**) *seinän viere|ssä*.

The slippers are over there *next to the wall*.

**Se pysäköi auton tien viere|en.**

(S)he parked the car *at the side of the road*.

**Lompakko löytyi eteisestä, oven viere|stä,**

The wallet was found in the entrance hall, *next to the door*.

Case forms of **ääri e** ‘edge’ (**ääre|ssä, ääre|stä, ääre|en**) are used to express location near something which one uses in certain normal ways: **pöydä|n ääre|ssä** is not simply ‘next to the table’, it is ‘at table (in order to have a meal)’. Similarly: **piano|n ääre|ssä** ‘at the piano’, **brandy|n ääre|ssä** ‘over (=while having) brandy’.

‘At’ is **luo|na, luo|ta, luo** (with possessive suffixes: **luokse-**) if someone’s home is meant, as in:

**Se vieraillee Juuso|n luona pari päivää.**

(S)he’s visiting at Juuso’s for a couple of days.

**He tulivat meidän luoksemme.**

They came to our place.

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_157](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_158](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 158

But ‘at the doctor’s’ and similar expressions involving professions are made with the inessive, e.g. **lääkäri|ssä**.

‘Through’ is **halki** or **läpi**, and ‘across’ is **poikki** or **yli**, as in

**Me käveltiin kotiin puisto|n halki.**

We walked home *through the park*.

**Me ajettiin kaupungi|n läpi.**

We drove *through the city*.



**Kettu juoksi tie/n poikki.**

The fox ran *across the road*.

**Kissa hyppäsi aida/n yli.**

The cat jumped *over the fence*.

The cause or reason for something is usually expressed by **takia** ‘on account of, or **vuoksi** ‘for the sake of’, e.g. **Mä myöhästyin su/n takia/si** ‘I was late *because of you*’, **huvi|n vuoksi** ‘for fun’, **varmuude|n vuoksi** ‘for the sake of security (=to be safe)’.

‘With’ is normally **kanssa**; but you will also come across **kera**, especially in connection with food and drink:

**Ne odottaa matkalaukkuj/en kanssa terminaalin ulkopuolella.**

They’re waiting outside the terminal *with (their) bags*.

**suola|n ja pippuri|n kera**

with salt and pepper

Few postpositions take the partitive. The most important are **vastapäätä** ‘opposite’, **varten** ‘for’, **pitkin** ‘along’, and **kohti** ‘towards’:

**Kirkko on pankki/a vastapäätä.**

The church is *opposite the bank*.

**Se osti sen me|i/tä varten.**

(S)he bought it *for us*.

**Se seurasi m(in)ua katu/a pitkin.**

(S)he followed me *along the street*.

**Se ajoi Jyväskylä/ä kohti.**

(S)he was driving *towards Jyväskylä*.

Notice also the adverbs **ylös** ‘up’, **alas** ‘down’, which are used mainly with the partitive, as in

**Bussi kulkee mäkelä alas.**      The bus goes down the hill.

Page 159

**Se juoksi portaali|ta ylös.** (S)he ran up the stairs.

**Kautta** ‘via’ and **kesken** ‘amidst’ both take the genitive, and they are used as both prepositions and postpositions. There are meaning differences, however. Notice these examples:

**kautta** all over Europe  
**Euroopa|n**  
**Euroopa|n** via Europe  
**kautta**  
**ystäv|i|en kesken** among friends  
**kesken vuode|n** in the middle of the year, before the year is over/out

Finally, consider **ympäri**. As a preposition, **ympäri** takes the partitive or genitive and means ‘located all around in, moving around in’:

**Sillä on markkinoita ympäri Eurooppa|a.**

It has markets *all over Europe*.

**Se kulki puhumassa ympäri Yhdysvalto|j|a.**

(S)he went *around the US* speaking.

**Se juoksenteli ympäri kenttä|ä.**

(S)he ran around *in the field*.

As a postposition, **ympäri** takes the genitive and refers to the circumference:

**Se juoksi kentä|n ympäri.**

(S)he ran (once) *around (the perimeter of) the field*.

**Mä kävelin auto|n ympäri.**

I walked *around the car*.

**Exercise 4** Revise some postpositions by translating these sentences into Finnish:

- 1 He stood in front of the boys.
- 2 They put the letter back under the lamp.
- 3 I'd like to go to Stockholm by way of Turku.
- 4 The church is next to the school.

5 They took us behind the building.

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_159](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_160](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 160

#### Dialogue 4

##### *Saunomassa*

##### **In the sauna at last**

*The boys sweat as they sit on the **lauteet***

TIMO: Heität sä Steve lisää vettä kiukaalle!

STEVE: Mitä, vieläkö lisää? Täällähän on jo yli kahdeksankymmentä astetta.

JUHA: Anna mennä vaan! Näitten löylyjen jälkeen hypätään järveen.

TIMO: Juha, vihdohan ensin mun selkää!

STEVE: Nyt alan ymmärtää miks sauna on niin tärkeä suomalaisille. Mulla on jo nyt hyvä olo.

JUHA: Odotas ku päästään juomaan saunakaljat, sitte se olo vasta hyvä on. Nyt mä lasken kolmeen ja sit juostaan järveen kilpaa. Yks, kaks, kolme.

*(Pojat juoksevat ulos löylystä.)*

TIMO: *Would you throw a little more water on **kiuas**, Steve!*

STEVE: *What, even more? It's already over 80 degrees (in) here.*

JUHA: *Just go ahead (lit. let it go). After the superheated steam(s) we'll jump in the lake.*

TIMO: *Juha, first give my back a good whisk, would you?*

STEVE: *Now I'm beginning to understand why the sauna is so important to Finns. I'm beginning to feel really good now.*

JUHA: *Just wait till we get to drink the beers, you won't feel really great until then. Now I'll count to three and then we'll run a race into the lake. One, two, three.*

*(The boys run out of the superheated steam.)*

## Vocabulary

<b>heittä-</b>	throws	<b>lautee t</b>	benches in sauna
<b>hikoile-</b>	sweats	<b>lisä jä</b>	more, additional
<b>hyppäX-</b>	jumps	<b>löyly</b>	superheated steam
<b>kilpa</b>	race	<b>yli</b>	over
<b>laske-</b>	counts		

[< previous page](#)

page\_160

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_161

[next page >](#)

Page 161

## 10

### Mitä tehtäs tänään?

### What'll we do today?

#### In this unit you will learn:

- how to form and use the conditional, and more about modals
- vocabulary and phrases connected with making plans and appointments
- about possessive suffixes
- about the verbal noun
- about Suomenlinna, and about language and religion in Finland

### Dialogue 1

#### Vuodenajat

#### The seasons

*You can learn something about Finland's climate, and revise the names of the months and seasons, by listening in on this conversation between Peter and Päivi*

PETER: Onk se totta, että Suomessa on neljä erilaista vuodenaikaa?

PÄIVI: Joo.

PETER: Kerro jotain niistä! Millaista on talvella?

PÄIVI: Talvikuukaudet ovat joului-, tammi-, ja helmikuu.<sup>1</sup> Joskus lumi tulee jo marraskuussa tai lokakuun lopulla. Parhaiten talvea voisivat kuvata sanat *lumi*, *pakkanen*, *pimeys* ja *hiihto*.

PETER: No entäs kevät?

[< previous page](#)

page\_161

[next page >](#)

Page 162

PÄIVI: Maaliskuussa päivät pitenee ja lumi alkaa vähitellen sulaa. Leskenlehdet ja hiirenkorvat ovat varma keväänmerkki.

PETER: Kesällä on varmaan kuuma ku aurinko ei kuulemma laske yöksi ollenkaa.

PÄIVI: (*naurahtaa*) Totta se on, että Lapissa aurinko ei laske keskikesällä ollenkaan, mutta Suomessa kesä on harvoin liian kuuma. Parasta kesässä on mökkielämä ja mansikat.

PETER: Syyskuukaudet on sitte syys-, loka-, ja marraskuu?

PÄIVI: Alkusyksystä on kaunista ku lehdet vaihtaa väriä. Loppusyksy on yleensä sateista ja harmaata.

PETER: *Is it true that Finland has four different seasons?*

PÄIVI: *Yes.*

PETER: *(Could you) say something about them? What's it like in the Winter(time)?*

PÄIVI: *The Winter months are December, January, and February. Sometimes the snow comes as early as (in) November or (at) the end of October. The words that would best describe Winter are 'snow', 'frost', 'darkness', and 'skiing'.*

PETER: *Well and what about Spring?*

PÄIVI: *In March the days grow longer and the snow begins gradually to melt. 'Widow's leaves' (coltsfoot) and 'mouse's ears' (birch buds) are a sure sign of Spring.*

PETER: *It must be warm in the Summer, when they tell me the sun doesn't set at all all night.*

PÄIVI: (*laughs*) *It is true that in Lappi the sun doesn't set at all in midsummer, but Summer is rarely too hot in Finland. The best (thing) in Summer is spending time at one's mökki, and the strawberries.*

PETER: *The Autumn months are September, October, and November, then?*

PÄIVI: *In early Autumn it's beautiful when the leaves change colour. The end of Autumn is generally rainy and grey.*

**1 joului-, tammi-, ja helmikuu:** Finns avoid repeating the second member of compounds even more often than we do in English (cf. 'North and South America').

They use a hyphen to mark the missing member (i.e., **joulu-** and **tammi-** are short for **joulu|kuu** and **tammi|kuu**).

### Vocabulary

<b>alku</b>	beginning	<b>elämä</b>	life
<b>aurinko</b>	sun	<b>erilainen</b>	different, distinct

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_162</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_163</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 163

<b>harmaa</b>	grey	<b>millainen</b>	what kind?
<b>hiihto</b>	skiing	<b>naurahta-</b>	bursts out laughing
<b>keski e</b>	middle		
<b>kuulemma</b>	they say; supposedly	<b>(ei) ollenkaan</b>	(not) at all
<b>kuvaX-</b>	describes	<b>pakkanen</b>	frost
<b>Lappi</b>	'Lapland'	<b>parhaiten</b>	best (adv.)
<b>lehti e</b>	leaf	<b>pimeys te</b>	darkness
<b>leskenlehti</b>	coltsfoot	<b>piteXE-</b>	gets longer
<b>leski e</b>	widow(er)	<b>sateinen</b>	rainy
<b>liian</b>	too	<b>sula-</b>	melts
<b>loppu</b>	end	<b>vaihta-</b>	changes, swops
<b>mansikka</b>	strawberry	<b>vähitellen</b>	gradually
		<b>väri</b>	colour

**Exercise 1** Check that you know the names of the seasons, the months, and basic climate vocabulary by writing a brief description in Finnish of the seasons where you live.

### Dialogue 2

#### *Kieli ja uskonto*

#### Language and religion

*Nick stops by to see Katja, and gets a quick lesson in Finnish demography*

KATJA: (*aukaisee oven*) Moi Nick. Kiva kun tulit käymään. Mulla alkokin olla jo pää sekaisin ruotsin pänttäämisestä.<sup>1</sup>

NICK: Sulla on varmaan joku hyvä syy lukea sitä, vai?

KATJA: No on. Huomenna on pakollinen ruotsinkielen tentti, joka pitää läpäistä, ennen kun pääsee yliopistosta.<sup>2</sup> Se vaaditaan kaikilta opiskelijoilta.

NICK: Ai. Miks suomenkielisten pitää suorittaa se?

KATJA: No koska ruotsi on Suomen toinen virallinen kieli, ja kaikkien virkamiesten pitää pystyä hoitamaan asiat kummallakin kielellä. Suomen väestöstä on 6 (kuus) prosenttia ruotsinkielisiä. Lähes loput onki sitte suomenkielisiä, ku Suomessa on tosi vähän ulkomaalaisia. Tosin Lapissa saamen kieli on virallinen kieli.

NICK: Nii, mä olen huomannu, että suomalaiset on kielen ja

[< previous page](#)      [page\\_163](#)      [next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)      [page\\_164](#)      [next page >](#)

Page 164

uskonnon suhteen aika yhtenäistä porukkaa. Eiks suurin osa suomalaisista ole luterilaista uskonnoltaan?<sup>3</sup>

KATJA: On. Eiköhän se luku ole jotain 86 prosenttia. Ortodoksia on vain noin 1 prosentti väestöstä ja muitten uskontojen osuus on vielä pienempi.

KATJA: (opens the door) *Hi, Nick. It's great you've come to visit. My head was beginning to spin with this swotting for Swedish.*

NICK: *You must have some good reason to be reading it, right?*

KATJA: *Well, yes. Tomorrow's the compulsory Swedish language exam, which you've got to get through in order to graduate. It's required of all students.*

NICK: *Ouch. Why do Finnish speakers have to sit it?*

KATJA: *Well, it's because Swedish is Finland's other official language, and every official has to be able to carry on business (lit. take care of things) in both languages. About 6 per cent of Finland's population is Swedish-speaking. Nearly (all) the rest are of course Finnish-speaking, since there are really very few foreigners in Finland. Saami (= Lappish) is an official language in Lappi, of course.*

NICK: *Yes, I've noticed that Finns are a pretty homogeneous bunch as regards language and religion. Aren't the greatest part of Finns Lutherans by (their) faith?*

KATJA: *Yes. I think the figure is something like 86 per cent. Orthodox make up only about one per cent of the population, and the proportion of the other religions is even smaller.*

**1 Mu|lla alko(i)|kin olla jo pää sekaisin ruotsi|n pänttää|mise|stä** 'My head was beginning to spin from swotting up Swedish', lit. 'I was beginning to have (my) head mixed up...'

2 **joka pitää läpäisyt, ennen kun pääsee yliopistosta** ‘which one has to get through before one gets out of university’; Katja omits subject pronouns and uses third person singular verb forms to distance herself a bit from the context

3 **uskonnoiltaan** ‘by (their) religion’

### Vocabulary

<b>ai!</b>	ouch!	<b>joka</b>	which (relative pronoun)
<b>alkokin</b> → <b>alkoi</b> <b>kin</b>		<b>joku</b>	every
<b>aukaise-</b>	opens	<b>Xn kielinen</b>	X-speaking

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_164</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_165</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 165

<b>kummalla kin</b>	both (Unit 8)	<b>sekaisin</b>	mixed up, muddled
<b>käy-</b>	visits		
<b>lopult</b>	(all) the rest, (all) the others	<b>X n suhte en</b>	as regards X
		<b>suhte Q</b>	relation
<b>luku</b>	figure, number; chapter	<b>suoritta-</b>	does, executes
		<b>syy</b>	reason, cause
<b>luterilainen</b>	Lutheran	<b>tentti</b>	examination
<b>lähes</b>	nearly	<b>toinen</b>	the other (of two); second
<b>läpäise-</b>	passes (exam); penetrates	<b>tosin</b>	to be sure; granted, ...
<b>mu i tten</b>	pG of <b>muu</b>		
<b>ortodoksinen</b>	orthodox	<b>ulko maalainen</b>	foreigner
<b>osa</b>	part	<b>uskonto</b>	religion
<b>osuus te</b>	(pro)portion	<b>vaati-</b>	demands, requires
<b>pakollinen</b>	obligatory, compulsory	<b>vai</b>	right? (question tag)
<b>pitä ä</b>	it is necessary	<b>virallinen</b>	official ( <b>virka</b> ‘office’)
<b>porukka</b>	bunch, gang	<b>virkamies</b>	official (person)
<b>prosentti</b>	per cent	<b>väestö</b>	population
<b>pysty-</b>	is (cap)able	<b>yhtenäinen</b>	uniform, homogeneous
<b>pänttäX-</b>	grinds, swots, crams		
<b>saame<sup>1</sup></b>	Saami, Lapp		

1 A marginal, but growing, group of nouns have stems ending in **e** but do not change this to **i** in either the citation form or the plural. To this group belong, besides **saame** ‘Saami; Lapp’, **ale** ‘sale; reduced prices in shop’, **nukke** ‘doll’, and



**nalle** ‘teddy bear’, many slang items such as **fade** ‘father’ and **ope** ‘teacher’, and all given names ending in **e**, such as **Kalle**, **Rasse**. (There’s a good-sized list of Finnish given names in an appendix at the back of this book.)

## Language points

### *Forming and using the conditional mood*

This corresponds roughly to English forms made with ‘would’, or to past-tense forms like ‘asked’, as in ‘If they asked me (=if they were to ask me), I would tell them.’ The Finnish conditional is quite easy to form. Its suffix is **-isi-**, which you add directly to the stem of the verb. The only changes which occur at the ends of verb stems are these:

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_165	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_166	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 166

1 The long vowels and diphthongs at the end of class IV verbs are reduced, as in the past tense:

stem	<b>syö-</b>	<b>reagoi-</b>
present	<b>syö n</b>	<b>reagoi n</b>
past	<b>sö i n</b>	<b>reago i n</b>
conditional	<b>sö isi n</b>	<b>reago isi n</b>
	‘eats’	‘reacts’

2 Also as in the past tense, any **e** at the end of a class I or III verb is deleted:

stem	<b>luke-</b>	<b>mene-</b>
present	<b>lue n</b>	<b>mene n</b>
past	<b>lu i n</b>	<b>men i n</b>
conditional	<b>luk isi n</b>	<b>men isi n</b>
	‘reads’	‘goes’

3 The **X** at the end of class II verbs is read as **A**; contrast the past tense, where **X** is read as **s**:

stem	<b>haluX-</b>	<b>kerkiX.</b>
present	<b>halua n</b>	<b>kerkiä n</b>
past	<b>halus i n</b>	<b>kerkis i n</b>
conditional	<b>halua isi n</b>	<b>kerkiä isi n</b>
	‘wants’	‘has time’

As in the past tense, there is no lengthening of the vowel in the third person: **Se sanoisi, jos se haluaisi sitä** ‘(S)he would say, if (s)he wanted it.’

Negative forms are made with the negative verb plus the conditional connegative. This form looks like the third person singular, but since it has the connegative suffix **-Q** at the end you will hear, and should pronounce, the usual lengthened consonants, for example:

**En haluaisi<sup>m</sup> mennä sinne.** I wouldn't want to go there.

To form the indefinite conditional, chop the **U** off the past passive participle and add **Aisiin:**

	<i>Class I</i>	<i>Class II</i>	<i>Class III</i>	<i>Class IV</i>
past passive participle	<b>anne ttu</b>	<b>maini ttu</b>	<b>men ty</b>	<b>saa tu</b>
indefinite conditional	<b>anne ttaisiinmaini ttaisiinmen täisiinmaa taisiin</b>			

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_166](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_167](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 167

The corresponding negative forms are **ei annettaisi, ei mainittaisi, ei mentäisi, ei saataisi.**

In colloquial speech, the endings **Aisiin** and **Aisi** are both commonly pronounced **As**, so you will usually hear **annettas, mainittas, mentäs, and saatas** in both positive and negative sentences, for example:

**Mitä me tehtäs siellä?** What would we do there?  
**Me ei sanottas mitään.** We wouldn't say anything.

The *past conditional* is simply the verb to be, **ole-**, in the conditional plus the past active participle, for example:

**Mä olisin mennyt, jos olisin ehtinyt.**

I would have gone if I'd had time.

**Sä et olisi saanut istumapaikkaa.**

You wouldn't have got a seat.

**Jos olisin tiennyt, en olisi sanonut sitä.**

If I had known, I wouldn't have said it.

In parallel fashion, the *past indefinite conditional* is simply the negative indefinite

conditional of the verb to be (**ei oltas**) plus the past *passive* participle:

**Me ei oltas menty sinne kuitenkaan.**

We wouldn't have gone there, anyway.

The conditional has three main uses:

- 1 To mitigate statements which might otherwise seem too brusque, as in **Mä otta~~isi~~<sup>n</sup> suuremman** 'I would (like to) take the larger one' (rather than the simple present: **Mä ot~~a~~<sup>n</sup> suuremman** 'I'll take the larger one').  
To refer to things that don't (or didn't) really happen, in other words, to the contrary-to-fact. As the name 'conditional' suggests, one such counterfactual is a condition, e.g. **Jos mulla olisi aikaa...** 'If I had time (but I don't)...' The
- 2 conditional also expresses what would happen if the condition were to be met: **...mä lähtisin heti** 'I would leave at once'. Note also the negative **Jos ei sataisi, mä lähtisin heti** 'If it weren't raining, I'd leave at once.'
- 3 To express fond hopes, e.g. **Jospa mä tietä~~isi~~<sup>n</sup>** 'If I only knew.'

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_167](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_168](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 168

**Exercise 2** Change these statements into wishes by putting the verb into the conditional (remember to use **jospa** to entertain hypotheses, **kunpa** to refer to that which is contrary to fact).

- 1 Minulla on aikaa.
- 2 Mä tiedän, mitä sä tarkoitat.
- 3 Sä jääät vähäks aikaa.
- 4 Me ei tehdä sitä.
- 5 Me ei menty sinne eilen.

### *More on modals*

Back in Unit 3, you learned how to use modal constructions like that of **Mä haluaisin ostaa kartan** 'I'd like to buy a map.' In such sentences, the subject is in the nominative. Alongside verbs of wanting (**haluX-**) and intending (**aiko-**), many verbs which express different types of ability occur in this type of construction: **voi-** 'is able', **pysty-** 'is capable', **osaX-** and **taita-** 'knows how', **ehti-** and **kerkiX-** 'has time'.

But there is also a second type of modal construction, one in which the subject is less in control, the subject's feelings and intentions are of less importance, or both. Verbs which enter into this type of construction include **pitä~~ä~~** and **täyty~~y~~** 'it is necessary' and the expressions **on pakko** 'it is necessary', **on tärkeä** 'it is important', **on vaikea** 'it is difficult', **on helppo** 'it is easy'. In this second type of modal construction, the subject is demoted: it is put into the genitive, and the verb is

always in the third person singular. Any direct-object nominals are put in the nominative and partitive (compare object forms used with the indefinite). Examples:

**Mu|n pitä|ä soitta|a kotiin.**

I have to phone home.

**Häne|n täyty|y osta|a uusi auto.**

(S)he has to buy a new car.

**Peka|n on helppo poike|ta sinne.**

It's easy for Pete to drop in there.

**Meidän on pakko löytä|ä häne|t.**

We must find him/her.

**Sitä mu|n on vaikea usko|a.**

That's difficult for me to believe.

**Ei meidä|n tarvitse lähteä vielä.**

We don't have to leave yet.

[< previous page](#)

page\_168

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_169

[next page >](#)

Page 169

This kind of modal construction is quite common with the conditional, especially of **pitä-**, which then means something like English 'ought', 'should'. For example:

**Ei su|n pitäis sanoa sitä.**

You shouldn't say it.

**Meidä|n pitäis soittaa sille.**

We ought to call him/her.

As in English, the negative of 'must' is not 'mustn't'. Negating the verb **pitä-** gives **ei pidä**, which means 'it isn't necessary'. To say 'one musn't', you use the negative of **saa-** 'one is permitted, one gets to X'.

**Exercise 3** Say in Finnish:

- 1 I have to go home.
- 2 Irma might know about that.

- 3 They don't feel like coming with us.
- 4 Where are you thinking of going this evening?
- 5 She ended up writing the whole letter.
- 6 It's important for me to exercise (**voimistele-**) at least three times a week.
- 7 We ought to write to him.
- 8 You don't have to answer.
- 9 You mustn't answer.

**Exercise 4** Write out Finnish translations for the following English sentences; if you get stuck, raid the dialogue on language and religion earlier in this unit. (You may have to change or omit a word here and there.)

- 1 You must have a good reason for doing it, right?
- 2 It's required of all students.
- 3 Swedish is Finland's other official language.
- 4 Don't the majority of Finns also know Swedish?
- 5 In France all officials have to know French.

**More on possession: the personal (possessive) suffixes**

<b>m(in)u n vihko</b>	my notebook (colloquial)
<b>vihko ni</b>	my notebook (more formal)

As you learned in Unit 1, Finnish has personal suffixes for its verbs, such as first person singular **-n** in **Mä soita|n sulle** 'I'll call you' and

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_169	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_170	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 170

second person plural **-tte** in **Voi|tte|ko auttaa minua?** 'Can you help me?'

But Finnish nouns can also take personal suffixes. You will sometimes encounter them in colloquial Finnish, and far more frequently in more formal Finnish. They most usually indicate possession, so we'll call them *possessive suffixes* from now on. Study the forms:

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>
1	<b>-ni</b>		<b>-mme</b>
2	<b>-si</b>		<b>-nne</b>
3		<b>-nsA/-#n</b>	

You will see that only one of these suffixes is identical to its verbal analogue: the first person plural **-mme**.

There is another important difference: despite their appearance, the suffixes **-mme**, **-nne**, and **-nsA** are not tight lids, so they don't compress consonants to their left. For

example, the **t** of **koti** and **katu** remain uncompressed in **koti|mme** ‘our home’, and **katu|nne** ‘your (plural/formal) street’.

In the third person, the same suffix is used for both singular and plural; the distinction is maintained by the genitive form of the appropriate personal pronoun, **häne|n** ‘his/her’ or **heidä|n** ‘their’: so **hänen kirja|nsa** is ‘her/his book’, but **heidän kirja|nsa** is ‘their book’. This pronoun is *not* used, however, if the possessor is the same person as the subject of the sentence. For example, **Anne ei halunnut sanoa nime|ä|än** means ‘Anne didn’t want to say her (own) name’, but in the sentence **Anne ei halunnut sanoa hänen nime|ä|än**, Anne is protecting someone else’s identity: **hänen** refers to some person *other* than Anne.

As for the difference between the variants (**-nsA** vs. **-#n**) of this suffix: the **-nsA** variant is always used in the nominative, genitive, and illative, both singular and plural. In the other cases, it is a matter of style: you will come across forms built with **-nsA**, but **-#n** is much more common.

The possessive suffixes always come *after* any case suffix, but *before* any of the enclitics **--kin/--kAAn**, **--kO**, **--pA**, **--hAn**, **--s**. For example:

**huonee|ssa|mme|ko**      in our room?  
**ystäv|i|stä|si|hän**      about your friends, you know...  
sELA    **Vihko löydettiin heidän huonee|sta|an.**  
          The notebook was found in their room.

[< previous page](#)                      [page\\_170](#)                      [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#)                      [page\\_171](#)                      [next page >](#)

Page 171

pELA    **Mä puhuin hänen ystäv|i|stä|än.**  
          I was talking about her friends.  
sP        **En mä nyt muista hänen nime|ä|än.**  
          I don’t remember his name now.

If a case suffix ends in a consonant, this consonant is obliterated without a trace when a possessive suffix follows. This means that the forms of the nominative and genitive singular and of the nominative plural all look and sound alike when followed by possessives. Have a look at these examples:

	<i>Plain</i>	<i>Possessed (third person singular)</i>
sN	<b>käsi</b>	<b>(hänen) käte nsä</b>
sG	<b>käde n</b>	<b>(hänen) käte nsä</b>
pN	<b>käde t</b>	<b>(hänen) käte nsä</b>

Nouns which have genitives plural in both **-den** and **-tten** (Unit 9) use only the latter form when a possessive suffix is attached: thus we have **hampa|i|den/hampa|i|tten** but only **hänen hampa|i|tte|nsa** ‘his/her teeth’.

Possessive suffixes are also attached to postpositions which take the genitive; the rules are the same as with ordinary nouns. Thus we have, for example:

**Mä kuulin naisen äänen (meidän) taka|na|mme.**

I heard a woman's voice behind us.

**Paketti oli avoinna hänen viere|ssä|än penkillä.**

The package was open next to him on the bench.

**Poika veti tuolin hänen al|ta|nsa.**

The boy pulled the chair out from under him/her.

**Minim oli pakko nousta vaunuun hänen perä|ssä|än.**

I had to get into the (railway) car behind him.

**He seisoivat edelleen ede|ssä|ni.**

They were still standing in front of me.

Here a few more examples of the possessive suffixes in action:

**Mitä te pidätte tästä meidän kaupungi|sta|mme?**

What do you think of this town of ours?

**Pari päivää sitten minä sain poja|lta|nne šekin.**

A couple of days ago I received a cheque from your son.

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_171](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_172](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 172

**Heidän riita|nsa kävi yhä kiihkeämmäksi.**

Their argument got more and more heated.

**Tarvitsen apu|a|nne.**

I need your help.

**Autoin takin hänen y|ltä|än.**

I helped him/her off with his/her coat. (lit. ‘I helped the coat off him/her.’)

**Se vaihtoi paremman puvun päälle|en.**

(S)he put a better dress/suit on. (lit. ‘changed a better dress/suit onto him/her(self).’)

**Hän katsoi ympäri|lle|en.**

(S)he looked around him/her (self).

Finally, you should be aware of the fact that many adverbial expressions which would have no person-marking in English are built with possessive suffixes in Finnish. For example, ‘in earnest, seriously’ is the plural inessive of **tos** ‘true’, **tos|issa**, plus the appropriate possessive suffix: **Sanoitsä sen tos|issa|s(i)?** is ‘Did you really mean it?’ ‘The door is ajar’ in Finnish becomes ‘The door is on its crack’, **Ovi on rao|lla|an**, and ‘I’ll leave the door ajar’ is **Mä jätän oven rao|lle|en** (adessive and allative of **rako** ‘crack, slit’). Other examples are:

<i>Adverb</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Literally</i>
<b>ede lle en</b>	still	to its fore
<b>uude lle en</b>	again	at its new
<b>uude sta an</b>	again	out of its new
<b>kerra ssa an</b>	utterly	in its time
<b>kerra lla an</b>	at a time	at its time
<b>viimeis tä än</b>	at the latest	its last (sP)
<b>tyhj i llä än</b>	vacant	at its empties
<b>oikea sta an</b>	actually	out of its correct
<b>enimmä kse en</b>	for the most part	to its most (sTRA) <sup>1</sup>
<b>hilja lle en</b>	slowly, gradually	to its quiet

1 Notice that the translative suffix **-ksi** becomes **-kse-** before possessive suffixes.

**Exercise 5** In colloquial Finnish, possessive suffixes are relatively rare. Instead of **koira|ni** you say **mun koira**, instead of **häne|n ystävä|nsä** you say **se|n ystävä**. Practise both types of construction by converting these sentences into less formal, more colloquial, versions.

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_172](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_173](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 173

- 1 Juoksin hänen huoneeseensa.
- 2 Minun oli vaikea ymmärtää hänen puhettaan.
- 3 Hänen vaimonsa odottaa lasta.
- 4 Pane sitä minun kuppiini.
- 5 Nyt on teidän vuoronne.
- 6 Olen ollut neljä kertaa hänen luonaan.



**Exercise 6** Check your understanding of possessive suffixes by translating these sentences into Finnish:

- 1 He was standing behind us.
- 2 The keys were found in your (plural/formal) room.
- 3 She didn't want to introduce her friend.
- 4 Why are you (informal) shaking (**pudista-**) your head?
- 5 He drank half (**puolelt**) of his beer.

**Vocabulary building: nominals from verbs and vice versa**

In this and previous units you have met many nominals which are built from verbs, and many verbs which are built from nominals. In this section we'll round all these up and look at them a little more systematically.

Many nominal/verb pairs differ only in their last vowel, so it is well worth your while to pay close attention to this. For example, in these pairs:

	word	sauna	bread	needle
nominal	<b>sana</b>	<b>sauna</b>	<b>leipä</b>	<b>neula</b>
verb	<b>sano-</b>	<b>sauno</b>	<b>leipo-</b>	<b>neulo-</b>
	says	uses sauna	bakes	sews

the verbs all differ from their nominals in that they end in **o**. The following pairs, on the other hand, all have verbs that end in **U** (i.e., **u** or **y**, according to vowel harmony; see below):

	dry	ripe	one	black
nominal	<b>kuiva</b>	<b>kypsä</b>	<b>yksi</b>	<b>musta</b>
verb	<b>kuivu-</b>	<b>kypsy-</b>	<b>yhty-</b>	<b>miistu-</b>
	dries	ripens	unites	blackens

With the following pairs, it is the *nominals* which end in **U**:

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_173	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_174	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 174

	beginning	laughter	entrance	wash	bill
nominals	<b>alku</b>	<b>nauru</b>	<b>pääsy</b>	<b>pesu</b>	<b>maksu</b>
verbs	<b>alka-</b>	<b>naura-</b>	<b>pääse-</b>	<b>pese</b>	<b>maksa-</b>
	begins	laughs	gets	washes	pays, costs

but the nominals of these pairs end in **O** (i.e., **o** or **ö**, according to vowel harmony);

see below):

	departure	skiing	memory	victory	fact	soup
nominals	<b>lähtö</b>	<b>hiihto</b>	<b>muisto</b>	<b>voitto</b>	<b>tieto</b>	<b>keitto</b>
verbs	<b>lähte-</b>	<b>hiihtä-</b>	<b>muista-</b>	<b>voitta-</b>	<b>tietä-</b>	<b>keittä-</b>
	leaves	skis	remembers	wins	knows	cooks

You will notice that the vowel harmony of word-formation differs somewhat from that of inflection. The front-vowel variants of many derivational suffixes, e.g. the **ö** of the suffix **O** and the **y** of the suffix **U**, occur only if an **y**, **ö**, or **ä** occurs earlier in the word. We therefore have **lähtj**ö ‘departure’ but **tietj**o ‘fact’; **pääsj**y ‘entrance’ but **pesj**u ‘wash’.

You have already met four of the most common suffixes which build nouns from verbs. These are the suffix of the verbal noun, =**minen** (Unit 3), the suffix =**IME**, which builds the names of many tools and instruments (Units 5 and 7), and the suffix of the third infinitive (Unit 6), =**mA**. Finally, there is the suffix =**jA**, first introduced in Unit 1, which builds the names of agents. Notice that any stem-final **e** changes to **i** before this suffix, e.g. **lukij**a ‘reader’ from **luke-** ‘reads’.

### Dialogue 3

#### *Sovitaan tapaaminen*

#### **Let’s make a date**

*Two friends quickly arrange a place and time to meet*

VILLE: (*huutaa*) Hei Kalle, oota vähän!

KALLE: Moi Ville! Mitäs sulle?

VILLE: Ei mitään ihmeempää. Kuule, me sovittiin poikien kanssa et tavataan ‘Häppärissä’ kuudelta.

KALLE: Mitä kello on nyt?

VILLE: Puol viis.

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_174	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_175	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 175

KALLE: Mun täytyy hoitaa ensin pari juttua, mut mä voisin tulla sitte, joskus seitsemän maissa.

VILLE: Tuu sit ku kerkiit, me ootetaan siellä.

VILLE: (shouts) *Hey Kalle, wait a bit!*

KALLE: *Yo, Ville! What's up?*

VILLE: *Nothing special. Listen, me and the boys've decided to meet at the 'Häppäri' at six.*

KALLE: *What time's it now?*

Vile: *Half four.*

KALLE: *I have to sort a few things first, but I could come later, sometime around seven.*

VILLE: *Come when you can, we'll be waiting for you there.*

### Vocabulary

<b>hoita-</b>	takes care of, sees to, sorts	<b>ootetaan</b> → <b>odote taan</b>	
<b>huuta-</b>	shouts	<b>puol</b> → <b>puoli</b>	
<b>ei ihmee mpä ä</b>	not bad	<b>sopi-</b>	agrees (trans)
<b>juttuu</b> → <b>juttu a</b> <b>kerkiit</b> → <b>kerkiä t</b>		<b>tapaa minen</b>	from the stem <b>tapaX-</b> meets
<b>X n maji ssa</b>	at about X(o'clock)	<b>täyty y</b>	it is necessary
<b>oota</b> → <b>odota</b>		<b>tuu</b> → <b>tule</b>	
		<b>X n kanssa</b>	with X

### Dialogue 4

#### Suomenlinna

*Varpu and Sanna decide to do a day trip to the Suomenlinna, a fortress built by Sweden in 1746. You can read more about Suomenlinna in Unit 14*

SANNA: Hei mitä tehtäs<sup>1</sup> tänään?

VARPU: Mä en oo ollu pitkään aikaan Suomenlinnassa. Voitas<sup>1</sup> tehdä päiväretki sinne.

SANNA: Joo. Soitetaan Marille ja pyydetään se mukaan.

VARPU: Sovitaan että tavataan Kauppatorilla Suomenlinnan lauttojen luona vaikka kaheltatoista.

SANNA: Onkohan siellä mitään mielenkiintoista näyttelyä meneillään?

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_175	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_176	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 176

VARPU: Taytyy kattoo Hesarista. Ootsä käyny koskaan siinä sukellusveneessä?

SANNA: Vesikossa vai. En, mut en tiiä<sup>2</sup> kiinnostaaks mua sukellusveneeet. Mieluummin mä otan sit aurinkoa kallioilla.

VARPU: No katotaan sit siellä mitä tehdään.

SANNA: Marillakin voi olla ideoita. Mä meen nyt soittaa sille.

SANNA: *Hey, what can we do today?*

VARPU: *I haven't been to the Suomenlinna for a long time. We could do a day trip (to) there.*

SANNA: *Yeah. Let's call Mari and ask her along.*

VARPU: *Let's agree to meet in the market, at the ferries, at say twelve (o'clock).*

SANNA: *Is there any interesting exhibit (going) on there, I wonder?*

VARPU: *Have to look in the paper (=Helsingin Sanomat). Have you ever been in the diving boat there?*

SANNA: *(You mean) in the 'mink', right? No, but I don't know whether I'm interested in diving boats. I'd rather just catch some sun on the cliffs.*

VARPU: *Well, let's just see what we'll do (when we get) there.*

SANNA: *Mari might have some ideas, too. I'll go phone her now.*

1 **tehtäs, voitäs** are colloquial pronunciations of **tehtäisiin, voitaisiin**.

2 **tiiä** is a colloquial pronunciation of **tiedä**

**Vocabulary**

<b>(X)n muka an</b>	along (with X)	<b>mielen kiintoinen</b>	interesting
<b>Hesari→ Helsingi n Sanoma t</b>	Helsinki's (and Finland's) leading newspaper	<b>mieluu mm in</b>	rather, for preference
<b>idea</b>	idea	<b>näyttely</b>	exhibit(ion)
<b>kallio</b>	cliff	<b>päivä retki</b>	day trip
<b>kattoo→ katso a</b>		<b>sukellus</b> <i>kse</i>	diving
		<b>vene</b> Q	boat
		<b>vesikko</b>	mink; name of a submarine at Suomenlinna
<b>kiinnosta- lautta</b>	interests ferry		
<b>mene i llä (än)</b>	going on		

*Exercise 7* Write out Finnish translations for the following English sentences by raiding the two dialogues above. (You may have to change or omit a word here and there.)

[< previous page](#)

page\_176

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_177

[next page >](#)

Page 177

- 1 I'd rather have some coffee on the balcony.
- 2 What time is it now?—Three-thirty.
- 3 Me and the girls've decided to meet on Esplanaadi at eight.
- 4 Let's see what we'll do when we get there.
- 5 I have to sort a few things first.

### Language points

#### *One further note on vowel harmony*

The simple vowel-harmony rule given in Unit 1 works most of the time, but as you have seen in the previous section, there are certain complications. Here we look at one more.

Certain foreign words like **amatööri** 'amateur', **karikatyyri** 'caricature' complicate the picture. These words contain a vowel from the set **u, o, a**, but they also contain, further along in the body of the word, a vowel from the set **y, ö, ä** and no further **u**'s, **o**'s, or **a**'s. Usage fluctuates, but more often than not these words also take the **y, ö, ä** forms of suffixes with **U, O, A**. So we have **amatööri|llä**, **karikatyyri|ä**. Contrast **asymmetria** 'asymmetry', which, with the sequence **a-y-a**, takes **u, o, a** forms, e.g. **asymmetria|sta**.

[< previous page](#)

page\_177

[next page >](#)

Page 178

## 11

### Yhä nopeammin

### More and more quickly

#### In this unit you will:

- learn more about Finnish winter festivities
- learn how to form ordinal numerals and fractions
- read about Finnish parliament, and about Senate Square
- learn about comparative and superlative adverbs
- systematize your knowledge of words for ‘some’, ‘every’, ‘all’, ‘many’, and ‘few’

#### Dialogue 1

##### Matkatoimistossa

##### At the travel agent's

*Paul goes to a travel agent's to buy air tickets to Stockholm, and finds out where he can change some money. **Toimisto/virkailija** (lit. 'office official') is something like 'agent'*

PAUL: Päivää, mitä maksaa lento Helsingistä Tukholmaan?

TOIMISTOVIRKAILIJA: Katsotaanpa, edestakainenko?

PAUL: Eiku yhteen suuntaan.

TOIMISTOVIRKAILIJA: Viis sataa markkaa yhteen suuntaan plus kolmekymmentä markkaa toimistokuluja, joten se tekee viissataa kolmekymmentä markkaa yhteensä.

PAUL: Onks vielä paikkoja jäljellä huomenna?

TOIMISTOVIRKAILIJA: Hetkinen, SASilla vai Finnairilla?

Page 179

PAUL: Ei sillä ole väliä.<sup>1</sup> Joskus iltapäivällä jos on tilaa.

TOIMISTOVIRKAILIJA: Viistoista kolmekymmentä Finnairin koneessa on vielä paikkoja.

PAUL: Varataan se. Voiko täällä maksaa Visalla?

TOIMISTOVIRKAILIJA: Totta kai.

PAUL: Mä tarvitsen kruunuja. Missä vois vaihtaa rahaa?

TOIMISTOVIRKAILIJA: Rahaa voi vaihtaa pankissa kadun toisella puolella.

PAUL: Sopiiko että tulen noutamaan lipun noin tunnin päästä?

TOIMISTOVIRKAILIJA: Lippunne on silloin valmiina. Voitte hakea sen tuolta tiskiltä.

1 **Ei sillä (ole) väliä** 'It doesn't matter.'

### *Vocabulary*

There'll be no more translations of dialogues from now on, since you should be getting the hang of it by now. There's a lot of help with the trickier forms in this vocabulary though; you can look up the stems in the glossary at the back of this book and in the grammatical sections to which they are cross-referenced.

<b>edes takainen</b>	return (trip, ticket)	<b>nouta-</b>	fetches
<b>hake</b>	fetches; applies for	<b>paikka</b> <b>pankki</b>	place; seat bank
<b>jälje llä</b> <b>joten</b>	left (over) (and) so	<b>plus</b> <b>puoli e</b>	plus side, half
<b>katso taan pa</b> <b>koneQ</b> <b>kruunu</b>	let's see... machine; plane crown; (Swedish) <i>krona</i>	<b>tila</b> <b>tiski</b> <b>toimisto</b> <b>vaihta-</b>	space, room counter, desk office changes
<b>kulu t</b> <b>lent o</b>	expenses flight	<b>varaX-</b> <b>yhte ensä</b> <b>yhte en</b> <b>suunta an</b>	books, reserves all together (into) one direction, i.e. single
<b>luotto kortti</b>	credit card		

**Exercise 1** Raid the dialogue above to write your own, in which two friends discuss what flight arrangements they'd like to make, where they'll buy the tickets, where they'll change money, and so on.

Page 180

## Dialogue 2

### *Pikkujoulu* Little Christmas

*In the two or three weeks leading up to the real Christmas, Finns usually throw and go to a number of 'Little Christmas' (**pikkujoulu**) parties at clubs, at work, and among various circles of friends. The following dialogue is in two parts: part one is an invitation (**kutsu**) to a **pikkujoulu** celebration; the second part is set at the party itself, where Jane samples some traditional Little Christmas fare, including some mulled wine (**glögi**) and gingersnaps (**piparkakkuja**, **pipare/ita**)*

*Kutsu:*

JANE: Hei Mikko!

MIKKO: Moi Jane, olipa hyvä että tavattiin.<sup>1</sup>

JANE: Ai miks?

MIKKO: Ensi lauantaina mulla on pikkujoulut. Pääset sä tulemaan?

JANE: Mikä se pikkujoulu on?

MIKKO: No, se on semmonen juhla, jota vietetään ystävien ja työtovereiden kanssa ennen joulua. Yleensä niissä juodaan paljon glögiä ja syödään piparkakkuja.

JANE: Ai mitä?

MIKKO: Tuu lauantaina kuudelta niin näet!

JANE: Kiitos, tuun mielelläni.

*Pikkujouluissa:*

*Ovikello soi. Mikko avaa oven.*

MIKKO: Moi tuu sisään. Kiva ku tulit.

JANE: (*ojentaa paketin*) Tässä sulle tuliainen.

MIKKO: Kiitos. Ota glögiä! Se on ku kuumaa punaviiniä ja siinä on rusinoita ja manteleita.



JANE: (*maistaa glögiä*) Hyvää!

MIKKO: Ota myös pipareita.

JANE: Leivoit sä ne itse?

MIKKO: No, äiti auttoi vähän. Tule niin esittelen sut muille.

1 **olipa hyvä että tavattiin** ‘it’s a good thing we’ve run into one another’ (Unit 6).

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_180	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_181	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 181

### *Vocabulary*

<b>ai</b>	oh!	<b>pipari</b> → <b>piparkakku</b>	
<b>esittele-</b>	introduces	gingersnap	
	<b>piparkakku</b>		
<b>glögi</b>	mulled wine	<b>puna viini</b>	red wine
<b>jota</b>	which (relative pronoun)	<b>rusina</b>	raisin
		<b>semmonen</b>	sort of a, a kind of
<b>juhla</b>	celebration	<b>soi-</b>	rings
<b>menteli</b>	almond	<b>tuliainen</b>	present given by person arriving; <b>tuliaiselt</b> party given for person arriving
<b>mielellä ni</b>	gladly		
<b>ojenta-</b>	passes		
<b>ovi kello</b>	doorbell		
<b>paketti</b>	package		
		<b>työ toveri</b>	work colleague

### Language points

#### *The relative pronouns: jo|ka and mi|kä*

This **mi|kä** is the same as the interrogative pronoun first introduced at Unit 3. However, we are *not* talking here about the indeclinable **joka**, which means ‘each, every’. *This jo|ka* is an entirely different word; you use it to link clauses, analogous to English ‘who’, ‘which’, and ‘that’:

**Se on mies, jo|ka on ollut töissä pankissa.**

It's a man *who* has worked in a bank.

**Se on tehtävä, *jo/ka* kysyy aikaa ja vaivaa.**

It's a task *which* calls for time and hard work.

**Toi on se poika, *jo/ka* löi ikkunan rikki.**

That's the boy *that* broke the window.

Unlike English, Finnish can't leave the little link-word out:

**Tossa on se ikkuna, *jo/n/ka* poika löi rikki.**

There's the window (*that*) the boy broke.

As you can see from the last example, **jo|ka** declines, i.e. it takes case suffixes: **jo|ka** is the nominative singular, **jo|n|ka** is the genitive singular (indicating the accusative in the example above), and **jo|ta** is the partitive singular, as in:

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_181	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_182	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 182

**Tämä on se, *jo/ta* etsin.**

This is the one (*that*) I was looking for.

**Se on asia, *jo/ta* mun on vaikea todistaa.**

It is a thing *which* it is difficult for me to prove.

As a rule, **jo|ka** is more concrete, and **mi|kä** is more abstract. Here are their full paradigms:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
N	jo ka	jo t ka	mi kä	mi t kä
G	jo n ka	jo i den	mi n kä	=sG
P	jo ta	jo i ta	mi tä	=sP
ELA	jo sta	jo i sta	mi stä	=sELA
INE	jo ssa	jo i ssa	mi ssä	=sINE
ILL	jo hon	jo i hin	mi hin	=sILL
ABL	jo lta	jo i lta	mi ltä	=sABL
ADE	jo lla	jo i lla	mi llä	=sADE
ALL	jo lle	jo i lle	mi lle	=sALL
ESS	jo na	jo i na	mi nä	=sESS

TRA      jo|ksi                      jo|i|ksi                      mi|ksi                      =sTRA

Notice that the forms of **jo|ka** and **mi|kä** run parallel right through to the plural nominative (**jo|t|ka**, **mi|t|kä**). They then part company: other than **mi|t|kä**, the plural forms of **mi|kä** are identical to its singular forms, while **jo|ka** has a plural stem **jo|i-**.

Study these further examples of the relative pronouns in action:

**Tarina kertoo suomalaisesta taksikusista, jo|lla on italialainen vaimo.**

The tale tells of a Finnish taxi driver *who* has an Italian wife.

**Pankeissa on paljon väkeä, jo|i|lta nykyaikainen tietotekniikka vie työpaikan.**

There are many people in banks *from whom* today's information technology is going to take (their) job.

**Hän aina tervehtii minua, mi|kä on outoa, sillä minä en tunne häntä.**

(S)he always greets me, *which* is strange, since I don't know him/her.

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_182</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_183</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 183

**Viinistä se sanoi saman, mi|n|kä se sanoi musiikistakin.**

(S)he said the same (thing) about the wine (*that*) (s)he said about the music.

**Mä teen mi|n|kä pystyn.**

I'll do *what* I can.

**Exercise 2** Combine the sentences under A and B with the appropriate form of the relative pronoun.

**Model:** (A) **Kuka toi nainen on** 'Who's that woman?'+(B) **Naisella on punaiset kengät** 'The woman has red shoes'

**Kuka toi nainen on, jo|lla on punaiset kengät?**

'Who's that woman who has red shoes?'

**A**

Tämä on se huone.

Noi kirjat on mun.

Se sanakirja on parempi.

**B**

Me puhuttiin siitä.

Ne on ylimmäisellä hyllyllä.

Mä unohdin sen kotiin.

Uusi opettaja tulee huomenna. Te ette tunne häntä.

### Dialogue 3

#### *Helmikuun juhlista* February festivities

*February may be the shortest month, but in Finland it's crammed full of special days. In the following three-part dialogue, friends talk about Runeberg Day, sledding on Shrove Tuesday, and Kalevala Day*

*Runebergin päivä:*

ROBERT: Miksi tänään liputetaan?

LIISA: 5. (viides) helmikuuta on Runebergin päivä. Se on virallinen liputuspäivä.

ROBERT: Kuka on Runeberg?

LIISA: Johan Ludwig Runeberg on Suomen kansalliskirjailija. Hän on kirjoittanut sanat *Maamme laulmm*, Suomen kansallislauluun. Hän on myös kirjoittanut kirjan *Vänrikki Stoolin tarinat*, joka kertoo Suomensodasta 1808–1809. Tiesitkö että vuonna 1809 Suomesta tuli osa

[< previous page](#)

page\_183

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_184

[next page >](#)

Page 184

Venäjän keisarikuntaa? Aikaisemmin Suomi oli osa Ruotsia.

ROBERT: Liittyys Runebergin päivään erityisiä tapoja?

LIISA: Runebergin vaimo Frederika leipoi sille torttuja. Nykyään niitä kutsutaan Runebergin torttuiksi ja niitä syödään Runebergin päivän tienoilla.

*Laskiainen:*

ULLA: Läheks pulkkamäkeen?

JOHN: Ai tänäänkö?

ULLA: Eiku huomenna, ku on laskiaistiistai.

JOHN: Ai niin, Eeva kysykin multa sitä viime viikolla.

ULLA: No sitten se varmaan kertokin sulle, että pulkkamäen jälkeen mennään sen

luo syömään hernekeittoa ja laskiaispullia.

*Kalevalanpäivä (28.2):*

*(Helsingin Akateemisessa kirjakaupassa.)*

KAIJA: Mä olen menossa pääsiäisenä New Yorkiin, Markin perheen luo. Mitä mä vois viedä sinne tuliaisiksi?

ANNE: Hei osta Kalevala<sup>1</sup>. Senhän saa englanninkielisenä.

KAIJA: Hyvä idea!

ANNE: Muista sitte mainita Elias Lönnrothista ja sen runonkeruumatkoista ympäri Karjalaa 1800-luvulla.

KAIJA: Niin, Kalevalahan on tärkein suomalainen teos, johon on kerätty vuosisatoja suusta suuhun kulkeneita kansantarinoita.

1 Kalevala on Suomen kansalliseepos.

### *Vocabulary*

<b>akateeminen</b>	academic	<b>kirjailija</b>	writer, author
<b>eepos</b> <i>kse</i>	epic	<b>kirja kaupa</b>	bookshop
<b>erityinen</b>	special	<b>kulkene i ta</b>	which have gone/ travelled
<b>herne</b> Q	pea		
<b>kansallis </b>	national	<b>läheks→lähdetkö</b> <b>sä</b>	
<b>kansan tarina</b>	folk tale	<b>laskiainen</b>	Lent
<b>Karjala</b>	Karelia	<b>laskiais pulla</b>	Lent bun
<b>keisari kunta</b>	empire	<b>laskiais tiistai</b>	Shrove Tuesday
<b>keräX-</b>	collects	<b>laulu</b>	song, anthem
<b>kerto kin</b>	s3 pt of <b>kerta-</b>	<b>liitty-</b>	is attached, is associated
<b>keruu</b>	collecting, gathering		

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_184](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_185](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 185

<b>liputta-</b>	flies flag ( <b>lippu</b> )	<b>pulkka</b>	(a kind of sled)
<b>1800-</b>	in the nineteenth	<b>runo</b>	poem
<b>luvulla</b>	century	<b>suu sta</b>	from mouth to

<b>maa</b>	land, country	<b>suu hun</b>	mouth
<b>nykyään</b>	nowadays	<b>tapa</b>	custom, way
<b>pääsiäinen</b>	Easter	<b>tarina</b>	tale
<b>perheQ</b>	family	<b>vänrikki</b>	ensign
<b>perinteQ</b>	tradition		

## Language points

### Comparative and superlative adverbs

Here we have the equivalents of English expressions such as ‘more quickly’ and ‘the most easily’.

To form these, you add **=in**, a tight-lid suffix, to the comparative or superlative stem of the adjective. These stems both end in **MPA**, and **=in** cancels the final **A** and compresses the **MP** to **mm**. For example, ‘more quickly’ is **nopeammin** (stem: **nopea|mpa-**), and ‘most quickly’ is **nopeimmin** (stem: **nope|impa-**).

The full set of adjectival and adverbial forms of **nopea** ‘quick, fast’ looks like this:

	<i>Adjective</i>	<i>Adverb</i>
positive	<b>nopea</b>	<b>nopea sti</b>
comparative	<b>nopea mpi</b>	<b>nopea mm in</b>
superlative	<b>nope in</b>	<b>nope imm in</b>

Notice the forms of these common temporal adverbs:

<b>pian</b>	soon	<b>aikais in</b>	early	<b>myöhä än</b>	late
<b>pikemmin</b>	sooner	<b>aikaise mm in</b>	earlier	<b>myöhe mm in</b>	later
<b>pikimmin</b>	soonest	<b>aikais imm in</b>	earliest	<b>myöh imm in</b>	last

Irregular are

<b>paljo n</b>	a lot	<b>hyv in</b>	well	<b>pia n</b>	soon
<b>enemmän</b>	more	<b>pare mm in</b>	better	<b>pike mm in</b>	sooner
<b>eniten</b>	most	<b>parha iten</b>	best	<b>pik imm in</b>	soonest

Examples:

**Mä rakastan sua *enemmän* kuin koskaan.**

I love you *more* than ever.

[< previous page](#)

page\_185

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_186

[next page >](#)

**Se pitää maalauksesta ja kirjallisuudesta, mutta musiikki kiinnostaa sitä eniten.**

(S)he likes painting and literature, but music interests him/her *the most*.

Note these constructions, made with **mi|tä** and **se**:

**Mitä pikemmin, sen parempi.**                      The sooner, the better.  
**mitä pikimmin**                                      as soon as possible

‘More and more X-ly’ is expressed by **yhä**, as with the comparative adjective: **Se juoksi yhä nopeammin** ‘(S)he ran more and more quickly.’

**Exercise 3** Put into Finnish:

- 1        more and more simply
- 2        most cheaply
- 3        as soon as possible
- 4        more deeply
- 5        (S)he came earlier.

#### Dialogue 4

##### *Parlamentti*

##### **Finnish parliament**

TIM: Et auttas mua vähän Petteri? Sähän tiedät hyvin Suomen hallintojärjestelmää.

PETTERI: No se riippuu vähän siitä mitä sä haluat tietää.

TIM: Suomen presidenttihän on Martti Ahtisaari, mut koska siitä tuli presidentti ja kuinka pitkäksi aikaa?

PETTERI: Ahtisaari vannoi presidentinvalansa ensimmäinen maaliskuuta 1994 ja Suomessa presidentti istuu kuus vuotta vallassa.

TIM: Istuuko eduskunta sit neljä vai kuus vuotta?

PETTERI: Eduskunta istuu neljä vuotta kerrallaan.

TIM: Paljonko on Suomen eduskunnassa kansanedustajia?

PETTERI: 200 (kakssataa). Viimeiset eduskuntavaalit oli maaliskuussa 1995. Silloin Sosiaalidemokraatit sai 63 paikkaa, Keskustapuolue 44 ja Kokoomuspuolue 39. Ne onkin historiallisestikin Suomen kolme suurinta puoluetta.

Page 187

TIM: Istuuko eduskunnassa muita puolueita?

PETTERI: Vihreät, Kristillinen puolue, Ruotsalainen kansanpuolue, Maaseudunliitto, Vasemmisto puolue ja pari muuta.

TIM: Sähän tiedät tosi tosi paljon.

PETTERI: Meillä oli viime viikolla kokeet Suomen politiikasta.

### *Vocabulary*

<b>auttas</b> → <b>autta isi</b>	cd connegative	<b>kristillinen</b>	Christian
		<b>liitto</b>	union, league, alliance
<b>edus kunta</b>	parliament		
<b>ensimmäinen</b>	first	<b>maa seutu</b>	rural area
<b>hallinto</b>	administration	<b>parlamentti=</b> <b>eduskunta</b>	
<b>haluut</b> → <b>haluat</b>			
<b>historiallisesti</b>	historically	<b>puolueQ</b>	(political) party
<b>järjestelmä</b>	system	<b>riippu-</b>	depends, hangs
<b>kansan edustaja</b>	MP (member of parliament)	<b>silloin</b>	then, at that time
<b>kansan puolueQ</b>	National Party	<b>vaali</b>	election
<b>kerrallaan</b>	at a time	<b>vala</b>	oath
<b>keskusta</b>	centre	<b>valla ssa</b>	in power ( <b>valta</b> )
<b>kokeQ</b>	test	<b>vanno-</b>	swears
<b>kokoomus</b> <i>kse</i>	coalition	<b>vasemm isto</b>	the Left
		<b>vihreä</b>	green

### **Language points**

#### *Ordinal numerals and fractions*

‘First’ is **ensimmäinen** (colloquial: **eka**), and ‘second’ is **toinen (toka)**. After that, the formation of ordinal numerals is regular: you add =NTE to every stem in the word.

In the nominative singular, =NTE is read as **s**. Study these forms:



cardinal	<b>kolme</b>	<b>neljä</b>	<b>viisi</b>	<b>kuusi</b>	<b>seitsemä  kahdeksa </b>
l					<b>n n</b>
ordinal	<b>kolma s</b>	<b>neljä s</b>	<b>viide s</b>	<b>kuude s</b>	<b>seitsemä s kahdeksa s</b>
	‘third’	‘fourth’	‘fifth’	‘sixth’	‘seventh’ ‘eighth’
cardinal	<b>yhdeksä </b>	<b>kymmene </b>	<b>yksi toista</b>	<b>kaksi kymmentä</b>	
l	<b>n</b>	<b>n</b>			
ordinal	<b>yhdeksä s</b>	<b>kymmene s</b>	<b>yhdes toist</b>	<b>kahdes kymmene</b>	
	‘ninth’	‘tenth’	<b>a</b>	<b>s</b>	‘eleventh’ ‘twentieth’

[< previous page](#)

page\_187

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_188

[next page >](#)

Page 188

cardinal	<b>kolme kymmentä neljä</b>
ordinal	<b>kolmas kymmenes neljäs</b> ‘thirty-fourth’
cardinal	<b>kuusisataaviisikymmentäkähdeksä n</b>
ordinal	<b>kuudessaasviideskymmeneskahdeksä s</b> ‘558th’

Notice the change **e>a** in **kolma|s** ‘third’, and the fact that the teen-formant **toista** remains unchanged.

In the partitive singular, the **NTE** is read as **t**, so we have **kolma|t|ta**, **kymmene|t|tä**.

The **nte** (compressed: **nne**) of the ordinal suffix is evident in inflected forms such as **kuude|nte|na**, **kolma|nne|ssa**, **kahdeksa| nne|ksi** in:

**Se saapui marraskuum *kuude|nte|na*.**

(S)he arrived *on the sixth* of November.

**Toimistomme on uuden rakennuksen *kolma|nne|ssa kerrokse|ssa*.**

Our office is *on the third floor* of the new building.

**Sen bruttokansantuote on lännen *kahdeksa|nne|ksi suurin*.**

Its gross national product is the *eighth largest* in the west.

Notice, in the last example, the use of the translative to express ranking.

To the left of the generic pluralizer **-i-**, **NTE** is **ns**, as in **kolma|ns|i|a**:

**Niillä on epäluulo kolmansia puolueita kohtaan.**

They have suspicion towards third (political) parties.

In numerals with more than one stem, the ordinal suffix is attached to every stem and inflected equally:

**Me juhlimme mun kuude|t|ta|kymmene|t|tä|kahdeksa|t|ta syntymäpäivä|ä|ni.**

We're celebrating my sixty-eighth birthday.

Notice also how the partitive of ordinals is used in these two kinds of time expression:

**Mä tykkäsin susta eka kerta|a kun mä näin sut.**

I liked you *the first time* I saw you.

[< previous page](#)      [page\\_188](#)      [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#)      [page\\_189](#)      [next page >](#)

Page 189

**Mä asun täällä kolma|t|ta vuot|ta.**

I've been living here for more than two years.

Here is the full paradigm of **kolmas** (stem: kolmante) 'third', placed alongside that of **tuhat** (stem: tuhante) 'thousand' for comparison:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
N	<b>kolmas</b>	<b>kolmanne t</b>	<b>tuhat</b>	<b>tuhanne t</b>
G	<b>kolmanne n</b>	<b>kolmans i en</b>	<b>tuhanne n</b>	<b>tuhans i en</b>
P	<b>kolmat ta</b>	<b>kolmans i a</b>	<b>tuhat ta</b>	<b>tuhans i a</b>
ELA	<b>kolmanne sta</b>	<b>kolmans i sta</b>	<b>tuhanne sta</b>	<b>tuhans i sta</b>
INE	<b>kolmanne ssa</b>	<b>kolmans i ssa</b>	<b>tuhanne ssa</b>	<b>tuhans i ssa</b>
ILL	<b>kolmante en</b>	<b>kolmans i in</b>	<b>tuhante en</b>	<b>tuhans i in</b>
ABL	<b>kolmanne lta</b>	<b>kolmans i lta</b>	<b>tuhanne lta</b>	<b>tuhans i lta</b>
ADE	<b>kolmanne lla</b>	<b>kolmans i lla</b>	<b>tuhanne lla</b>	<b>tuhans i lla</b>
ALL	<b>kolmanne lle</b>	<b>kolmans i lle</b>	<b>tuhanne lle</b>	<b>tuhans i lle</b>
ESS	<b>kolmante na</b>	<b>kolmans i na</b>	<b>tuhante na</b>	<b>tuhans i na</b>
TRA	<b>kolmanne ksi</b>	<b>kolmans i ksi</b>	<b>tuhanne ksi</b>	<b>tuhans i ksi</b>

Notice that the case forms of these two words differ only in the nominative singular: the NTE of ordinals is read as s, but the NTE of 'thousand' is read as t.

*Fractions*

'Half' is **puoli** *e*. The other fractions are made by adding =**KsE** to the stem of the relevant ordinal. In the singular nominative and partitive, this suffix is read as =**s**. So, 'one-third' is **kolmannes** (stem: **kolmannekse-**). Examples:

<b>kolme neljännes</b>  tä	three-quarters
<b>kuusi kahdeksannes</b>  ta	six-eighths
<b>kaksitoista kuudennes</b>  ta  toista	twelve-sixteenths

For fractions whose numerator is one, the use of **osa** 'part' is common, e.g. **kuudes osa** 'one-sixth' (lit. sixth part).

**Exercise 4** Say and write out these fractions in Finnish:

- 1 three-fifths
- 2 four-sixths
- 3 seven-eighths
- 4 two-thirds
- 5 twenty-two sevenths

[< previous page](#)

page\_189

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_190

[next page >](#)

Page 190

## Dialogue 5

### *Senaatintori* Senate Square

(*Turistineuvonnassa, rautatieasemalla*)

VIRKAILIJA: Päivää, voisinko jotenkin auttaa?

MR SMITH: Olen juuri saapunut Helsinkiin, enkä<sup>1</sup> oikein tiedä mistä aloittaa. Mikä on Helsingin vanhin kaupunginosa?

VIRKAILIJA: Senaatintori on vanhan Helsingin keskusta. Tori edustaa neoklassista tyylisuuntaa ja on rakennettu vuosina 1818–1852. Helsingistähän tuli pääkaupunki 1812.

MR SMITH: Onko Senaatintorilla se iso valkoinen kirkko, joka on monissa postikorteissa?

VIRKAILIJA: Tuomiokirkko, kyllä. Senaatintorilla on myös Helsingin vanhin kivitalo, Sederholmin talo, joka on rakennettu rokokootyyliin 1700-luvulla (tuhatseitsemänsataa).

MR SMITH: Miten parhaiten pääsen täältä Senaatintorille?

VIRKAILIJA: Menkää pääovesta ulos, sitten kadun ylitettyänne vasemmalle. Käännytte Keskuskadulle ja seuraatte sitä Aleksanterinkadulle. Sitten taas käännytte vasemmalle ja jatkatte Aleksanterinkatua kunnes tulette Senaatin torille. Tässä kartta avuksi.

MR SMITH: Kiitos.

1 **e|n|kä** ‘and I don’t’ -**KA** is a little clitic which links clauses something like English ‘and’; it is most often added to the negative verb, as here.

### Vocabulary

<b>Aleksanterinkatu</b>	Alexander Street	<b>juuri</b>	just
<b>aloitta-</b>	begin, start	<b>olen juuri</b>	I’ve just
	(something)	<b>saapunut</b>	arrived
<b>avu ksi: apu</b>		<b>Keskuskatu</b>	Centre Street
sTRA			
<b>edusta-</b>	represents	<b>kivi talo</b>	stone house
<b>jatka-</b>	continues	<b>kunnes</b>	until
<b>jotenkin</b>	in some/any way	<b>mon i ssa</b>	pINE <b>moni e</b> ‘many’

[< previous page](#)

page\_190

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_191

[next page >](#)

Page 191

<b>neoklassinen</b>	neoclassical	<b>Senaatti</b>	Senate
<b>neuvonta</b>	advice	<b>suunta</b>	direction, tendency
<b>parhaiten</b>	best (adv.)		
<b>posti kortti</b>	postcard	<b>Tuomiokirkko</b>	cathedral
<b>pää kaupunki</b>	capital	<b>turisti</b>	tourist
<b>pää ovi e</b>	main door	<b>tyyli</b>	style
<b>rakenne ttu</b>	built	<b>valkoinen</b>	white
<b>rautatie asema</b>	railway	<b>vuos i na</b>	pESS of <b>vuosi te</b>
	station		
<b>rokoko</b>	rococo	<b>ylite tty ä nne</b>	after you have crossed
<b>saapu-</b>	arrives		
<b>Senaatintori</b>	Senate Square		

### Language points

*‘All’, ‘every’, ‘many’, ‘few’, ‘some’*

‘All’ is **koko** only if ‘the whole (thing)’ is meant; a more general word is **kaikki** e, which is equivalent not only to ‘whole’ but also to ‘each’, ‘every’, and ‘all’. **Koko** is invariable, so any case suffix can go only onto the word that it modifies. Compare **koko aja|n= kaike|n aika|a** ‘the whole time, all the time’. In the plural nominative and accusative, **kaikki** is unchanged, e.g. **Isä söi kaikki kakut** ‘Father ate all the cakes.’ Plural forms built with **-i-** are usually equivalent to English expressions with ‘every(one)’. Here are some more examples:

**Isä söi koko kaku|n.**

Father ate *the whole cake*.

**Koko matka|n aikana ei vaihdettu sanaakaan.**

*During the whole journey* we didn’t exchange a word.

**Kaike|n muu|n paitsi lompakon hän laittoi salkkuun.**

(S)he put *everything else* but the wallet into the bag.

**Uutinen tuli kaik|i|lle yllätyksenä.**

The news came as a surprise *to everyone*.

Notice also the common adjective **kaiken|lainen**:

**Me nähtiin kaikenlaisia eläimiä.**

We saw *all kinds* of (=many various) animals.

‘Every’ in the sense of ‘each’ is usually the invariable **joka**:

[< previous page](#)                      page\_191                      [next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)                      page\_192                      [next page >](#)

Page 192

**Joka tapauksessa sä soitat mulle, eikö?**

You’ll ring me *in any case*, right?

**Se tulee käymään joka toinen päivä.**

(S)he comes to visit *every other day*.

‘Few’ is often expressed with **harva** (which also means ‘rare’ and ‘sparse’); ‘many (a)’ is **moni** *e*. Both are frequent in the singular, e.g.

**Mä oon mone/ssa asia/ssa samaa mieltä sun kanssasi.**

I agree (lit. ‘am of the same mind’) with you *on many matters*.

**Harva muusikko soittaa konsertissaan niin mon/ta soitin/ta.**

*Few musicians* (lit. ‘rare musician’) play so *many instruments* (lit. ‘so many an instrument’) in their concert.

but **monet**, the plural nominative of **moni**, is also common as subject:

**Monet haluavat sämpylät ja kahvileivät ennen seitsemää.**

Many (people) want (their) rolls and coffee and a little something before seven.

Large and small amounts are expressed as **paljo|n** and **vähä|n**:

**Mulla on (vähän/paljon) viiniä.** I have (a little/lots of) wine.

‘Anyone’ in the sense ‘no matter who’ is **ku|ka tahansa** or **kuka vaan**, and similarly ‘anywhere’ in the sense ‘no matter where’ is **missä tahansa** or **missä vaan**. Be careful to distinguish such ‘any’-words with the words like ‘anyone’, ‘anywhere’ which English uses in negative and interrogative contexts such as ‘There isn’t anyone there’, which in Finnish is **Ei siellä ole ketään**.

To refer to a definite but unspecified ‘some(thing)’ you use **jo|kin**; because of its inherent vagueness, this word is more common in the partitive, **jo|ta|kin**. In colloquial contexts, the **k** of this word is left out to the right of a, so we have **jo|ta|in** as in:

**Haluaisitko jo|ta|in muu|ta?** Would you like something else?

Further examples:

Ne antoi sen **jo|lle|kin** toise|lle perhee|lle.

They gave it *to some* other family.

Se tapahtui **jo|i|takin** vuosia sitten.

It happened *some* years ago.

[< previous page](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_192

page\_193

[next page >](#)

[next page >](#)

**Totuus on kai *jo/ssa/in* sillä välillä.**

The truth is perhaps *somewhere* in between.

**Jos mä oon *jo/hon/kin* tyytyväinen, mä en muuta sitä.**

If I'm satisfied with something (lit. 'into something'), I don't change it.

Notice these common expressions: **jo|sta|in syy|stä** 'for some reason', **jo|lla|in tava|lla** 'in some way', **jo|ssa|in muodo|ssa** 'in some form (or other)', **jo|i|den|kin miele|stä** 'in some people's opinion', **jo|ksi|kin aika|a** 'for a time'.

To refer to a definite but unspecified 'some(one)', you use **jo||ku**. Both parts of this word decline, so the genitive singular is **jo|n||ku|n**, as in **jonkun salkku** 'someone's bag', and the nominative plural is **jo|t||ku|t**, as in **Jotkut ei tykkää teestä** 'Some people don't like tea.'

Here are the full paradigms of **jo|kin** 'something' and **jo||ku** 'someone':

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
N	<b>jo kin</b>	<b>jo t kin</b>	<b>jo  ku</b>	<b>(jo t (ku)t)</b>
G	<b>jo n kin</b>	<b>jo i den kin</b>	<b>(jo n ku n)</b>	<b>(jo i den  ku i den)</b>
P	<b>jo ta (k)in</b>	<b>jo i ta (k)in</b>	<b>(jo ta  ku ta)</b>	<b>(jo i ta  ku i ta)</b>
ELA	<b>jo sta (k)in</b>	<b>jo i sta (k)in</b>	<b>(jo sta  ku sta)</b>	<b>(jo i sta  ku i sta)</b>
INE	<b>jo ssa (k)in</b>	<b>jo ssa (k)in</b>	<b>(jo ssa  kus ssa)</b>	<b>(jo i ssa  ku i ssa)</b>
ILL	<b>jo hon kin</b>	<b>jo i hin kin</b>	<b>(jo hon  ku hun)</b>	<b>(jo i hin  ku i hin)</b>
ABL	<b>jo lta (k)in</b>	<b>jo i lta (k)in</b>	<b>(jo lta (ku lta)</b>	<b>(jo i lta  ku i lta)</b>
ADE	<b>jo lla (k)in</b>	<b>jo i lla (k)in</b>	<b>(jo lla  ku lla)</b>	<b>(jo i lla  ku i lla)</b>
ALL	<b>jo lle kin</b>	<b>jo i lle kin</b>	<b>(jo lle ku lle)</b>	<b>(jo i lle  ku i lle)</b>
ESS	<b>jo na (k)in</b>	<b>jo i na (k)in</b>	<b>jo na  ku na)</b>	<b>(jo i na  ku i na)</b>
TRA	<b>jo ksi kin</b>	<b>jo i ksi kin</b>	<b>(jo ksi  ku ksi)</b>	<b>(jo i ksi  ku i ksi)</b>

In spoken Finnish, the forms given here in brackets are becoming increasingly rare; instead, people use the corresponding forms on the left.

**Exercise 5** Give English equivalents.

- 1 joku muu
- 2 jotain muuta
- 3 jotkut
- 4 kaikenlaista
- 5 monet luulee

## 12

### Maton alla tuntuu olevan jotain

### There seems to be something under the carpet

#### In this unit you will learn:

- new ways to join up clauses and link verbs
- about two warmer-weather Finnish holidays, **vappu** and **juhannus**
- about restaurants and Finnish culinary specialities

#### Dialogue 1

##### *Ruokakaupassa*

##### Food shopping

*In a food shop, John learns about various Finnish culinary specialities by talking with a very patient salesperson (myyjä)*

JOHN: Anteeksi, voisitteko auttaa. Haluaisin ostaa erilaisia suomalaisia ruokia.

MYYJÄ: Tottakai. Minkälaista ruokaa haluaisitte?

JOHN: Vähän kaikenlaista. Sellaista, mitä suomalaiset itse<sup>1</sup> syövät ja erityisesti sellaista, mitä ei syödä muualla maailmassa.

MYYJÄ: No ruisleipä on ehdottomasti suomalaista. Niitä löytyy täältä leipähyllystä. Samalla voitte ostaa karjalanpiirakoita, ne ovat todella herkullisia.

JOHN: Mistä ne on tehty?

MYYJÄ: Piirakoiden kuori on tehty ruis- ja muista jauhoista ja täytteenä on riisiä, perunaa tai ohraa.

[< previous page](#)

page\_194

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_195

[next page >](#)

JOHN: Hyvä, otan pussin sekä peruna- että riisipiirakoita.<sup>2</sup>

MYYJÄ: Kala-altaasta löydätte lohta. Se on suomalainen ruoka, samoin kuin lihapullat. Niitä voi ostaa valmiina kylmäaltaasta, vaikka yleensä niitä tehdäänkin itse jauhelihasta.



JOHN: Onko teillä lakkoja? Olen kuullut, että lakkaa pidetään marjojen kuninkaana.

MYYYJÄ: Ainakin valmiina hillona sitä on. Voimme vielä tarkistaa onko niitä pakastettuna. Suomalaiset syövät paljon marjoja. Mustikoita, mansikoita ja vadelmia meillä on aina pakastettuina täällä kaupassa.

JOHN: Entäs jotain makeaa? Mitä suomalaiset syövät kahvin kanssa?

MYYYJÄ: No pullat nyt ainakin kuuluvat kahvipöytään, erityisesti korvapuustit.

JOHN: Kiitoksia paljon avustanne.

MYYYJÄ: Eipä kestä. Hyvä, että osasin auttaa. Toivottavasti valintanne olivat onnistuneita.

1 **suomalaiset itse** ‘the Finns themselves’.

2 **sekä peruna- että riisipiirakoita**: to say ‘both X and Y’, use **sekä X että Y**.

### *Vocabulary*

<b>ainakin</b>	at least, anyway	<b>liha pulla</b>	meatball
<b>altaX</b>	basin, pool, tank	<b>loh ta</b>	sP <b>lohi</b> e salmon
<b>avu sta nne</b>	for your help ( <b>apu</b> )	<b>löyty-</b>	is found
<b>ehdo ttoma sti</b>	absolutely, unconditionally	<b>löytä-</b>	finds
<b>erityise sti</b>	particularly	<b>maailma</b>	world
<b>herkullinen</b>	gourmet-style	<b>makea</b>	sweet
<b>hillo</b>	jam	<b>mansikka</b>	strawberry
<b>jauheQ liha</b>	mince	<b>marja</b>	berry
<b>jauho t</b>	flour	<b>minkä lainen</b>	what kind?
<b>jotain</b>	something	<b>mustikka</b>	bilberry
<b>korva puusti</b>	‘box on the ear’, a kind of pastry	<b>muu alla</b>	elsewhere
<b>kuninkaX</b>	king	<b>ohra</b>	barley
<b>kuori e</b>	peel, skin, crust, bark	<b>onnistu-</b>	succeeds
<b>kuulu-</b>	belongs	<b>onnistunut</b>	successful
		<b>pakasta-</b>	freezes
		<b>pakaste ttu</b>	frozen
		<b>piirakka</b>	a kind of pie
		<b>pussi</b>	bag

[< previous page](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_195](#)

[page\\_196](#)

[next page >](#)

[next page >](#)

<b>riisi</b>	rice	<b>tarkista-</b>	checks
<b>rukiX</b>	rye	<b>toivo ttava sti</b>	hopefully
<b>samalla</b>	at the same time	<b>täytteQ</b>	filling
<b>samoin</b>	the same as; likewise	<b>vadelma</b>	raspberry
		<b>valinta</b>	choice
<b>sellainen</b>	a sort of		

**Exercise 1** Make up your own short dialogues, in which you ask about things for sale in various shops. Ask what things are made of, whether the shop has larger or smaller (and cheaper and dearer) ones, how much things cost, and whether or not things are especially Finnish.

## Dialogue 2

### Vappu May Day

Learn about **vappu**, a holiday which Pia, a university student, thinks is the most fun of the year

RUTH: Mikä susta on vuoden paras juhla?

PIA: Parhaasta en tiedä, mutta hauskin on kyllä vappu.

RUTH: Ai miks niin?

PIA: Ku mä olin pieni siman juominen, tippaleivät, serpentiinit ja ilmapallot, oli parasta mitä tiesin.

RUTH: Ja nykyään?

PIA: No nykyään vappu opiskelijoiden juhlena merkitsee paljon. Kello kuus vapun aattona lakitetaan Espalla Manta.<sup>1</sup> Tunnelma on kyllä silloin huipussa.

RUTH: Kai vappuna muutakin tapahtuu?

PIA: No se on kyllä melkein ku karnevaalit. Helsingissä hulinoidaan silloin ihan kunnolla, vähän liiankin kunnolla.

RUTH: Entäs vapunpäivänä?

PIA: Vapunpäivä on vähän rauhallisempi. Silloin perheet menee vapputorille, vappukonserttiin ja jotkut jopa vappumarssille. Opiskelijat kerääntyvät Ullanlinnanmäelle piknikille.

**1 Havis Amandan patsas Helsingin Esplanadilla.**

Page 197

*Vocabulary*

<b>aatto</b>	eve	<b>laki tta-</b>	puts cap ( <b>lakki</b> ) on X
<b>Espalla→</b>		<b>liian</b>	too much, excessively
<b>Esplanadilla</b>			
<b>Esplanadi</b>	a main street in Helsinki	<b>marssi</b>	march
<b>huippu</b>	peak, summit	<b>merkiTSE-</b>	means
<b>hulinoi-</b>	acts in hooliganish manner	<b>patsaX</b>	statue
<b>ihan</b>	quite, very	<b>piknikki</b>	picnic
<b>ilma pallo</b>	balloon	<b>rauha llinen</b>	peaceful
<b>jopa</b>	even, as much as	<b>serpentiini t</b>	streamers
<b>juhla</b>	celebration, festival	<b>sima</b>	mead
<b>karnevaali</b>	carnival	<b>tapahtu-</b>	happens
<b>keräänty-</b>	assembles, gathers	<b>tippa leivä t</b>	crullers (a kind of deep-fried doughnut-like pastry)
<b>kunno lla</b>	really ( <b>kunto</b> 'good shape')		
		<b>vappu</b>	May Day

**Language points***Linking clauses, 1: Partisiippirakenne (PR)*

In earlier units you have seen how to link verbs together to form complex constructions such as *Haluaisin ostaa uuden sanakirjan* 'I would like to buy a new dictionary' (Unit 3) and *Mun pitää ostaa uusi sanakirja* 'I have to buy a new dictionary' (Unit 10). In this section you will learn how to join a clause like **mä näin** 'I saw' with a clause like *se lähti* '(s)he left' to produce the complex construction **Mä näin sen lähtevän** 'I heard her/him leave.'

Constructions of this type are called participial constructions (**partisiippirakente|lta** or PRs). In all PRs, the first clause contains a verb of perceiving, feeling, knowing, thinking, wanting, or speaking. Common examples are **näke-** 'sees', **katso-** 'watches, views', **kuule-** 'hears', **tunte-** 'senses, feels', **huomaX-** 'notices', **kuvittele-** 'imagines, pictures', **toivo-** 'hopes', **pelkäX-** 'fears', **ihmettele-** 'marvels', **ajattele-** 'thinks', **arvele-** 'thinks, assumes', **sano-** 'says', **kerto-** 'tells', **kieltä-** 'denies'.

To link the second clause, you put its subject into the genitive and add the suffix =vAn to the stem of the verb. So in the example above we have:

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_197	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_198	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 198

**se lähti**                      **se|n lähte|vän**

Instead of =vAn, you add =neen if the time of the second verb is earlier than that of the first:

**Minä huomasin hänen lähteneen.**

I noticed that (s)he had left.

(Note: This =neen is a form of the past active participle you learned in Unit 6, so its first n assimilates and causes sound changes accordingly: **pääs|seen, huomaa|neen**. In colloquial Finnish such constructions are rare; people use two clauses instead, e.g. **Mä huomasin et se oli lähtenyt.**)

Here are some more examples:

**Mä kuulin joint|ku|n huuta|van pihalla.**

I heard someone shouting in the yard.

**Myyjä arvelee minu|n halua|van jutella.**

The salesperson thinks I want to chat.

**Mikä se kertoi isänsä ol|leen?**

What did (s)he say her/his father had been?

**Luuletteko minu|n hake|van teekuppia?**

Do you think it's a teacup I'm after?

**Pelkäsin tämä|n väsyttä|vän häntä.**

I was afraid this was tiring him/her.

If the subject of both clauses is the same, the appropriate possessive suffix is added to the form built with =vAn or =neen, and the pronouns (**minin, sinun, hänen,**

etc.) are used or omitted as usual, for example:

**Minä tunsin ole|va|ni varma sen saamisesta.**

I felt sure of getting it.

Contrast

**Mitä Pasi tekee tänä iltana?**

What's Pasi doing tonight?

**Se soitti vähän ennen kun sä tulit ja sanoi tule|va|nsa käymään.**

He rang a little before you came and said that he (Pasi) was coming to visit.

with

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_198</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_199</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 199

**Mitä Pekka tekee tänä iltana?**

What's Pekka doing tonight?

**Pasi soitti vähän ennen kun sä tulit ja sanoi *hänen* tule|va|nsa käymään.**

Pasi rang a little before you came and said that *he* (*Pekka*) was coming to visit.

There are just two hiccups. The first is this: the less the subject is in control, the less likely it is to be put into the genitive. It is more likely to remain in the nominative (or partitive) if it refers to someone or something that is not dynamic, for example something which merely exists. Example: **poik|i|a** 'some boys' in **Siellä on poik|i|a** 'There are some boys there' remains in the partitive in:

**Mies sanoi siellä ole|van poikia.**

The man said that there were boys there.

Furthermore, the subject is not put into the genitive in PRs built with a clause containing an indefinite verb form. Consider the partitive subject **sukunim|i|ä** 'surnames' in:

**Sukunim|i|ä katsotaan *esiinty/neen* Italiassa ja Ranskassa 700-luvulta.**

In Italy and France, surnames are viewed as *having arisen* in the eighth century.

The second hiccup concerns intransitive verbs like **tuntu-** and **näyttä-** ‘seems’, and **kuulu-** ‘is said to be’, which are also commonly used in this way. In PRs made with these verbs, the subject is the same in both clauses but no possessive suffix is used. Examples:

**Aurinko tuntui paista|van vielä kuumemmin.**

The sun seemed to be shining even more hotly.

**Täti kuuluu ole|van sairaana.**

Auntie is said to be ill.

*Exercise 2* Translate into Finnish, using PRs:

- 1 I heard them leave.
- 2 He saw the train arrive.
- 3 She said she would come back tomorrow.
- 4 I hope I will meet him again.
- 5 He seemed to know who they were.

[< previous page](#)

page\_199

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_200

[next page >](#)

Page 200

*Exercise 3* You will encounter PRs most often in more formal, especially written, varieties of Finnish. Being able to decode them is more important than being able to form them yourself, so practise by seeing whether you can understand these PRs (if you're stuck, translations are at the back of this book, as usual).

- 1 Mä näin sen vaihtavan väriä.
- 2 Maton alla tuntui olevan jotain.
- 3 Minä kiellän tietäväni mitään.
- 4 Haluan teidän pyytävän anteeksi.
- 5 Hän arveli ruoan olevan valmiina.

### Dialogue 3

#### *Juhannus*

#### Midsummer Day

*Eeva and Kaarina discuss their plans for spending Midsummer Day*

EEVA: Mitä sä meinaat tehdä juhannuksena?

KAARINA: Mä meen mökille niin ku aina.

EEVA: Missä teidän mökki on?

KAARINA: Sipoon saaristossa. Mitäs sä meinaat tehdä?

EEVA: Mä en oo ihan varma. Me ollaan yleensä Mikon kanssa menty Seurasaareen kattoo sitä perinteistä juhannuskokkoa, mut tänä vuonna ajateltiin tehdä jotain muuta!

KAARINA: No kerro mitä.

EEVA: Kun on kerran juhannus<sup>1</sup> niin ajateltiin, että kerran on koettava<sup>2</sup> juhannuksena lavatanssit.

KAARINA: Ai niinku vanhoissa Suomifilmeissä.

EEVA: Just niin, ja sit me ajateltiin yöpyä teltassa jollain leirintäalueella.<sup>3</sup>

KAARINA: Kuulostaa tosi kivalta!

1 **Kun on kerran juhannus** ‘seeing that it’s Midsummer Day’

2 **koettava** ‘has to be experienced’. More on this form in Unit 13.

3 **jollain leirintäalueella** ‘at some campground’

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_200	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_201	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 201

### Vocabulary

<b>alue</b>	area, zone	<b>kokko</b>	bonfire
<b>juhannus</b> <i>kse</i>	Midsummer Day	<b>kuulosta-</b>	sounds
<b>just</b> → <b>juuri</b>	just, precisely	<b>lavatanssi</b>	platform dancing
<b>kattoo</b> → <b>kattoon</b>		<b>leirintä</b>	camping
→ <b>katsomaan</b>		<b>meinaX-</b>	intends, means
<b>kerran</b>	(for) once	<b>Suomifilmi</b>	Finn Films
<b>kerro</b>	imperative of <b>kerto-</b> ‘tells’	<b>teltta</b>	tent
		<b>yöpy-</b>	spends night

### Language points

## *Linking clauses, 2: 'After having X'd' and 'in order to X'*

In colloquial Finnish, the usual way to link such clauses is with conjunctions. For example, you say 'after' with simple **kun** 'when' or the more explicit **sen jälkeen kun**:

**(Sen jälkeen) kun mä pääsin työstä mä menin kotiin.**

After I got out of work, I went home.

and you say 'in order to' with **jotta**, often with the conditional, as in:

**Lapsen pitäisi käydä ruotsinkielistä koulua, jotta saisi hyvän ruotsin taidon.**

The child should attend Swedish-language school, *so that it might acquire* a good knowledge of Swedish.

In more formal Finnish there are verbal constructions which allow both verbs to be squeezed into the same clause. For 'after', you put the verb into the partitive of its past passive participle (Unit 7); if the subject is a noun, it goes into the genitive:

**Peka|n lähde|tty|ä tö|ihin minä soitin Irma|lle.**

After Pekka left for work, I rang Irma.

If the subject is a pronoun, it is added as a possessive suffix to the end of the past passive participle form:

**Pääs|ty|ä|ni töistä mä menin kotiin.**

After I got out of work, I went home.

[< previous page](#)

page\_201

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_202

[next page >](#)

Page 202

**Pääs|ty|ä|än töistä Pekka meni kotiin.**

After he (=Pekka) got out of work, Pekka went home.

As always, **häne|n** or **se|n** is used if the subjects refer to different actors:

**Hänen pääs|ty|ä|än töistä hän meni kotiin.**



After he (e.g. Pekka) got out of work, he (=someone other than Pekka, e.g. Juuso) went home.

For '(in order) to', a special form of the first infinitive is used; this form resembles the first infinitive in every way except that it ends not in **Q**, but in **KSE** plus the appropriate possessive suffix. This construction is used only if both verbs have the same subject. Examples:

**Hän katsoi ikkunasta näh|däkse|en satoiko.**

(S)he looked out the window (in order) to see whether it was raining.

**Hän meni naimisiin saa|dakse|en rahaa.**

(S)he got married in order to acquire money.

**Poika on liian nuori men|näkse|en naimisiin.**

The boy is too young to get married.

**Hän avasi suunsa osoitta|akse|en haluavansa sanoa jotain.**

He opened his mouth to show that he wanted to say something.

Notice that the last example includes an example of a PR, as well (**osoittaa haluavansa**).

**Exercise 4** Have a look at these rather formal Finnish sentences, making sure you can recognize and decode the verbal constructions. English equivalents are given at the end of this book.

- 1 Levättyään hetken hän nousi istumaan.
- 2 Heti hänen sanottuaan sen minä ymmärsin.
- 3 Mä tein sen jotain tehdäkseni.
- 4 Minun täytyy lähteä kaupunkiin saadakseni asian toimeen.
- 5 Me emme ole täällä tutustuaksemme ihmisiin.

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_202](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_203](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 203

Dialogue 4 

*Ravintola*

Going to restaurants

*This dialogue is in two parts. In the first part, Tomi wants to go with Sari to a restaurant, so he discusses options with his friend Pasi. In the second part we hear Tomi and Sari ordering their dishes at the restaurant*

### *Ravintolaan*

TOMI: Mä oon menossa Sarin kanssa tänään ulos. Mä tarttis vähän ideoita mihin me voitais mennä.

PASI: Ai, sä oot nyt viimeinkin pyytäny Sarin ulos. Tehän voisitte mennä siihen uuteen Cafe Barockiin Fredalle (Fredrikinkadulle), mä oon kuullu et sen pitäis olla OK paikka.

TOMI: Ootsä käyny Planet Hollywoodissa, siinä Renny Harlinin paikassa?

PASI: Joo mut se on enemmän hampurilaispaikka ja disko. Sinne voitte mennä ku ootte syöny. Torni on kans uusittu, jos haluutte kolkytluvun nostalgiaa.

TOMI: Mä olin kyllä ajatellu vähän jotain rauhallista paikkaa. Kruunuhaassa pitäis olla kans hyvä paikka.

PASI: Sitte voitte tulla Häppäriin sen jälkeen. Mä, Kati ja Iira ollaan menossa sinne.

TOMI: No katotaan. Se riippuu vähän Sarista.

### *Ravintolassa*

TARJOILIJA: Oletteko valmiit tilaamaan?

TOMI: Joo. Mä ottasin alkupaloiksi ton katkarapukoktailin ja sit lammasta mökkakastikkeessa.

SARI: Mulle ensiks mätiä, paahtoleipää ja basilikakastiketta ja sitte tota ankkaa mandariinikastikkeessa.

TARJOILIJA: Kiitos. Ja mitä saisi olla juotavaksi?<sup>1</sup>

TOMI: Pullo mineraalivettä ja sitten talon punaviiniä karahvissa.

TARJOILIJA: Puolikas vai kokonainen?

TOMI: Kokonainen.

1 **juo|tava|ksi** 'for drinking, to be drunk'.

Page 204

*Vocabulary*

<b>ajatellu</b> → <b>ajatellut</b>		<b>lampaX</b>	lamb
		<b>mandariini</b>	mandarin orange, tangerine
<b>alku pala</b>	starter	<b>mäti</b>	fish roe
<b>ankka</b>	(domesticated) duck	<b>mineraali vesi</b>	mineral water
<b>basilika</b>	basil	<b>mokka</b>	mocha (coffee) flavour
<b>disko</b>	disco	<b>nostalgia</b>	nostalgia
<b>ensi ks</b>	for starters, first of all	<b>ottasin</b> → <b>otta isi n</b> <b>otta isi n</b>	
<b>haluu tte</b> → <b>halua tte</b>		<b>paahto leipä</b>	toast
<b>hampurilainen</b>	hamburger	<b>puolikkaX</b>	half-sized
<b>karahvi</b>	carafe	<b>rauhallinen</b>	peaceful
<b>kastikkeQ</b>	sauce	<b>ravintola</b>	restaurant
<b>katka rapu</b>	prawn	<b>riippu-</b>	depends
<b>katotaan</b> → <b>katso taan</b>	let's see	<b>tarjoilija</b>	waiter/waitress
		<b>tarttisin</b> → <b>tarvits isi n</b>	
<b>kokonainen</b>	entire	<b>tilaX-</b>	orders
<b>koktail</b>	cocktail	<b>ton</b> → <b>tuo n</b>	
<b>kolkyt luku</b>	the Thirties	<b>tota</b> → <b>tuo ta</b>	
<b>Kruunuhaka</b>	section of Helsinki east of the station and north of Esplanadi	<b>uusi ttu</b>	renovated
		<b>viimeinkin</b>	at (long) last
<b>kuullu</b> → <b>kuul lut</b>			

*Exercise 5* Make up your own short dialogue, in which people ask about dishes on a restaurant menu, then make up their minds and order.

**Extra reading 1**

## A cafeteria menu

Try working out all the dishes on offer at this college cafeteria this week. Do you remember the names of the weekdays?

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_204	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_205	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 205

Ma	To
Chili tacot	Kreikkalainen salaatti
Kanarisotto	Aura-ananaslenkki
Kalaleike	Unkarilainen uunikala
Kasvispihvit	Kalakeitto
Ti	Punajuuri-perunavuoka
	Pe
Uunipaisti	
Hernekeitto, laskiaispulla	Nasi goreng
Jauhelihapihvi	Lihamureke
Kasvishernekeitto	Kuorrutettua kesäkurpitsaa ja tomaattia
Ke	Kaikenlaiset muutokset ovat mahdollisia.
Jauhelihapizza	
Maksalaatikko	
Herkkusieni-smetanakastike	

### Vocabulary

<b>ananas</b> <i>kse</i>	pineapple	<b>mahdollinen</b>	possible
<b>Aura</b>	a kind of blue cheese	<b>maksa laatikko</b>	liver casserole
<b>herkku+</b>	gourmet+	<b>murekkeQ</b>	stuffing
<b>jauheQ liha</b>	mince	<b>muutos</b> <i>kse</i>	change, alteration
<b>kana</b>	chicken	<b>pihvi</b>	steak
<b>kastikkeQ</b>	sauce	<b>puna juuri e</b>	beet(root)
<b>kasvis+</b>	vegetarian	<b>salaatti</b>	lettuce
<b>kesä kurpitsa</b>	summer squash	<b>tomaatti</b>	tomato
<b>kreikkalainen</b>	Greek	<b>uuni kala</b>	baked fish
<b>kuorrutettu</b>	glazed	<b>uuni paisti</b>	roast
<b>leikkeQ</b>	slice	<b>vuoka</b>	oven dish
<b>lenkki</b>	link (sausage)		

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_205	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_206	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 206

## Extra reading 2

### *Tilaa suurelle perheelle tai edustuskäyttöön*

#### An advertisement for a share in a house

Maaseudulla 25 km Porvoosta meren läheisyydessä kolmen perheen talossa osake. Suuri olohuone yli 60 m<sup>2</sup>. Tontti 1.56 ha. Rakennusvuosi 1968. Tontilla ollut ennen kylän koulu, siksi kaunis puutarha ja tilava vanha, suht. hyväkuntoinen ulkorakennus: talli- ja verstaatilaa. Rantaan vajaa puolitoista kilometriä. Venepaikkamahdollisuus tienhoitomaksua vastaan (n. 70 mk per vuosi). Öljykeskuslämmitys. Parkettilattia olohuoneessa. Avotakka. Sauna alakerrassa. Iso pihakenttä. Kestopäällystetie melkein perille. Nopea yhteys Helsingin moottoritiele. Hinta vielä toistaiseksi: 550000:- Lisätietoja sähköpostitse allekirjoittaneelta.

### Vocabulary

<b>ala kerta</b>	lower floor	<b>olo huoneQ</b>	living room
<b>allekirjoitta nu</b>	the undersigned	<b>osakkeQ</b>	share
<b>avo takka</b>	open hearth	<b>öljy</b>	oil
<b>edustus</b> <i>kse</i>	agency	<b>parketti lattia</b>	parquet floor
<b>hyvä kunto inen</b>	in good shape	<b>per</b>	per
<b>käyttö</b>	use ( <b>käyttö</b> 'uses')	<b>per i lle</b>	as far as (one's) destination (here: all the way to the house)
<b>keskus lämmitys</b> <i>kse</i>	central heating	<b>piha kenttä</b>	field, yard
<b>kesto</b>	duration ( <b>kestä-</b> 'lasts')	<b>Porvoo</b>	second-oldest town in Finland
<b>lisä tieto ja</b>	additional information	(after Turku), about 30 miles	
<b>läheisyys</b> <i>te</i>	proximity, neighbourhood		
<b>maa seutu</b>	rural area		northeast of Helsinki
<b>mahdollisuus</b> <i>te</i>	possibility	<b>puolitoista</b>	one and a half
<b>maksu</b>	fee, amount paid ( <b>maksa-</b> )	<b>puu tarha</b>	garden
<b>moottori tie</b>	motorway	<b>päällysteQ</b>	paving, surfacing

[< previous page](#)

page\_206

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_207

[next page >](#)

<b>siksi</b>	therefore	<b>tontti</b>	lot, plot of land
<b>suht:</b>	relatively	<b>ulko rakennus</b>	outbuilding
<b>suhteellisen</b>		<i>kse</i>	
<b>sähkö posti tse</b>	via e-mail	<b>vajaa</b>	scant
<b>talli</b>	stable	<b>X TA vasta an</b>	in return for X
<b>tien hoito</b>	road maintenance	<b>vene paikka</b>	place for a boat
<b>tila a</b>	space, room	<b>verstaX</b>	workshop
<b>tila va</b>	roomy, spacious	<b>yhteys</b>	connection
<b>toistaise ksi</b>	for now, temporarily	<i>te</i>	

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_207](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_208](#)

[next page >](#)

## 13

### Mikä laulaen tulee...

#### Easy come...

##### In this unit you will learn:

- how to talk about sightseeing, places to live, and music
- about expressing necessity
- more about linking verbs
- about the eight points of the compass
- some Finnish proverbs

#### Dialogue 1

##### *Ooppera*

##### Opera

RITVA: Oletsa käyny jo Helsingin uudessa oopperatalossa?

LEEA: Joo. Me käytiin Olavin kanssa kuuntelemassa Verdin *Don Carlos* ku Matti Salminen oli laulamassa.

RITVA: Me ollaan nyt vasta menossa ensimmäistä kertaa Simon kanssa. Ajateltiin mennä kuuntelemaan Aulis Sallisen *Viimeisiä kiusauksia*.

LEEA: Se on kuulemma tosi suosittu. Me taas ollaan vähän ajateltu ostaa liput ensi

kesän Savonlinnan oopperajuhlille. Mitäs jos mentäs yhdessä?

RITVA: Mitä niillä on ohjelmistossa?

LEEA: Sallisen *Palatsi*, Wagnerin *Lentävä hollantilainen* ja *Tannhäuser*, Verdin *Macbeth* ja Marinski-teatterin esittämänä Tshaikovskin *Mazeppa*.

RITVA: *Palatsi* ja *Mazeppa* vois olla kiinnostavia. Mun täytyy puhua Simon kanssa. Mitä liput maksaa?

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_208	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_209	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 209

LEEA: Noin 200–500 (kakssataa viissataa) markkas paikoista riippuen.

### *Vocabulary*

<b>esittä mä nä</b>	as presented by	<b>ohjelmisto</b> programme
<b>hollantilainen</b>	Dutch(man)	<b>ooppera</b> opera
<b>kiinnosta va</b>	interesting	<b>palatsi</b> palace
<b>kiusaus</b> <i>kse</i>	temptation	<b>riippu en</b> depending
<b>kuulemma</b>	they say; I hear; allegedly	<b>suosi ttu</b> favoured
<b>laula-</b>	sings	<b>teatteri</b> theatre
<b>lentä vä</b>	flying	<b>vasta</b> not before; only (now)
<b>mentäs</b> → <b>men täisiin</b>		<b>viimeinen</b> last

*Exercise 1* Write your own dialogue about your own and others' interest in music. You'll find the following vocabulary useful:

<b>musiikki</b>	music	<b>ohjelma</b>	programme
<b>muusikko</b>	musician	<b>romppu</b>	CD-ROM
<b>konsertti</b>	concert	<b>kasetti</b>	cassette
<b>bändi</b>	(rock) band	<b>ääni levy</b>	record
<b>orkesteri</b>	orchestra	<b>sopraano</b>	soprano
<b>laulaja</b>	singer	<b>alto</b>	alto
<b>säveltä jä</b>	composer	<b>tenori</b>	tenor
<b>sävellys</b> <i>kse</i>	composition	<b>baritoni</b>	baritone
<b>sävel</b>	melody ( <b>sävele-</b> )	<b>basso</b>	bass
<b>kriitikko</b>	critic		

<b>soitin</b>	instrument ( <b>soittime-</b> )	<b>näyttele-</b>	acts (on stage)
<b>kuoro</b>	choir	<b>molli</b>	minor
<b>laulu</b>	song	<b>duuri</b>	major
<b>laula-</b>	sings	<b>asteikko</b>	scale
<b>suosittu</b>	popular	<b>melu</b>	noise
<b>klassillinen</b>	classical		
<b>barokki</b>	baroque	<b>jatsi</b>	jazz
<b>moderni</b>	modern	<b>viulu</b>	violin
<b>alkusoitto</b>	overture	<b>urut</b>	organ ( <b>urku-</b> )

[< previous page](#)

page\_209

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_210

[next page >](#)

Page 210

## Dialogue 2

### *Nähtävyydet*

### *Seeing the sights*

*In their hotel room, Liz and Nick pore over the tourist brochure and try to decide what to see next in Helsinki*

NICK: Mitä museoita siinä esitteessä suositellaan?

LIZ: Kansallismuseo Mannerheimintielle antaa hyvän yleiskuvan Suomen historiasta, kansasta ja kulttuurista. Ateneumissa on monta eri näyttelyä. Siellä on taidetta 1700-luvulta aina nykyaikaiseen asti.<sup>1</sup>

NICK: Entäs kotimuseoita?

LIZ: Täällä näyttää olevan Marsalkka Mannerheimin kotimuseo, presidentti Urho Kekkonen museo Tamminiemessä ja Suomen kansallistaiteilijan Akseli Gallen-Kallelan Museo Tarvaspäässä Espoossa.

NICK: Mennään huomenna sinne Tarvaspäähän. Tänään voitais mennä sinne Kansallismuseoon. Eikö Eduskuntatalo ja Finlandiatalo oo kansallismuseoita?

LIZ: Joo. Hyvä idea. Eduskuntatalossa onkin opastettuja kierroksia just lauantaisin ja sunnuntaisin.

NICK: Entä se kalliolla rakennettu kirkko.<sup>2</sup>

LIZ: Temppeliaukion kirkko.





- 2 Which museums aren't open on Saturdays?
- 3 Are there any guided tours of art museums on Sundays?
- 4 Can you visit the Handcrafts Museum at weekends? When?

**Exercise 3** Translate into Finnish:

- 1 Let's go to Finlandia Hall tomorrow.
- 2 Is it open Tuesdays?
- 3 That's a must-see (nähtävä), I suppose.
- 4 What museum do you (polite) recommend?
- 5 I don't know whether I'll have time to see that as well.

### Language points

#### More on linking verbs: expressing simultaneity and manner

##### Expressing simultaneity

In this construction, one verb refers to an action simultaneous with that of another. Colloquial Finnish has **sama|an aika|an kun** 'at the same time as', and **si|llä aika|a kun** 'while': Se **oli Lontoossa samaan**

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_211	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	page_212	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 212

**aikaan kun minä** '(S)he was in London at the same time as I (was).' More formal Finnish uses the inessive of the second infinitive:

**Hänen tull|e|ssa|an takaisin minä olin töissä.**

When (s)he came back I was at work.

The second infinitive is identical in form with the first infinitive, with two exceptions: instead of **A**, it has **e**; and instead of ending in **Q**, it takes the inessive -**ssA** (as here, to express simultaneity) or **-n** (to express manner; see below). Compare these forms (all second infinitives in the first person singular inessive):

	<i>Class I</i>	<i>Class II</i>	<i>Class III</i>	<i>Class IV</i>
	to give	to need	to come	to get
first inf.	<b>anta a</b>	<b>tarvi ta</b>	<b>tull a</b>	<b>saa da</b>
second inf.	<b>anta e ssa ni</b>	<b>tarvi te ssa ni</b>	<b>tull e ssa ni</b>	<b>saa de ssa ni</b>
when I	give/gave	need(ed)	come/came	get/got

The inessive form of the second infinitive normally occurs with either a person

suffix (like **-ni** here) or, if the subject is spelled out, with that noun in the genitive:

**Liisa|n nukku|e|ssa minä menin ulos.**

While Liisa was sleeping, I went outside.

### *Expressing manner*

This is roughly the equivalent of ‘singing’ in ‘(S)he went home singing.’ The form is the second infinitive with the suffix **-n**:

**Hän meni kotiin laula|e|n.**

Colloquial: *Se lauloi, kun se meni kotiin.*

In colloquial Finnish, this form is frequent only in fixed expressions such as time expressions built with **lähte-** ‘departs’ and **alka-** ‘begins’, e.g. **60-luvun alusta lähtien** ‘since the beginning of the sixties’ (notice e>i), **viime syksystä alkaen** ‘since last Autumn’.

In more formal Finnish, the second infinitive with this **-n** is also used to indicate concomitant action on the part of someone else; this second actor is then put into the genitive. Example:

**Tämä otetaan käyttöön vain tarpeen tullen.**

This is used only if the need arises.

A construction with the opposite meaning is mentioned at Unit 6 (abessive of the third infinitive).

[< previous page](#)

page\_212

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_213

[next page >](#)

Page 213

Dialogue 3 

*Asuminen*

**A place to live**

*In the street, Harri runs into Rasse, an acquaintance he’s not seen in a while, and does some quick catching-up*

*Kadulla*

HARRI: (*huutaa*) Hei Rasse oota vähän!

RASSE: Moi Harri!

HARRI: Sua ei oookkaan näkyny<sup>1</sup> vähään aikaan.

RASSE: No me ollaan muutettu ja se on vieny tosi paljon aikaa. Kämpä piti ensin remontoida.

HARRI: Mihin te ootte muuttaneet?

RASSE: Ostettiin Tapiolasta kaksio.

HARRI: Ai, mistä sieltä?

RASSE: Tietsä ne Otsonkallion kerrostalot, sieltä.

HARRI: Mun täti asuu omakotitalossa Otsolahdessa. Viihdyttekste Tapiolassa?

RASSE: Joo, kämpä on vähän pieni, mut toimiva. Kunhan tässä säästetään muutama vuosi niin sitten me kyllä ostetaan oma rivitaloasunto, jossa on piha, nyt meillä on vain partsi.

HARRI: Mulla ei taida<sup>2</sup> nyt sitte olla sun uutta puhelinnumeroa?

RASSE: Kuule, mun on nyt juostava bussille, mut mä soitan sulle. Jos vaikka<sup>3</sup> tulisitte Emman kanssa käymään ens viikonloppuna.

HARRI: No soittele, moi.

RASSE: Moi!

1 **Su|a ei oookkaan näkyny**: roughly 'Haven't seen much of you', a little more literally: 'Not much of you has been seen'; note the use of partitive in the subject.

2 **Mulla ei taida...olla** 'I must not have'.

3 **vaikka** used here, as so often, to introduce a suggestion or an alternative.

### *Vocabulary*

<b>asu minen</b>	living (somewhere)	<b>juos tava</b>	present passive
<b>asunto</b>	flat; apartment		participle of
<b>huuta-</b>	shouts	<b>juokse-</b>	'runs'

Page 214

<b>kaksio</b>	two-room flat	<b>partsi</b> →	balcony
<b>kerrostalo t</b>	block of flats; apartment building	<b>parvekke</b> Q	
		<b>piha</b>	yard, garden
		<b>remontoi-</b>	does repair work
<b>kämppä</b> → <b>asunto</b>		<b>rivi talo asunto</b>	flat/house in a terrace
<b>muutta-</b>	changes, moves house	<b>soittele-</b>	gives a ring, phones
<b>näky ny</b> → <b>näkynyt</b>		<b>säästä-</b>	saves
<b>oma</b>	(one's) own	<b>Tapiola</b>	(placename)
<b>oma koti talo</b>	detached house	<b>tietsä</b> → <b>tiedä t sä</b>	
<b>ookkaan</b> → <b>olekkaan</b>		<b>toimi va</b>	present active participle of <b>toimi-</b> 'works, is functional'
<b>oota</b> → <b>odota</b> Q			
<b>ootte</b> → <b>olette</b>			
<b>Otsolahi</b>	(placename)	<b>vieny</b> → <b>vienyt</b>	
<b>Otsonkallio</b>	(placename)	<b>viihdytte</b> ste→ <b>viihdyt tte kö te</b>	

## Language points

### More on necessity

Back in Unit 10, you learned how to express necessity with modal contractions, as in **Minu|n pitä|ä lähte|ä** 'I must leave.' Necessity may also be expressed with the present passive participle, e.g. **Häne|n on men|tävä nyt** '(S)he has to go now.' This section shows you how to build and use this form.

In form, the present passive participle is like the past passive participle, but with final **AvA** instead of **U**. Compare the following form-pairs: the first form is the past passive participle, the second is the present passive participle:

stem:	<b>aja-</b>	<b>osaX-</b>	<b>mene-</b>	<b>vie-</b>
past passive particle	<b>aje ttu</b>	<b>pala ttu</b>	<b>men ty</b>	<b>vie ty</b>
present passive particle	<b>aje ttava</b>	<b>pala ttava</b>	<b>men tävä</b>	<b>vie tävä</b>

Here are some examples of the present passive participle in action. As in sentences of the **minim täytyy** type, the actor is put in the genitive. The actor need not be

mentioned explicitly, however; the best English equivalent is then quite often a passive sentence.

[< previous page](#)

page\_214

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_215

[next page >](#)

Page 215

***Sinu/n on ratkais/tava, lähdetkö vai et.***

*You must decide* whether you're going or not.

***Mu/n on kirjoite/ttava sille heti.***

*I must write* to him/her at once.

***Se/n on pala/ttava kotiin pariksi viikoksi.***

*(S)he has to return* home for a few weeks.

***Mei/dän on anne/ttava ruokaa kahdelletoista lapselle.***

*We have to give* food to twelve children.

***Nü/den on löyde/ttävä hänet.***

*They must find* him/her.

***Mu/n oil lue/ttava tenttiin.***

*I had to read* for an exam.

***Mu/n on makse/ttava vuokra.***

*I have to pay* the rent.

***Vuokra on makse/ttava kuukauden kymmenenteen päivään mennessä.***

*One must pay the rent* by the tenth of the month. (=The rent must be paid by the tenth of the month.)

As usual, you can mitigate the necessity by using the conditional, e.g. **Mu/n olisi makse/ttava vuokra** 'I ought to pay the rent.'

## Dialogue 4

### Ilmansuunnat

#### *The eight points of the compass*

*Kadulla*

TUULA: Kylläpä tänään tuulee kovaa ja kylmästi.

SATU: Pohjoistuuli on aina jäätävä. Sää tiedotuksessa ne kyllä lupas heikkoa idanpuoleista tuulta ja vaihtelevaa pilvisyyttä.

TUULA: No ei se ole ensimmäinen kerta kun sää tiedotus on väärässä. Tänään varmaan rupee satamaankin.

SATU: Syksyt on niin pitkiä. Huvittais tosi paljon lähteä etelän lämpöön ja auringon paisteeseen.

TUULA: Mun isoisä on aina sanonut että lounaistuuli tuo tullessaan lämpimän ilman.

[< previous page](#)

page\_215

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_216

[next page >](#)

Page 216

SATU: No se on kesällä. Talvella ei varmaan väliä tuuleeko koillisesta, kaakosta tai lounaasta, kylmä on kuitenkin. En yhtään ihmettelis, jos vaikka tänään tulis räntäkuuroja.

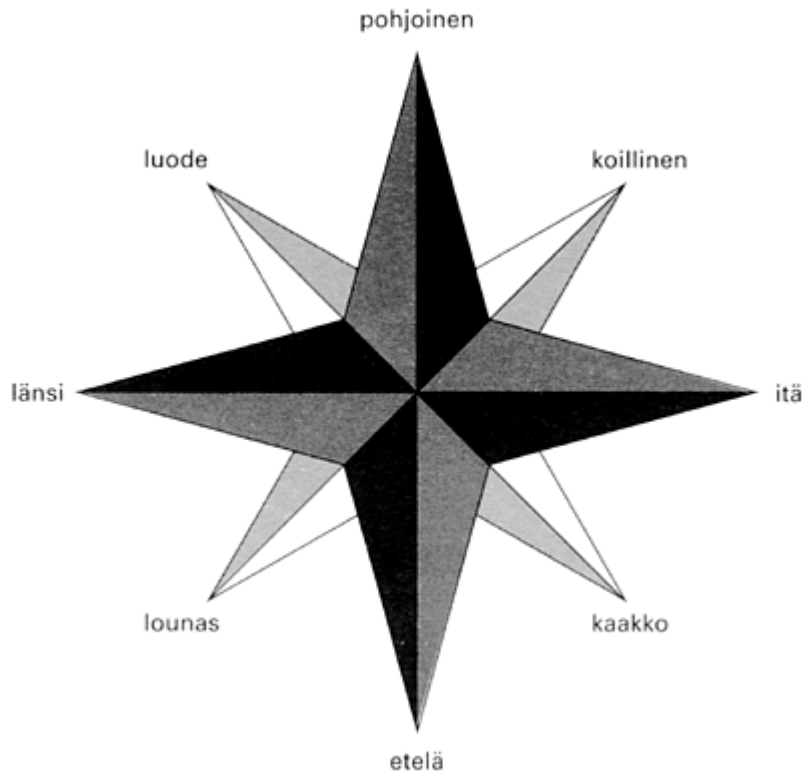
TUULA: Alä nyt oo niin negatiivinen. Voihan se poutaakin pitää tänään.

SATU: Länsirannikolle ne kyllä tais luvata hyvää säätä.

TUULA: Merellä tuulee kuiteskin kohtalaisesti aina, satoi tai paistoi.

SATU: Elämä oils varmaan vähän ykstoikkosta jos aina aurinko paistais.

TUULA: Enpä tiedä!



[< previous page](#)

[page\\_216](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_217](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 217

### Vocabulary

<b>aurinko</b>	sun	<b>lämpimä n</b>	sG of <b>lämmin</b>
<b>elä mä</b>	life	<b>lämpö</b>	'warm'
<b>etelä</b>	south	<b>länsi</b> <i>te</i>	warmth, heat
<b>heikko</b>	weak	<b>meri</b> <i>e</i>	west
<b>huvitta-</b>	it amuses, causes	<b>negatiivinen</b>	sP <b>mer ta!</b>
<b>idän puoleinen</b>	one to have fun from the east, easterly	<b>paista-</b>	'sea'
<b>ihmettele-</b>	is surprised, wonders	<b>paisteQ</b>	negative
<b>ilman suunna t</b>	the points of the compass	<b>pilvisyys</b> <i>te</i>	shines
<b>iso isä</b>	grandfather	<b>pohjois+</b>	shine, glare
<b>jää tävä</b>	icy	<b>pouta</b>	cloudiness
<b>kaakko</b>	southeast	<b>rannikko</b>	north(ern)
		<b>rupeX-</b>	fair weather
		<b>räntä</b>	shore, coast
		<b>sata-</b>	starts, begins
			hail
			rains



<b>kohtalainen</b>	moderate, medium	<b>sää</b>	weather
<b>koillinen</b>	northeast	<b>tais→taisi</b>	
<b>kova a</b>	hard, fast (adv.)	(stem: <b>taita-</b> )	
<b>kuitenki(n)</b>	anyway	<b>tiedotus kse</b>	report
<b>kuiteski(n)</b>	anyway	<b>tulle ssa an</b>	when it comes
<b>kuuro</b>	(rain)shower	<b>tuule-</b>	(the wind) blows
<b>lounais </b>	southwest(ern)	<b>tuuli e</b>	wind
<b>lounaX</b>	southwest	<b>vaihtele-</b>	varies
<b>luoteQ</b>	northwest	<b>väärä ssä</b>	in the wrong; incorrect
<b>lupas→lupasi</b>		<b>yhtään</b>	at all
(stem: <b>lupaX-</b> )			
<b>lupaX-</b>	promises	<b>ykstoikkoinen</b>	monotonou

## Dialogue 5

### Sananlaskuja *Finnish proverbs*

*Kirsi explains some Finnish proverbs to Paul*

PAUL: Musta ois hauska oppia joitakin suomalaisia sananlaskuja. Tiedät sä yhtään?

KIRSI: No en mä nyt ole kovin hyvä niissä, mutta kyllä mä joitakin

[< previous page](#)

page\_217

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_218

[next page >](#)

Page 218

tiedän. Anna kun mietin vähän. (*Hän mieltii.*) No esimerkiks tää:

Muu maa mustikka

Oma maa mansikka.

PAUL: Mitä se oikein tarkoittaa?

KIRSI: No jotain semmosta, että oma maa on aina paras maa. On mulla joitain muitakin mielessä. Musta sananlasku ‘Se koira älähtää, johon kalikka kalahtaa’ on aina osuva. Se tarkoittaa sitä, että se joka on syyllinen johonkin, tavallisesti puolustaa itseään äänekkäästi ja yrittää todistaa ettei oo syyllinen.

PAUL: Noi on tosi hyviä. Muistatko vielä muita?

KIRSI: Mitä sä pidät tästä: ‘Hullu paljon työtä tekee, viisas selviää vähemmällä.’

PAUL: Mä taidan tietää mitä se tarkoittaa. Luultavasti sitä, että on paras ajatella kunnolla miten joku juttu kannattaa tehdä, ettei joudu tekeen turhaa työtä.

KIRSI: Just niin. On hyvä muistaa myös tätä: ‘Joka<sup>1</sup> toiselle kuoppaa kaivaa, se itse siihen lankeaa.’

PAUL: Se onkin hyvä neuvo!

1 **joka** ‘(s)he who’.

### *Vocabulary*

<b>hullu</b>	fool, crazy, madman	<b>mietti-</b>	thinks over, ponders
<b>itse jä än</b>	him/herself sP	<b>mustikka</b>	whortleberry
<b>joutu-</b>	winds up, ends up	<b>neuvo</b>	advice, counsel; council
<b>just=juuri</b>	just		
<b>kaiva-</b>	digs	<b>oppi-</b>	learns
<b>kalahta-</b>	clips, claps	<b>osu va</b>	telling ( <b>osu-</b> ‘hits the mark’)
<b>kalikka</b>	stick		
<b>kannatta-</b>	is worth while	<b>puolusta</b>	defends
<b>kovin</b>	very, quite	<b>sanan lasku</b>	proverb
<b>kunno lla</b>	properly	<b>selviäX-:</b>	manages, comes through OK
		<b>selviyty-</b>	
<b>kuoppa</b>	pit, hole in the ground		
<b>lankeX</b>	falls, tumbles	<b>semmos ta→</b>	
<b>luultavasti</b>	probably	<b>semmois ta<sup>1</sup></b>	
<b>mansikka</b>	strawberry	<b>=sellais ta</b>	
<b>miele ssä</b>	in mind	<b>syyllinen</b>	guilty

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_218](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_219](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 219

<b>tarkotta- →</b>	means, purports	<b>turha</b>	useless, vain
<b>tarkoitta-</b>		<b>viisaX</b>	wise
<b>tavallisesti</b>	usually	<b>vähe mmä llä</b>	with less
<b>tekeen→ tekemään</b>		<b>yrittä-</b>	tries
		<b>älähtä-</b>	yelps
<b>todista-</b>	proves	<b>ääne kkäX</b>	vociferous

1 Pronunciation note: in colloquial contexts, the **i** final in any diphthong after the first syllable is liable to be dropped, unless the form is a superlative. Thus we have **sano** for **sanoi**, **auttas** for **auttaisi**, and (here) **semmosta** for **semmoista**.

## Language points

### The present active participle, =vA; participle overview

You have already met the present participle in connection with PRs (Unit 12). In that construction the participle is in the genitive, i.e. its shape is **-vA|n**.

But the present participle, like all participles in Finnish, is a full-fledged adjective with a full paradigm of case forms. So a present active participle like **osaa|va** 'knowing, who knows' is put into whatever case the rest of the sentence requires, for example the adessive, as in:

**Hän antoi vihkon suomea osaa|valle ranskalaise|lle lehtimiehe|lle.**

(S)he gave the notebook to a French journalist who knows/knew Finnish.

On the other hand, the present participle (like all participles) is also a verb, so it can take direct objects (like **suome|a** in the example above) and other complements, such as **Ranska|an** 'to France' in:

**Hän antoi vihkon Ranska|an lähte|vä|lle lehtimiehelle.**

(S)he gave the notebook to a journalist *who was leaving for France*.

Contrast the following sentence, with the *past* active participle indicating prioriness:

**Hän sai vihkon Ranska|an lähte|nee|ltä lehtimieheltä.**

(S)he got the notebook from a journalist *who had left* for France.

[< previous page](#)

page\_219

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_220

[next page >](#)

Page 220

The English, and for that matter, the colloquial Finnish equivalent of such rather bookish constructions will usually be a clause introduced by a relative pronoun. Thus **Suomesta puhuva nainen** (in less bookish Finnish, **nainen, joka puhuu Suomesta**) is 'a woman who is talking about Finland', and **vaikeita aikoja kokeneita ihmisiä** (=ihmisiä, jotka on kokeneet vaikeita aikoja) is 'people who have lived through difficult times'.

**Ei minulla ole ollut mainittavia ongelmia.**

I haven't had any problems worth mentioning.

**Exercise 4** Unwind these noun phrases by using the relative pronouns **joka** (or **mikä**).

**Example: vuonna 1955 solmitulla sopimuksella>sopimuksella, joka solmittiin vuonna 1955**

- 1 Saarenmaalla syntynyt lapsi
- 2 saarta koskeva laki
- 3 dokumentti (documentary) sata metriä maan alle rakennetusta kaupungista
- 4 neljännen peräkkäisen mestaruutensa ottanut helsinkiläinen

## Additional reading

### Sananlaskuja

#### *Finnish proverbs*

*Here are some more Finnish proverbs for you to have a go at decoding. There's a vocabulary list at the end to help you with the more unusual words and forms; the rest you'll find in the vocabulary at the back of this book. (Also see the Key to Exercises section.)*

- 1 Parempi pyy pivossa kuin kymmenen oksalla.
- 2 Sanasta miestä, sarvesta härkää.
- 3 Pata kattilaa soimaa, musta kylki kummallakin.
- 4 Ei vara venettä kaada.
- 5 Auta miestä mäessä älä mäen alla.
- 6 Meni ojasta allikkoon.
- 7 Se parhaiten nauraa joka viimeksi nauraa.
- 8 Puhuminen hopeaa, vaikeneminen kultaa.
- 9 Aamun torkku, illan virkku, se tapa talon hävittää.

[< previous page](#)

page\_220

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_221

[next page >](#)

Page 221

- 10 Mies tulee räkänokastakin, vaan ei tyhjän naurajasta.
- 11 Kun nokka nousee niin pyrstö tarttuu.
- 12 Mikä laulaen tulee, se viheltäen menee.

### *Vocabulary*

**aamu|n** drowsiness in the **pata** pot

<b>torkku</b>	morning	<b>pivo</b>	(hollow of the) hand
<b>allikko</b>	pool, puddle	<b>pyrstö</b>	(bird's, fish's) tail
<b>hopea</b>	silver	<b>pyy</b>	hazel grouse
<b>härkä</b>	ox	<b>räkä</b>	snot
<b>hävittä-</b>	ruins, destroys	<b>sana</b>	word
<b>kaata-</b>	overturns, pours	<b>sarvi e</b>	(animal's) horn
<b>kattila</b>	kettle	<b>soimaX-</b>	reproves, upbraids
<b>kulta</b>	gold	<b>tarttu-</b>	gets stuck
<b>kylki e</b>	side	<b>tyhjä</b>	empty
<b>laula en</b>	singing	<b>vaikeXE-</b>	is silent
<b>naura-</b>	laughs	<b>vara</b>	reserve, spare; foresight
<b>nauralja</b>	one who laughs	<b>viheltä en</b>	whistling
<b>nokka</b>	bill, beak; nose; prow	<b>virkku</b>	liveliness
<b>nouse-</b>	rises		
<b>oja</b>	ditch		
<b>oksa</b>	branch, bough		

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_221](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_222](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 222

14

## Karhut voi kai olla vaarallisiakin Bears can be dangerous, I suppose

**In this unit you will:**

- learn more about Finnish geography, real and fanciful
- learn animal and winter-sports vocabulary
- learn about verbs of motion
- revise the uses of the genitive
- learn new ways of being vague

### Dialogue 1

*Läänit*

**The administrative districts of Finland**

*Listen in as Joonas and Orvokki talk about their families' backgrounds*

JOONAS: Onks teidän suvussa tehty sukututkimusta?

Orvokki: No ei oikeestaan. Onks sun?

JOONAS: Joo, vähäsen.

Orvokki: Mistä pain sun vanhempas on kotoisin?

JOONAS: Aidin suku tulee pohjoisesta. Mun äiti on syntynyt Kuhmossa, mut paljon sukua on myös Oulussa. Se suku on pysytellyt jokseenkin Oulun läänin sisällä.

Orvokki: Mistä sun isäs suku on kotoisin?

JOONAS: Vaasan läänistä Pietarsaaresta. Mistä sun vanhemmat on kotoisin?

[< previous page](#)

page\_222

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_223

[next page >](#)

Page 223

Orvokki: Isän suku on Karjalaisia Viipurista. Mun Isä on syntynyt Lappeenrannassa Kymen läänistä.

JOONAS: Onks sun äitis kans sieltä pain?

Orvokki: Ei. Aiti on Turun- ja Porin läänistä, Naantalista.

JOONAS: Ootsä sitte uusmaalainen?

Orvokki: Niin monet luulee, ku mä oon asunu jo niin kauan Espoossa, mut mä oon syntynyt Tampereella Hämeessä.

JOONAS: Tapasko sun vanhempas Tampereella?

Orvokki: Joo. Ne molemmat opiskeli Tampereen yliopistossa.

### *Vocabulary*

<b>jokseenkin</b>	somewhat	<b>HämeQ</b>	region of (south-west) Finland
<b>kauan</b>	for a long time	<b>Karjalainen</b>	Karelian
<b>lääni</b>	administrative province	<b>Kuhmo</b>	
<b>monet</b>	many	<b>Kymi e</b>	
<b>oikeestaan</b> →	really	<b>Lappeenranta</b>	city in southeast Finland
<b>oikeestaan</b>			
<b>opiskele-</b>	studies	<b>Naantali</b>	city south of Turku

<b>pysyttele-</b>	stays, remains	<b>Oulu</b>
<b>pain</b>	abouts	<b>Pietarsaari</b>
<b>sisä llä</b>	inside	<b>Pori</b>
<b>suku tutkimus</b>	genealogy	<b>TampereQ</b>
<b>synty-</b>	is born	<b>uusmaalainen</b> someone from the Uusimaa region

<b>tapaX-</b>	meets
<b>vanhemma t</b>	parents

**Vaasa**  
**Viipuri**

*Suome\|n lääni|t*

Lapin lääni

Oulun lääni

Vaasan lääni

Kuopion lääni

Pohjoi-Karjalan lääni

Keski-Suomen lääni

Mikkelin lääni

Hämeen lääni

Turun-ja Porin lääni

Uudenmaan lääni

Kymen lääni

(Ahvenanmaa (Åland) on maakunta 'province'.)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_223](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_224](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 224

**Exercise 1** Write out Finnish translations for the following English sentences by raiding the dialogue above. (You may have to change or omit a word here and there.)

- 1 Where are your mother's people from?
- 2 That's what a lot of people think.
- 3 They both studied at the University of Jyväskylä.
- 4 I've a lot of relatives in Oulu, as well.
- 5 Is your father also from there?

## Dialogue 2

### Suomalaisia eläimiä

#### *Finnish fauna*

*Are there polar bears in Finland? Paula allays some of Greg's apprehension about Finnish wildlife*

GREG: Kuule Paula, eihän se pidä paikkaansa, että Suomessa olisi jääkarhuja?

PAULA: No ei tosiaankaan. Se on vaan sellanen myytti Suomesta ulkomailla. Jääkarhuja täällä ei todellakaan kulje kaduilla. Ainut paikka, jossa voi niitä nähdä on

eläintarhassa.

GREG: Karhuja täällä nyt kuitenkin on?

PAULA: On, jonkin verran. Mäkin oon nähny yhden kerran karhun marjareissulla. Säikähdin tosi paljon, mut onneks se vaan tuijotti mua vähän aikaa, ja käänty sitten pois.

GREG: Karhut voi kai olla vaarallisiakin?

PAULA: Joo, mut ne käy harvoin ihmisten kimppuun. Ihan viime aikoina on ollu joitakin tapauksia, että sudet on hyökänny karjan kimppuun ja aiheuttaneet suuria vahinkoja.

GREG: Onks Suomessa muitakin petoeläimiä?

PAULA: On meillä ilveksiä ja ahmoja, mut ne on kyllä aika harvinaisia. Yleisimpiä metsäeläimiä Suomessa on hirvet, peurat ja jänikset. Lapissa pidetään paljon poroja elinkeinona, mut ne on samalla tavalla vapaana luonnossa ku hirvetki.

GREG: No hyvä. Nyt mä voin valistaa ihmisiä kotipuolessa, että Suomi ei olekaan ihan mikään villi Pohjola, vaikka täällä onki paljon mielenkiintoisia eläimiä.

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_224](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_225](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 225

### *Vocabulary*

<b>ahma</b>	wolverine	<b>peto eläin</b>	beast of prey
<b>aiheutta- ainut</b>	causes sole, only	<b>peura</b>	wild reindeer
<b>ei todellakaan</b>	not really	<b>pitä jä</b>	is correct
<b>elin keino</b>	means of survival	<b>paikka nsa</b>	
<b>eläin ime</b>	animal	<b>Pohjola</b>	the north; ultima Thule
<b>eläin tarha</b>	zoo	<b>poro</b>	domesticated reindeer
<b>harvinainen</b>	rare	<b>sellanen→</b>	
<b>harvoin</b>	rarely	<b>sellainen</b>	
<b>hirvi e</b>	deer	<b>susi te</b>	wolf
<b>hyökkäX-</b>	attacks	<b>säikähtä-</b>	is startled, alarmed
<b>ilves kse</b>	lynx		



<b>jänis</b> <i>kse</i>	hare	<b>tapaus</b> <i>kse</i>	case
<b>jää karhu</b>	polar bear	<b>tuijotta-</b>	stares
<b>karhu</b>	bear	<b>ulkomailla</b>	abroad
<b>karja</b>	cattle	<b>vaarallinen</b>	dangerous
<b>kotipuolessa</b>	back home	<b>vahinko</b>	damage; pity
<b>kulje Q: kulke-</b>	goes	<b>valista-</b>	enlighten
<b>käy- kimppu un</b>	attacks	<b>X n verran</b>	to X extent;
<b>luonto</b>	nature	<b>jonkin verran</b>	'to some extent'
<b>marja reissu</b>	berry-hunting expedition	<b>villi</b>	wild
		<b>yleinen</b>	general, widespread

**mielenkiintoinen** interesting  
**myytti** myth

*Exercise 2* Arrange the following zoological vocabulary according to size of the animal, from the largest down to the smallest:

hiiri   hirvi   susi   mikrobi   kissa   karhu

*Exercise 3* Sort according to wild/tame:

poro   ankka   kissa   peura   karja   koira   ilves

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_225](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_226](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 226

## Dialogue 3

### Talviurheilua *Winter sports*

*Karsten and Juhani enthuse over the variety of Finnish Winter sports*

KARSTEN: Suomen talvi on kyllä ihana, ku on niin paljon lunta, että voi hyvin hiihtää metsässäkin.

JUHANI: Sähän alat kuulostaa ihan suomalaiselta, ku pidät niin kovasti hiihdosta.

KARSTEN: Niin, enpä olis uskonu<sup>1</sup> pari vuotta sitten, että hiihto tulee mulle intohimoksi.

JUHANI: Suomalaisten suosituin talviurheilu on varmaan hiihto. (*He picks up a leaflet.*) Hei, tässä lukee, että sillä on (*he reads*) 'pitkät perinteet. Ennen vanhaan sukset olivat tärkeä liikkumaväline talvella. Nyt juuri kukaan ei käytä niitä siihen

tarkoitukseen, vaan lähinnä harrastusmielessä. Hiihtoa pidetään yhtenä parhaimmista liikuntamuodoista, koska se vahvistaa niin monia eri lihaksia.’ No niin.

KARSTEN: Suomalaisethan on aina pärjänneet hyvin hiihtokilpailuissa.

JUHANI: Niin on, ja samoin mäkihypyssä. Niitä voi pitää suomalaisten parhaina talviurheilulajeina.

KARSTEN: Onhan sitte vielä jääkiekko. Suomihan voitti maailmanmestaruuden tänä vuonna (1995).

JUHANI: Sähän alat tuntea Suomea paremmin ku mä. Se maailmanmestaruus on kyllä tosi tärkeä suomalaisille.

1 **enpä olis(i) uskonu(t)** ‘I really wouldn’t have believed’.

### *Vocabulary*

<b>ennen vanhaan</b>	long ago	<b>kovasti</b>	very much, a lot
<b>eri</b>	different, diverse	<b>kuulosta-</b>	sounds
<b>harrastus miele ssä</b>	as a hobby	<b>lihas</b> <i>kse</i>	muscle
<b>hiihtä-</b>	skis	<b>liikkuma </b>	means of getting
<b>ihana into himo</b>	lovely passion	<b>välineQ</b>	about
		<b>liikunta muoto</b>	form of exercise
<b>jää kiekko</b>	ice hockey	<b>lähin nä</b>	primarily

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_226](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_227](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 227

<b>mestaruus</b> <i>te</i>	championship, mastery	<b>talviurheilu</b>	Winter sport
<b>mäki hyppy</b>	skijump	<b>tarkoitus</b> <i>kse</i>	purpose
<b>pärjäX-</b>	gets by OK	<b>tä nä vuon na</b>	this year
<b>suksi</b> <i>e</i>	ski	<b>urheilu laji</b>	type of sport
<b>suositujin</b>	most favoured, favourite	<b>usko-</b>	believes
		<b>vahvista-</b>	strengthens
		<b>yhtenä</b>	sESS of <b>yksi</b>

**Exercise 4: How things seem** (-ltA) **to one** (-stA)

This is a good time to revise the most important verbs which refer to the way things

strike our senses. They are **näyttä-** ‘looks, seems’, **kuulosta-** ‘sounds’, **maistu-** ‘tastes’, **haise-** ‘smells’, and **tuntu-** ‘feels, seems’. The way things seem is put in the ablative, and the person who has the impression goes into the relative, e.g. **Minu|sta vesi tuntuu kylmäl|tä** ‘The water feels cold to me.’

Revise these verbs by building sentences using the following nouns and adjectives in various combinations (if you’ve forgotten any, look them up in the back of the book):

<i>Nouns</i>	<i>Adjectives</i>	<i>Perceiver</i>
juusto	hyvä	minä
talo	kallis	sinä
ohjelma	kova	Orvokki
kaupunki	makea	me
kukka	mielenkiintoinen	lääkäri
vuode	paha	lapset
glögi	tuore	nainen
yskä	vanha	hän

## Language points

### More ways of being vague: submerged subjects

As you have seen in earlier units, Finnish sentences frequently leave the subject or main actor unspecified. There are two main ways in which subjects may be so ‘submerged’: if the submerged subject is more than one person, the indefinite forms of the verb are used, as in **Espanjassakin vähennetään veroja** ‘They’re lowering taxes in Spain, as well’. If the submerged subject could be a single person, the third person singular form is used, but without a pronoun—i.e. neither **hän** nor **se**. For example ( $\emptyset$  stands for the

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_227](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_228](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 228

omitted pronoun): **Joskus  $\emptyset$  joutu|u odottamaan koko päivän** ‘Sometimes one ends up having to wait all day.’ Such pronoun omission also works in constructions which mark the actor with the genitive (Unit 10), as in **Talvella  $\emptyset$  täytyy pukeutua lämpimästi** ‘In winter one must dress warmly’; compare **Kesälläkin minun täytyy pukeutua lämpimästi** ‘Even in summer I have to dress warmly.’

There is yet another way in which Finnish sentences can be less explicit than their English equivalents: detransitivized verbs. Hundreds of transitive verbs have intransitive analogues which end in =U, =UtU, or =ntU; a sentence built with such a verb requires only a subject. Compare **näke-** ‘sees’ and **näk|y-** ‘is visible’ in these

two sentences:

**Mä e|n näe kadun loppu|a.**

I can't see the end of the street.

**Kadun loppu e|i näy.**

lit. The end of the street isn't visible.

Here are some more pairs of transitive and intransitive verbs:

<i>English</i>	<i>Transitive</i>	<i>Intransitive</i>	<i>English</i>
contains	<b>sisältä-</b>	<b>sisält y-</b>	is contained
removes	<b>poista-</b>	<b>poist u-</b>	is removed, departs
covers	<b>peittä-</b>	<b>peitt y-</b>	is covered
finishes	<b>lopetta-</b>	<b>lopp u-</b>	comes to an end
gathers	<b>keräX-</b>	<b>keske yty-</b>	is gathered, piles up
adds, appends	<b>lisäX-</b>	<b>lisää nty-</b>	is augmented
opens	<b>avaX-</b>	<b>ava utu-</b>	opens
interrupts	<b>keskeyt tä-</b>	<b>kerää nty-</b>	is interrupted
moistens	<b>kostu tta-</b>	<b>kost u-</b>	becomes moist ( <b>kostea</b> 'damp, moist')

**Exercise 5** A subject is submerged in each the following sentences. Make up your own explicit versions, starting with the subjects suggested in brackets.

- 1 Sairaala suljettiin (**hallitus** 'government').
- 2 Ovi avautui (**tyttö** 'girl').
- 3 Keskustelu keskeytyy (**isäni** 'my father').
- 4 Täytyy järjestää huone (**pojat** 'the boys').
- 5 On pakko lähteä nyt (**me** 'we').
- 6 Autoa etsitään (**poliisi** 'the police').

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_228](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_229](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 229

### Nuances of some very useful verbs: **pitä-** and verbs of motion

You first met the verb **pitä-** back in Unit 2, where you learned that it means 'likes' when used with the relative (**Etsä pidä kahvi|sta?** 'Don't you like coffee?'). In Unit 10 you saw how **pitä-**, like **täyty-**, expresses necessity in constructions such as **Mun piti mennä kauppaan vaihtamaan** 'I had to go into a shop to get change.'

This verb has several other common uses. It can be the equivalent of English ‘keeps’ (**Pidä ikkuna auki!** ‘Keep the window open!’), ‘holds’ (**Se pitää jotain kädessään** ‘(S)he’s holding something in her/his hand’), and ‘considers’ (and what you consider something to be is put into the essive: **Hiihtoa pidetään hyvänä liikiuitamuotona** ‘Skiing is considered a good form of exercise’). Notice also the following constructions: **pitäjä hauska|a** ‘has a good time’; **pitäjä puhee|n** ‘gives a speech’; **pitäjä huol|ta itsestään** ‘takes care of him/herself’, **pitää paikka|nsa** ‘holds true’ (lit. ‘holds its place’).

### Verbs of motion

The more specialized verbs of motion are usually fairly similar in scope and use to their English equivalents: you have already met many of the most common of these: **lähte-** ‘leaves, departs’, **saapu-** ‘arrives’, **nouse-** ‘rises’, **laske-** ‘descends’, **juokse-** ‘runs’. Notice also **liikku-** and **siirty-** (intransitive), **liikutta-** and **siirtä-** (transitive), which are all ‘moves’. **Liikku-** and **liikutta-** focus more on the motion itself, **siirty-** and **siirtä-** more on the change of location. **Liikutta-** is also ‘moves (emotionally)’: **Kvartetin viimeinen osa liikutti yleisön kyyneliin** ‘The last movement of the quartet moved the audience to tears.’ ‘Moving house’ is **muutta-**.

The more general verbs can cause more difficulty for the learner. Alongside **mene-** ‘goes’ and **tule-** ‘comes’, which from an English point of view are fairly straightforward, Finnish has a few other verbs of motion which lack close English equivalents. You have already encountered **käy-**. This verb can mean either ‘goes’ or ‘comes’: the essential difference is that a return trip is usually implied. Thus **Se kävi Ruotsissa** ‘(S)he came/went to Sweden’ (note the use of the stative, inessive, case) implies that (s)he is no longer in Sweden, but has returned to wherever (s)he left from. Another common English equivalent is therefore ‘visits’: **Tule käymään!** ‘Come and pay us a visit!’. **Käy-** has many other common meanings, including:

[< previous page](#)

page\_229

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_230

[next page >](#)

Page 230

- 1 ‘Goes’ in the sense of ‘is working’, i.e. without locomotion, as in **Mun kello käy edellä** ‘My watch is fast (lit. “goes ahead”); notice also **Olut käy** ‘The beer is brewing’, **Ulkona käy kova tuuli** ‘There’s a harsh wind outside’.
- 2 ‘Attends’, as in **käy koulu|a** ‘is attending school’.
- 3 ‘Becomes’, as in **Kävi selväksi, ettei se auta meitä** ‘It became clear that it/(s)he wouldn’t help us.’ Notice also **käy- ilmi**, as in **Kävi ilmi, että se oli naimisissa** ‘It turned out that (s)he was married.’ Parallel constructions with the illative are also common, for example: **Mun uneni kävi tote|en** ‘My dream came true’.
- 4 ‘Walks’, but this is more precisely **kävele-**; ‘steps’, more precisely **astu-**; ‘happens’ (**tapahtu**); ‘is suitable’ (**sopi-**); ‘is valid’ (**päte-**).
- 5 With ‘motion-to’ suffixes, **käy-** means something like ‘attacks’ or ‘gets stuck into’, e.g. **Se kävi mua kurkku|un** ‘(S)he/it went for my throat’,

**yksityiskohtijin käymättä** ‘without going into details’; notice also **Karhu ei käynyt lapsen kimppuun** ‘The bear didn’t attack the child’ (**kimppu** on its own means ‘bunch’).

**Pääse-** and **joutu-** deserve special attention because of their focus: whereas **pääse-** focuses on *trying hard to get somewhere, managing to get somewhere (desirable)*, **joutu-** emphasizes a *lack of intention*. So we have **Sen maalaus pääsi kansainväliseen näyttelyyn** ‘His/her painting made it into an international exhibition’, but **Sen maalaus joutui roskakoriin** ‘His/her painting wound up in the bin.’ Compare also **Mä pääsin kertomaan koko jutun** ‘I managed/had a chance/was allowed to tell the whole story’, **Mä jouduin kertomaan koko jutun** ‘I ended up/wound up telling the whole story.’

Then there is **kulke-**. This verb is also often translated ‘goes’, but it usually refers to regular, frequently channelled, motion, especially that of vehicles, as in **Junat kulkee ajallaan** ‘The trains run on time’. But notice also **Tästä kulki ennen joki** ‘A river used to be/run here’, **Kahviloissa huhut kulkivat vauhdikkaasti** ‘In the cafés, rumours circulated swiftly.’

Finally, there is **jää-**. This verb is usually translated as ‘stays’ or ‘remains’, but you should remember that it takes ‘motion-to’ cases: ‘(S)he’s staying home’ is **Se jää kotiin**.

*Exercise 6* Put into Finnish:

- 1 We went to Sweden last year.
- 2 Are you staying here or you coming along?

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_230](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_231](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 231

- 3 The news (**tieto**) travels fast.
- 4 It turned out that she speaks Finnish.
- 5 He moved to Harold’s place.

*Exercise 7 Viimeiset sanat.* Translate these ‘famous last words’:

- 1 Ei ne pure jos sä et pelkää niitä.
- 2 Kyllä mä nämä vedet tunnen.
- 3 Ei sieltä junaa tähän aikaan tule.
- 4 Kyllä siltä sillalta eilen vielä ainakin pääsi.
- 5 Täällä Lapissa kaikki maisemat näyttää aika samanlaisilta.

**Dialogue 4** 

## **Korvatunturi** *Some fanciful geography*

*Anni tries to persuade Paul that there really is a Santa Claus, and that (s)he lives in Finland*

ANNI: Hei Paul, ootko jo lähettänyt kirjeen joulupukille Korvatunturille?

PAUL: Heh, heh! Mut miten niin Korvatunturille. Joulupukkihan asuu Pohjoisnavalla.

ANNI: No ei varmasti asu, vaan Suomen Lapissa, Korvatunturilla. Kyllä joulupukki on suomalainen, kysy vaikka keneltä tahansa<sup>1</sup> Suomessa.

PAUL: Okei, okei, uskon kyllä sua. Halusin vaan vähän kiusata, kun suomalaiset on niin herkkiä tästä joulupukkiasiasta!

ANNI: Niin, ku joulupukki on niin tärkeä osa joulua Suomessa. Kaikki suomalaiset lapset uskoo, että joulupukki asuu Korvatunturilla ja tekee työpajassaan tonttujen kanssa leluja lapsille koko vuoden. Sitten jouluattona pukki jakaa lahjat matkustaen poroillaan ympäri Suomen.

PAUL: Ja tontut on joulupukin korvaamattomia apulaisia?

ANNI: Joo. Ennen joulua ne kiertelevät ikkunoiden takana kurkkimassa, jotta joulupukki tietää kuka on ollu kilttinä ja kuka ei!

PAUL: Tuo on kyllä kiristystä, vaikka se kyllä varmaan toimii hyvin. Lapset yrittävät olla kiltimpiä, jotta saisivat enemmän lahjoja.

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_231](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_232](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 232

ANNI: Onhan se vähän huijausta, mutta kyllä tonttuja on ihan oikeesti olemassa. Kirjoita vaikka joulupukille, jos et usko. Tässä on osoite: Joulupukin kamari, 96930 Napapiiri.

**1 kysy vaikka keneltä tahansa** ‘just ask anyone’

### *Vocabulary*

<b>apulainen</b>	assistant	<b>lelu</b>	toy
<b>herkkä</b>	sensitive, touchy	<b>matkusta-</b>	travels
<b>huijaus</b> <i>kse</i>	swindle	<b>napapiiri</b>	arctic circle
<b>jaka-</b>	distributes	<b>oikeesti=</b>	

<b>joulu pukki</b>	Father Christmas	<b>oikeastaan</b>	
<b>kamari</b>	chamber	<b>okei</b>	OK
<b>ke(ne)ltä</b>	sABL of <b>kuka</b>	<b>on ole ma ssa</b>	exists
<b>kiertele-</b>	travels around, roves	<b>pohjois napa</b>	North Pole
<b>kiltti</b>	well-behaved, good	<b>tahansa</b>	-ever
<b>kiristys</b> <i>kse</i>	tension; extortion, blackmail	<b>X n takana</b>	behind X
<b>kiusaX-</b>	teases	<b>toimi-</b>	works, functions
<b>korvaamaton</b>	irreplaceable	<b>tonttu</b>	elf
<b>Korvatunturia</b>	tunturi in northern Finland	<b>tunturi</b>	mountain with rounded treeless summit
<b>kurkki-</b>	peeps/peeks	<b>työ paja</b>	believes
<b>lahja</b>	gift, present	<b>usko-</b>	workshop
<b>lapsi</b> <i>e</i>	child, sP	<b>ympäri Suomen</b>	all over Finland
		<b>yrittä-</b>	tries
		<b>las ta</b>	

*Exercise 8* (Refer to the previous dialogue if you're stuck.)

- 1 Ask a friend whether (s)he has sent a certain letter yet.
- 2 Tell him/her to ask any Finn.
- 3 Tell him/her you believe him/her.
- 4 Say you just wanted to tease him/her.
- 5 Tell him/her that you know who's been good and who hasn't.

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_232](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_233](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 233

## Language points

### Revision: uses of the genitive

You have now met most of the constructions which use the genitive. This section provides a quick overview of these uses, which we may group into three basic types:

The genitive proper. This group includes possessives like **Heiki|n auto** 'Heikki's car' and postpositional and prepositional constructions like **talo|n takana** 'behind the house' and 'all over Europe' **Kautta Euroopa|n** (Unit 9). Here, too, belongs



- the adverb of intensity, as in **hirveä|n kaunis** ‘frightfully beautiful’ (Unit 11).
- 2 Accusative marker. This use is characteristic only of nouns in the singular, e.g. **Mä näin Heiki|n eilen** ‘I saw Heikki yesterday’ (Unit 5).
- 3 Subject in a modal construction, or of a linked verb. There are several subtypes:
- Heiki|n täyty|y mennä kotiin** ‘Heikki must go home’ (Unit 10).
  - Heiki|n on mentävä kotiin** ‘Heikki must go home’ (Unit 13).
  - Heiki|n saapuessa minä lähdin** ‘I left as Heikki arrived’ (Unit 13).
  - Heiki|n tul|tu|a minä lähdin** ‘Once Heikki had come, I left’ (Unit 12).
  - Minä lähdin Heiki|n näh|de|n** ‘I left in full view of Heikki’ (Unit 13).
  - Minä lähdin Heiki|n huomaa|ma|tta** ‘I left without Heikki’s noticing’ (Unit 6).
  - Mä kuulin Heiki|n lähtevän** ‘I heard Heikki leave’ (Unit 12).

There is also a common construction with **anta-**, expressing permission; for instance:

- (h) **Mä annoin Heiki|n ajaa mun autoa** ‘I let Heikki drive my car.’

One last construction, built with the third infinitive, will come up in Unit 15:

- (i) **Heiki|n kirjoitta|ma|ssa kirjee|ssä** ‘in a letter which Heikki wrote’.

[< previous page](#)

page\_233

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_234

[next page >](#)

Page 234

## Additional reading

### Olavinlinna

Savonlinnan oopperajuhlat on yksi kesän tärkeimmistä kulttuuritapahtumista Suomessa. Se on kansainvälinen oopperafestivaali. Olavinlinna on juhlien päänäyttämönä. Olavinlinnan sanotaan olevan yksi kauneimmista keskiaikaisista linnoista pohjolassa. Se on vanha esimerkki Pohjoismaisesta yhteistyöstä; Ruotsin kuningas antoi tanskalaiselle ritarille tehtäväksi rakentaa Suomen maaperälle linnan Norjan kuninkaan kunniaksi.

### Turunlinna

Turunlinnan voisi luonnehtia yhdeksi Suomen kansallisista symboleista. Retki Turunlinnassa on kuin Suomen historian oppitunti yli neljästä vuosisadasta, 1200-luvulta 1600-luvun loppuun. Linnaa alettiin rakentaa noin 1280. 1500-luku oli linnan historian värikkäin vuosisata. Toisessa maailman sodassa Turunlinna tuhoutui pahoin. Sodan jälkeen aloitettiin restaurointityö, joka saatiin päätökseen 1961.

## Kalevala

Kalevala on Suomen kansalliseepos. Se ilmestyi ensimmäisen kerran 1835. Kalevala on käännetty 45 kielelle ja se on hyväksytty, ainoana suomalaisena teoksena, englanninkieliseen ‘Maailman klassikot’—sarjaan.

## Eduskuntatalo

Eduskuntatalo valmistui 1931 Arkadianmäelle. Rakennuksen suunnitteli professori J.S.Sirén. Rakennuksesta tuli uuden Helsingin symboli.

## Suomenlinna

Vuonna 1747 aloitettiin Viaporin/Sveaborgin/Suomenlinnan rakentaminen saarelle Helsingin edustalle. Suomenlinnasta tuli alueen mahtavimpia linnoituksia. Suuri laivasto asettui linnoituk-

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_234](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_235](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 235

seen. Suomenlinnaa on kutsuttu ‘Pohjolan Gibraltariksi’. Suomensodassa linnoituksen oli antauduttava venäläisille joukoille. Nykyään Suomenlinnasta on tullut suosittu vapaa-ajanviettopaikka. Siellä on myös museoita kuten Armfelt ja Ehrensvärd museo, sukellusvene Vesikko ja pohjoismainen taidegalleria. Osa Suomenlinnaa on vieläkin sotilasaluetta.

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_236](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 236

### *Vocabulary*

<b>alettiin</b>	past indefinite of <b>pohjoismainen</b>	northern-
<b>alka-</b>		country (adj.)
<b>asettu-</b>	is set up, takes up a position	<b>restaurointi</b> restoration
<b>edusta</b>	place in front of X	<b>retki e</b> trip, excursion <b>ritari</b> knight
<b>galleria</b>	gallery	<b>saari e</b> island
<b>kansainvälinen</b>	international	<b>sarja</b> series
<b>klassikko</b>	classic	<b>sotilax</b> soldier

<b>laiva sto</b>	fleet	<b>suunnittele-</b>	plans
<b>linnoitus</b> <i>kse</i>	fortification	<b>tapahtu ma</b>	event, happening
<b>luonnehti-</b>	characterizes	<b>teh tävä</b>	task
<b>maa perä</b>	soil, ground	<b>tuhoutu-</b>	is destroyed, damaged
<b>mahta va</b>	huge, great, mighty		
<b>Norja</b>	Norway	<b>valmistu-</b>	is prep.ared, made ready
<b>oppitunti</b>	class	<b>värikkäX</b>	colourful
<b>päätös</b> <i>kse</i>	decision, completion	<b>yhteis </b>	joint, mutual

[< previous page](#)

page\_236

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_237

[next page >](#)

Page 237

15

## Vakavia asioita

### Serious matters

#### In this unit you will:

- read about Finnish authors, Turku, social security, and the European Union
- learn more about how to say ‘self’ and ‘other’
- meet two more uses for the third infinitive
- learn about the remaining four case suffixes
- revise how to say ‘everyone’, ‘no matter what’, ‘from somewhere’, and the like

#### Dialogue 1

#### *Euroopa|n Unioni*

#### European Union

*In Finland the referendum for EU membership was held on 16 October 1994. Around 60 per cent voted for membership and 40 per cent against. At the same time as Finland, Sweden and Austria also joined the EU, on 1 January 1995. Listen in as Mirka and Seppo argue some of the pros and cons of Finland’s joining*

MIRKA: Mä tulin just Lontoosta. Oli jotenkin mukavaa kun tunsi<sup>1</sup> kuuluvansa Euroopan Unioniin.

SEPPO: Mä en oikeen ymmärrä mitä iloa siitä tunteesta on.<sup>2</sup>

MIRKA: Sä taisit äänestää EU:ta vastaan kansanäänestyksessä.

SEPPO: Joo.

MIRKA: Uskallanko kysyä, miks?

SEPPO: Musta vaan tuntu siltä, että EU:n toimista ei tiedetty

[< previous page](#)

page\_237

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_238

[next page >](#)

Page 238

tarpeeks. Toiset sano yhtä ja toiset toista<sup>3</sup> ja se Brysselin byrokratiakin arvellutti.

MIRKA: Mä äänestin puolesta. Musta on kiva matkustaa Euroopassa vapaasti ja vaikka muuttaa Pariisiin jos huvittaa.<sup>4</sup>

SEPPO: Sä et tainnu<sup>5</sup> ottaa äänestystä kovin vakavasti.

MIRKA: Kyllä mä ajattelin myös taloudellisia etuja. Suomi tarttee vapaan pääsyn Euroopan markkinoille.

SEPPO: Musta se politiikka että ollaan neutraaleja, oli hyvä. Nyt se on vähän niinku rikkoutunut.

MIRKA: Nykymaailmassa ei oikeen enää voi pysyä täysin puolueettomana. Eikä meiltä itsenäisyys tässä jäsenyydessä mennyt. Nyt katsotaan länteen idän sijasta.

SEPPO: Mites meidän maataloudelle tulevaisuudessa sitte käy?<sup>6</sup>

MIRKA: No sen aika näyttää.

1 **kun tunsi** ‘when I felt’; notice the use of the third person.

2 **mitä iloa siitä tunteesta on** ‘what joy there is (to be had) from that feeling’.

3 **Toiset sano yhtä ja toiset toistä** ‘Some said one (thing) and others another’.

4 **jos (mua) huvittaa** ‘if I feel like it’.

5 **tainnu(t)**: the verb **taita-** has two past active participles: **taita|nut** in the meaning ‘is skilful’, **tain|nut** in the meaning ‘is probable (that something happened)’.

6 Cf. **Miten sille käy?** ‘What will become of him/her/it?’

### Vocabulary

<b>arvelutta-</b>	makes X apprehensive	<b>mites→miten</b>	
<b>Bryssel</b>	Brussels	<b>neutraali</b>	neutral
<b>byrokratia</b>	bureaucracy	<b>niinku→niinkuin</b>	
<b>et u</b>	advantage	<b>oikeen→oikein</b>	
<b>EU=</b>		<b>Pariisi</b>	Paris
<b>Euroopa n</b>		<b>politiikka</b>	politics
<b>Unioni</b>			
	<b>X n puolesta</b>	in favour of X, for X	
<b>ilo</b>	joy	<b>puoluee ton ma</b>	impartial, disinterested
<b>jotenkin</b>	somehow		
<b>jäsen yys te</b>	membership ( <b>jäsen</b> ‘member’)	<b>pysy-</b>	stays; doesn’t change
<b>kansan </b>	referendum	<b>rikko utu-</b>	gets broken
<b>äänestys kse</b>		<b>X n sijasta</b>	instead of X

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_238](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_239](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 239

<b>taloudellinen</b>	economic	<b>uskalta-</b>	dares
<b>tarpee ks(i)</b>	enough	<b>vakava sti</b>	seriously
<b>tarttee→tarvitse e</b>		<b>vastaan</b>	against (post. P)
<b>toimi</b>	functioning	<b>äänestä-</b>	votes
<b>tulevaisuus te</b>	future	<b>äänestys kse</b>	vote, voting
<b>tunteQ</b>	feeling		

**Exercise 1** Write your own Finnish dialogue, in which someone from Britain explains his or her attitude towards the EU to someone from Finland. You can have them discuss referenda, exports and imports, hopes and fears.

### Language points

## More submerged subjects: saying how you feel

People are often governed (or at least swayed) by their emotions, and Finnish grammar has a way of reflecting this. Alongside such expressions as **Mä oon iloinen** 'I'm happy', **Mä oon pettynyt** 'I'm disappointed', **Harri on vihainen** 'Harold is angry', Finnish even more commonly uses a construction in which a verb, always in the third person, governs the person with the emotion or feeling. This person is put into the partitive. Thus, for example, Finns are less likely to say **Mä oon väsynyt** 'I am tired' than **Mua väsyttää**, literally 'Tires me', an expression in which there is no agent specified. Other examples include

<b>mua nukutta</b>  a	I'm feeling sleepy
<b>mua pyöryttä</b>  ä	I'm feeling dizzy
<b>mua huvitta</b>  a	I feel like, I enjoy
<b>mua janotta</b>  a	I'm feeling thirsty
<b>mua ihmetyttä</b>  ä	I'm amazed
<b>mua arvelutta</b>  a	I'm reluctant/concerned

## Dialogue 2

### Turku (Åbo)

*Turku, now Finland's second (or, in population, fourth) city, was originally its first: its heyday began in the sixteenth century, when*

[< previous page](#)

page\_239

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_240

[next page >](#)

Page 240

*what is now southwest Finland was part of the kingdom of Sweden. A university (**Turu/n Akatemia, Åbo Akademi**) was founded at Turku/Åbo in 1640 (later moved to Helsinki), and it was the capital until 1812. Turku now has two new universities, one Swedish and one Finnish*

RIITTA: Mitä sä teit viime viikonloppuna?

JULIA: Kävin Turussa.

RIITTA: Millanen matka oli?

JULIA: Tosi onnistunut. Mä opin paljon Suomen vanhasta pääkaupungista.

RIITTA: Turku taitaa olla perustettu<sup>1</sup> jo 1200-luvulla.

JULIA: Joo. Vuoden 1154 arabialaisessa Idrīsī:n kartassa<sup>2</sup> mainittiin kaks paikkaa

Suomesta. Ne oli Turku ja Häme.

RIITTA: Kävitsä Turun Tuomiokirkossa?

JULIA: Tietysti. Se oli upea kirkko. Se vihittiin 1300.

RIITTA: Sitte sä varmaan tutustuit Mikael Agricolaanki.<sup>3</sup>

JULIA: Kyllä. Hänhän<sup>4</sup> oli Turun piispana ja ensimmäisen suomenkielisen aapisen tekijä. Mä kävin myös Turun linnassa.

RIITTA: Tykkäsitkö?

JULIA: Olin haltioissani.<sup>5</sup> Mä olen keskiaikaisten linnojen ihailija.

RIITTA: Mitä muuta sä ehdit nähdä?

JULIA: Kävin Luostarinmäen käsityöläismuseossa katsomassa miten ennen vanhaan elettiin Turussa. Sieltä mä ostin nekkuja ja söin itseni melkein kipeeks.

RIITTA: Tiesitsä että Turusta julistetaan joka vuosi joulurauha kello kaksitoista jouluaattopäivänä.

JULIA: En tienny. Mutta tiedän että Turun Akatemia perustettiin 1640.

RIITTA: Sulla tais olla<sup>6</sup> antoisa viikonloppu.

JULIA: Oli. Mutta vielä jäi paljon näkemättä.<sup>7</sup>

1 **taitaa olla perustettu** ‘must have been founded; I guess it was founded’.

2 **arabialaisessa Idrīsī:n kartassa** ‘on the Arab map of (ash-Sharīf al-)Idrīsī (twelfth-century geographer and adviser to Roger II, Norman king of Sicily)’.

3 **Mikael Agricola** see exercise below.

4 **hän|hän** ‘he, (as) you know,...’

5 **Olin haltioissani** ‘I was on cloud nine’.

6 **Sulla tais olla** ‘You must have had’.

7 **(multa) jäi paljon näkemättä** ‘(I) missed a lot’, lit. ‘much remained unseen (off me)’.

Page 241

*Vocabulary*

<b>aapinen</b>	primer	<b>käsityöläis </b>	<b>museo</b> handicrafts museum
<b>antoisa</b>	productive, rich		
<b>arabialainen</b>	Arab(ic), Arabian	<b>millanen</b> →	
<b>elettiin</b>	pt indefinite of	<b>millainen</b>	
<b>ihailija</b>	admirer	<b>elä- nekku</b>	toffee cone succeeds, goes off well
<b>itse ni</b>	myself		
<b>joulu aatto päivä</b>	day before Christmas	<b>perusta</b>	founds
<b>joulu rauha</b>	Christmas peace	<b>piispa tais</b> → <b>taisi</b>	bishop pt of <b>taita</b>
<b>julista-</b>	proclaims, declares, makes public	<b>tekijä</b>	maker, author
		<b>tienny=tietä nyt tuomio kirkko</b>	cathedral
<b>keski aikainen</b>	medieval	<b>upea</b>	magnificent, grand
<b>kipeeks</b> → <b>kipeeksi</b>		<b>vihki-</b>	consecrates

*Exercise 2* Dig the answers to these out of the dialogue above.

- 1 When was Turku cathedral consecrated?
- 2 What was founded in 1640?
- 3 Who was Mikael Agricola?
- 4 What kind of museum is at Luostarinmäki?

**Language points****Self and other**

English ‘myself’, ‘yourself’, ‘herself’, ‘ourselves’ and the like are rendered in Finnish by the word **itse** with the appropriate possessive suffix. For example:

**Mä söin itse|ni kipeeksi.**



I ate myself sick.

**Se katselee itse|ä|än peilistä.**

(S)he looks at him/herself in the mirror.

**Tunne itse|si!**

Know thyself!

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_241](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_242](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 242

**Mu|lla on itse|llä|ni kolme lasta.**

I have three children myself.

**But itse** does not take suffixes when it is used to mean ‘even’ (= **jopa**) or ‘none other than’, as in **Itse presidentti on sanonut, että ...** ‘None other than the president (him/herself) has said that...’.

‘Other’ and ‘another’ are a bit more complicated. In reciprocal situations such as ‘They loved one another’ you have a choice: (1) you use **toinen** in the appropriate plural case and with the appropriate possessive suffix, as in **Ne rakasti tois|i|a|an:** or (2) you use **toinen** twice, the first time in the nominative singular and the second time with the appropriate possessive and case suffix, as in **Ne rakasti toinen tois|ta|an.**

**Toinen** refers to one or the other of two known entities; **muu** is ‘other’ in the sense of ‘something else’, or ‘different’. Indeclinable **eri** is ‘other’ in the sense of ‘separate’, ‘distinct’, and ‘various’. There is some overlap in the use of these three words, but keeping these distinctions in mind should help. Contrast:

<b>toise ssa huonee ssa</b>	in the other room
<b>muu ssa huonee ssa</b>	in another (=different) room
<b>eri huonee ssa</b>	in another (=separate) room

**Exercise 3** Put into Finnish:

- 1 They already know one another.
- 2 He’s always talking about himself.
- 3 I’ve left my bag in the other room.
- 4 There were also a few other guests.
- 5 They came to visit at two different times.
- 6 I couldn’t get anyone to believe me (=myself).

## Four more noun suffixes: abessive, instructive, comitative, and prolative

These suffixes are all somewhat rare, but you will need at least to recognize them.

The *abessive*, **-ttA**, you have already met, in connection with the third infinitive (Unit 6). With ordinary nouns, it means ‘without’; thus **vaiva|tta** ‘without trouble’ is just a more formal way of saying **ilman vaiva|a** (Unit 7). It usually occurs with the singular, but notice the expression **mu|i|tta mutk|i|tta** ‘without (any further) ado’ (**mutka** ‘bend, curve’). You’ll come across this suffix mostly

[< previous page](#)

page\_242

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_243

[next page >](#)

Page 243

in fixed phrases; don’t try making up your own unless you want to sound silly.

You have also already met the *instructive*: it is the **-n** which is added to the second infinitive (Unit 13). With ordinary nouns, it means something like ‘with’ or ‘by means of’, for example:

<b>jala n</b>	on foot
<b>om i n kas i n</b>	with one’s own hands
<b>koste i n silm i n</b>	with moist eyes
<b>ehdo i n tahdo i n</b>	intentionally ( <b>ehto</b> ‘stipulation’, <b>tahto</b> ‘wish’)

As these examples indicate, the instructive is used most commonly in the plural. The *comitative*, on the other hand, is *always* used in the plural, even when its meaning is singular. Its form is the suffix **-ne-**; when attached to the last (or only) noun in the phrase, this is followed by the appropriate possessive suffix. For example:

**Se lähti ystäv|i|ne|en.**

(S)he left with her/his friends.

**Se haluaa muuttaa perhe|i|ne|en Suomeen.**

(S)he wants to move to Finland with her/his family.

**Joulupukki ilmestyi poro|i|ne|en ja lahjo|i|ne|en.**

Father Christmas appeared, with his reindeer and his presents.

As these examples suggest, the comitative means something a little more than simple accompaniment (which is expressed by **kanssa** or **kera**, Unit 9). Whereas **perhee|nsä**

**kanssa** is no more than ‘with his/her family’, **perhe|j|ne|en** is closer to ‘family and all’.

The *prolative*, **-tse**, means ‘via’ or ‘by means of’ and is restricted to a few types of expression. Some of the more common uses are: **puhelim|j|tse** ‘by telephone’, **lentoposti|tse** ‘via air mail’, **sähköposti|tse** ‘by e-mail’, **meri|tse** ‘by sea’, **maji|tse** ‘by land’, **oikeuste|j|tse** ‘through the courts’ (**oikeus** ‘justice’, **tie** ‘road, route’).

**Exercise 4** Match up the items in columns A and B so that they make some kind of sense.

A

1 Se kertoi mulle kaiken

2 Ne muuttaa Ruotsiin

3 Mä näin sen

B

vanhempineen.

puhelimitse.

omin silmin.

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_243](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_244](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 244

### Dialogue 3

#### Vähän Suomen taloudesta

#### *A little about Finland's economy*

*At the airport, Peter and Heikki discuss unemployment, imports, exports, and souvenirs*

*Lentokentällä*

PETER: Olen kuullut että Suomessa on paljon työttömiä. Pitääkö se paikkansa?

HEIKKI: Valitettavasti se on totta. 80-luvun<sup>1</sup> lopussa Suomen talous kärsi kovasti Neuvostoliiton hajoamisesta ja niinkuin muuallakin maailmassa pankkikriiseistä. Suomen työttömyys on siinä<sup>2</sup> 17 prosenttia.

PETER: Mitkä maat ovat nykyään Suomen suurimpia kauppakumppaneita?

HEIKKI: Saksa ja Ruotsi ovat suurimpia, mutta Suomi tekee paljon kauppaa myös Englannin, Yhdysvaltojen ja Venäjän kanssa.

PETER: Mitkä ovat Suomen vientivaltteja? Olen kuullut Nokian kännyköistä.

HEIKKI: Nokia onkin<sup>3</sup> varmaan yksi Suomen tunnetuimmista yhtiöistä maailmalla. Suomi on suuri metallin, konetekniikan ja paperin viejä. Suomessa on myös iso kemianteollisuus ja tietysti Suomi vie myös puutavaraa.

PETER: Ajattelin ostaa tuliaisia vaimolleni. Se saisi olla<sup>4</sup> jotain suomalaista. Mitä

suosittelet?

HEIKKI: Marimekon tekstiilit ovat tyylikkää ja hyvää laatua. Aarikan puiset tavarat, Iittalan lasi ja Arabian posliini ovat myös hyviä tuliaisia. Kannattaa myös katsoa Kalevalakoruja. Fazerin suklaa on myös aina tervetullutta.

PETER: Lähdenpä tästä vähän ostoksille<sup>5</sup> ennen koneen lähtöä.

HEIKKI: Nähdään koneessa!

1 **80-luku** ‘the eighties’.

2 **siinä** ‘about’.

3 **Nokia onkin** ‘It’s true, Nokia *is*...’

4 **se saisi olla** ‘it should/ought to be’.

5 **lähden...ostoksille** ‘I’m going shopping’; the **-pA** of **lähdenpä** adds a nuance of immediacy and energy, as usual.

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_244](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_245](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 245

### *Vocabulary*

<b>kannatta-</b>	is worth it	<b>puu tavara</b>	things made of wood
<b>kauppa kumppani</b>	trading partner		
<b>kemian teollisuus</b>	chemical industry	<b>tavara t</b>	wares
<i>te</i>		<b>tekstiili t</b>	textiles
<b>koru</b>	ornament, jewellery	<b>terve tullut</b>	welcome
<b>tunne tu imm i sta</b>	pELA of <b>tunnetuin</b> (see unit 8)		
<b>kärsi-laatu</b>	suffers, bears quality		
<b>metalli</b>	metal	<b>tyyli kkäX</b>	stylish ( <b>tyyli</b> ‘style’)
<b>muualla kin</b>	elsewhere, as well	<b>työtön mä</b>	unemployed
<b>Neuvosto liitto</b>	Soviet Union	<b>työttömyys</b>	unemployment
<i>te</i>			
<b>ostos kse</b>	purchase, shopping	<b>valtti</b>	trump card
		<b>vie-</b>	takes away;

<b>pankki kriisi</b>	banking crisis		exports
<b>posliini</b>	porcelain, china	<b>vieljä</b>	exporter
<b>puinen</b>	wooden	<b>vie nti</b>	export
		<b>yht jö</b>	company, firm

## Dialogue 4

### Suomalaisia kirjailijoita *Finnish authors*

*In a bookshop, Mrs Marple enquires into Finnish literature*

MRS MARPLE: Päivää, haluaisin ostaa suomalaisten kirjailijoiden kirjoittamia kirjoja.<sup>1</sup> Voisitteko suositella joitakin?

MYYJÄ: Aleksis Kiven *Seitsemän veljestä* on hyvin suosittu.

MRS MARPLE: Se minulla jo onkin.<sup>2</sup> Kerään nimittäin suomalaista kirjallisuutta. Minulla on myös Mikä Waltarin *Sinuhe-egyptiläinen* ja Emil Sillanpään *Nuorena nukkunut*, se josta<sup>3</sup> hän sai Nobelin kirjallisuuspalkinnon.

MYYJÄ: Tämän vuoden Finlandia-palkinnon saajan Hannu Mäkelän *Mestari* on kuulemma hyvä.

MRS MARPLE: Eikös Hannu Mäkelä ole sen lastenkirjan *Herra Huu* kirjoittaja.

[< previous page](#)

page\_245

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_246

[next page >](#)

Page 246

MYYJÄ: Kyllä, mutta hän kirjoittaa myös aikuisille. Voisin suositella lämpimästi myös Helvi Hämäläisen *Kadotettua puutarhaa*.

MRS MARPLE: Näin teidän näyteikkunassanne Veijo Meren *Ei tule vaivatta vapaus*.

MYYJÄ: Se onkin ollut suosittu viime aikoina.<sup>4</sup>

MRS MARPLE: Olisin myös kiinnostunut nuortenkirjoista ja lastenkirjoista.

MYYJÄ: Anna-Leena Härkösen *Häräntappoase* ja Akvaariorakkautta ja Rosa Liksomin kirjat ovat ne jotka tulevat mieleeni<sup>5</sup> ensimmäisenä. Lastenkirjoista ensimmäisenä tulee mieleeni *Uppo-Nalle* kirjat ja Mauri Kunnaksen *Koiramäen lapset ja tietysti Tove Janssonin Muumi-kirjat*.

MRS MARPLE: Minun on hetki mietittävä. On niin paljon mistä valita. Kiitos

avustanne.

1 suomalaisten kirjailijoiden kirjoittamia kirjoja ‘some books written by Finnish writers’.

2 Se minulla jo onkin ‘I’ve already got (a copy of) that’

3 jo|sta ‘for which’.

4 viime aiko|i|na ‘recently, of late’.

5 tulevat miele|e|ni ‘they occur to me’, lit. ‘come into my mind’.

### Vocabulary

<b>aikuinen</b>	adult	<b>mietti-</b>	ponders, considers	
<b>akvaario</b>	aquarium	<b>nimittäin</b>	you see	
<b>egyptiläinen</b>	Egyptian	<b>nuoriso</b>	youth	
<b>härän tappo ase</b>	Qweapon for killing an ox ( <b>härkä</b> ‘ox’)	<b>nä i n</b>	I saw ( <b>näke-</b> )	
		<b>näyte ikkuna</b>	display window	
<b>kadotta-</b>	loses	<b>palkinto</b>	prize	
		<b>puu tarha</b>	garden, orchard	
<b>keräX-</b>	collects	<b>rakkavs te</b>	love	
<b>kiinnostu-</b>	takes an interest in	<b>saa ja</b>	winner, ‘getter’	
		<b>suosittele-</b>	recommends	
<b>kirjailija</b>	writer	<b>vaiva tta</b>	without difficulty	
<b>kirjallisuus</b>	te literature	<b>vali TSE-</b>	chooses	
<b>kuulemma</b>	‘I hear’, they say	<b>vapaus te</b>	freedom ( <b>vapaa</b> ‘free’)	
<b>lämpimä sti</b>	warmly	( <b>lämmin</b> ‘warm’)	<b>veljestä</b>	sP of <b>veljekse-</b> ‘one of a set of brothers’
<b>las ten</b>	pG of <b>lapsi e</b> child			

Page 247

**Exercise 5** Explain in Finnish to a Finn about contemporary English-language authors: what books they have written, what prizes they have won, which ones are read by whom, and so on.

## Language points

### More uses for the 3rd infinitive

In Unit 6, you learned how to form the third infinitive, and its more common uses in colloquial style. Here we look at two more of its uses.

The first use is common enough in both colloquial and more formal Finnish. It consists of the third infinitive plus the suffix-chain:

#### **-is-i-lla-PX**

where ‘PX’ stands for any possessive suffix, and it means something like ‘on the verge of doing X’. So, for example, ‘I was (just) about to fall’ is **Mä olin putoamaisillani**. Roughly equivalent is the first infinitive, with optional **vähällä** (lit. ‘with a little’): **Mä olin (vähällä) pudota**.

The second use is much more common in written than in spoken Finnish. It is as if we could, in English, turn ‘the house that Jack built’ into ‘the by-Jack-built house’.

**talo, jonka Jack rakensi      Jacki|n rakenta|ma talo**

This construction is fully declinable; for example, in the inessive we have

**talo|ssa, jonka Jack rakensi      Jacki|n rakenta|ma|ssa talo|ssa**

‘in the house which Jack built’, more literally: ‘in the by-Jack-built house’

Its conciseness makes this construction very handy, for instance:

**Jatkosodassa Suomi koetti saada talvisodassa menettämämä alueet takaisin.**

In the War of Continuation, Finland attempted to get back *the areas which it had lost in the Winter War*.

**Me totutaan hyvin nopeasti uuden tekniikan aiheuttamiin muutoksiin ympäristössämme.**

We quickly get used to *changes* in our environment *which have been brought about by new technology*.

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_247](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_248](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 248

Here are a few more examples:

*demar/i/en johta/ma/ssa hallitukse/ssa*

*in a government led by the Social Democrats*

*kirjeesi, jo/n/ka innoitta/ma/na minä kirjoitin tämän*

*your letter, inspired by which I wrote this*

*meidän valitse/ma/ssa/mme konee/ssa*

*in the machine (which) we chose*

**Exercise 6** Rewrite these phrases in colloquial Finnish.

**Model: Turkan lähettämä paketti>paketti, jonka Turkka lähetti**

- 1 isän keittämää keittoa
- 2 lasten kirjoittamat tarinat
- 3 Goethen mainitsemassa romaanissa

## Dialogue 5

### Sosiaaliturvasta 1

#### Social security 1

ANSA: Koska sulla on laskettu aika?<sup>1</sup>

KIRSI: Mä kävin eilen äitiysneuvolassa. Laskettu aika on nyt sitte kesäkuun kymmenes.

ANSA: Milloin sun äitiysloma alkaa?

KIRSI: Toukokuun alkupuolella. Turkka ottaa isyyslomaa sit ku vauva on syntyny.

ANSA: Silloin kun meidän Erkki synty, mä sain äitiysrahaa kahdeksankymmentä (80) prosenttia palkasta, mut nyt ne on tainnu laskee sitä.



KIRSI: Kyllä ne tais sitä laskea, mut mä en nyt muista paljonks se on.

ANSA: Ootsä ajatellu jäädä kotiin äitiysloman loputtua?<sup>2</sup>

KIRSI: No ollaan me sitä ajateltu, kun kerran sitä kotihoidontukea saa siihen asti kun vauva täyttää kolme<sup>3</sup> ja työpaikka säilyy.<sup>4</sup>

<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_248</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_249</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 249

## **Sosiaaliturvasta 2** *Social security 2*

BRIAN: Miten sä rahoitat sun opiskelut?

TONI: Mä saan valtion opintotukea ja sit mä teen vähän töitä opiskelun ohessa. Mä voisin myös ottaa valtion takaamaa opintolainaa,<sup>5</sup> mut se on sit markkinakorkoista.

BRIAN: Miten sitten opiskelujen jälkeen?

TONI: No tarkoitus olis löytää töitä: Mut jos niit ei heti löydy, niin mä saan sitte työttömyyskorvausta tai sosiaaliavustusta.

BRIAN: Maksaako valtio myös eläkkeet?

TONI: Joo, valtio ja työeläkelaitokset. Eläke on kai noin kuuskyt (60) prosenttia palkasta.

BRIAN: Pitääkö siitä sitten maksaa myös sairaala ja terveystarkastukset?

TONI: Kyllä niistä pitää vähän maksaa. Terveystarkastuksissa se on noin viiskymppiä kerta (50mk) tai satasen per vuosi ja sairaalakäynneistä maksetaan myös paljon vähemmän ku mitä ne oikeesti maksaa.<sup>6</sup>

1 **laskettu aika** ‘expected date of delivery’ (lit. ‘reckoned time’).

2 **äitiysloma|n lopu|ttu|a** ‘once maternity leave has ended’.

3 **siihen asti kun vauva täyttää kolme** ‘until the baby reaches three (years old)’ (lit. until then when the baby completes three’).

4 **työpaikka säilyy** ‘they keep (my) place at work’ (lit. ‘the workplace is kept’).

5 **valtio|n takaa|ma|a opinto|laina|a** ‘an education/study loan guaranteed by the state’.

6 maksetaan myös paljon vähemmän ku mitä ne oikeesti maksaa: note the two senses of **maksa-**: ‘one *pays* much less than what they really *cost*’.

### Vocabulary

<b>alku puole llain</b>	the first half	<b>korko inen</b>	having an interest rate
<b>asti</b>	as far as, until (post.)		
<b>avustus</b> <i>kse</i>	assistance	<b>korvaus</b> <i>kse</i>	compensation
<b>elä kkeQ</b>	pension (elä- ‘lives’)	<b>koska</b>	when
<b>is yys loma</b>	paternity leave (isä ‘father’)	<b>kotihoidon tuki</b>	home care support
<b>korko</b>	interest (rate) ( <b>korkea</b> ‘high’)	<b>kulu t</b>	costs, expenses

[< previous page](#)

page\_249

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_250

[next page >](#)

Page 250

<b>laske-</b>	counts, reckons; lowers	<b>taka X-</b>	guarantees, backs ( <b>taka na</b> ‘behind’)
<b>neuvo la</b>	advice centre	<b>tarkoitus</b> <i>kse</i>	aim, intention, purpose
<b>ohe ssa</b>	alongside (post. with genitive)	<b>terveys keskus</b> <i>kse</i>	health centre ( <b>terveQ</b> healthy)
<b>opinto laina</b>	study loan	<b>työ eläke laitos</b> <i>kse</i>	work pension system
<b>opinto tuki</b> <i>e</i>	support for study, scholarship	<b>työ paikka</b>	place (in work)
<b>opiskelu t</b>	studies	<b>työ ttömyys</b> <i>te</i>	unemployment
<b>palkka</b>	pay, wage, salary	<b>täyttä</b>	completes, fills
<b>per</b>	per (prep. with nominative)	<b>valtio</b>	(the) state ( <b>valta</b> ‘power’)
<b>rahoitta-</b>	funds ( <b>raha</b> ‘money’)	<b>vauva</b>	baby
<b>sairaala käynti</b>	stay in hospital	<b>äiti ys</b> <i>te</i>	maternity ( <b>äiti</b> ‘mother’)
<b>sosiaali turva</b>	social security	<b>äitiys loma</b>	maternity leave
<b>säily-</b>	is kept, is preserved		

## Language points

### ‘Somehow’, ‘everyone’, ‘whatever’ and ‘elsewhere’

The Finnish expressions for these somewhat abstract concepts are formed fairly regularly. We may distinguish seven categories:

*The interrogative.* You should know all of these by now. Check that you do with this list: **kuka** ‘who?’, **mikä** ‘what?’, **millainen** ‘what kind of?’, **kumpi** ‘which (of two)?’, **miten** ‘how?’, **missä** ‘where?’, **minne** ‘to where?’, **mistä** ‘from where?’,  
1 **milloin**, **koska** ‘when?’, **miksi** ‘why?’, **paljonko** ‘how much?’ Forms of **mikä** and **millainen** also serve to modify nouns, for example **missä paikoissa** ‘in what place?’, **millaisilla filmeillä** ‘what kinds of films?’

*The indifferent.* Compare English ‘-ever’ as in ‘whoever’, or ‘no matter’ as in ‘no matter where’. In Finnish, you simply add **vaan** to the interrogative, for example:  
2 **kuka vaan** ‘no matter who’, **missä vaan** ‘wherever’. More formal Finnish has **tahansa** or **hyvänsä** instead: **milloin tahansa** ‘whenever’, **millainen hyvänsä** ‘no matter what kind’.

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_250](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_251](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 251

*The indefinite.* These are made with ‘some-’ in English, as in ‘someone’, ‘somewhere’. In Finnish, the root is **jo-**, so we have **joku** ‘someone’ and **jokin**  
3 ‘something’; **jossain** ‘somewhere’, **jostain** ‘from somewhere’, and **jonnekin** ‘to somewhere’; and **jotenkin**, **jollain tavalla** ‘somehow’, **jostain syystä** ‘for some reason’.

*The negative.* These are used with the negative verb (and with the prohibitive). They are formed by adding **-#n** to the interrogative if this ends in an **A**, by adding **-kAAn**  
4 otherwise. Thus ‘no one’ is **(ei) kukaan**, and ‘to nowhere’ is **(ei) minnekään**. ‘Never’ is **(ei) koskaan** or **(ei) milloinkaan**. Again, forms of **mikäin** modify nouns: **ei missään talossa** ‘in no house’.

*The universal.* This is the opposite of the negative, and is expressed by a separate set of stems, most of which you should know by now. ‘Always’ is **aina**, ‘all’, ‘every’,  
5 ‘everyone’, and ‘everything’ are **kaikki**; the words for ‘everywhere’ are built from **kaikki|a-: kaikki|a|lla, kaikki|a|lle, kaikki a|lta**

*The demonstrative.* Corresponding to **se** ‘this/that/it’ we have **silloin** ‘then’,  
6 **sellainen**, **semmonen** ‘such (a)’, **siellä** ‘there’; corresponding to **tuo** ‘that’ we have **tuolloin** ‘at that time’, **tuollainen**, **tommonen** ‘that kind of (a)’, **tuolla** ‘there (yonder)’. **Semmonen** is widely used in casual speech; cf. English ‘kind of’.

*The other.* Notice that the words for ‘elsewhere’ are built to a stem **muu|a-:**  
7 **muu|a|lla, muu|a|lle, muu|a|lta**.

*Exercise 7* Translate into English:

- 1 Sellaista voi tapahtua kenelle tahansa.
- 2 Onks täällä jossain hyvä hotelli?
- 3 Älä missään tapauksessa tee sitä!
- 4 Kuka tahansa teistä olisi tehnyt samoin.
- 5 Poika ei tiennyt minne muualle katsoa.

[< previous page](#)

page\_251

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_252

[next page >](#)

Page 252

16

**Älköön sanottako!**

**Let it not be said!**

**In this unit you will learn:**

- a little about Finnish history, and about *sisu*
- more ways of expressing uncertainty
- more about participles
- some computerese

**Dialogue 1** 

**Sisu**

*Helka offers Matthew a 'Sisu' pastille, and the conversation turns to the perennial question: how do we define Finnish sisu?*

HELKA: (*tarjoaa pastillin*) Saako olla sisua?

MATTHEW: Kiitti. Onpas nämä voimakkaita, siksi kai niitä kutsutaan sisuiksi?

HELKA: Joo, näitä pastilleja on valmistettu Suomessa jo pitkään.<sup>1</sup> Nimi viittaa suomalaisten käsitykseen suomalaisesta sisusta, joka on ollut kautta aikojen<sup>2</sup> ja edelleen kuvaa suomalaista perusluonnetta.

MATTHEW: Se on siis eräänlainen myytti, joka kuitenkin on hyvin todellinen suomalaisille.

HELKA: Niin se varmaan on. Sisu on sisu. Sitä ei voi kääntää eri kielille. Se merkitsee jokaiselle henkilökohtaisesti ehkä eri asiaa, mutta silti kaikki ymmärtävät mitä sillä tarkoitetaan. Mä itse kuvaisin sisun joksikin sellaiseksi, että ei anna periä,<sup>3</sup> vaikka ois kuinka vaikeeta.<sup>4</sup> Suomalaisen sisun on sanottu näkyvän<sup>5</sup> niin

[< previous](#)

page\_252

[next page >](#)

Page 253

urheilussa, kun myös sodassa ja muissa vaikeissa paikoissa.

MATTHEW: No niin. Lähdetään nyt sinne tenttiin ettei myöhästyä.<sup>6</sup> Siellä varmasti tarvitaan suomalaista sisua!

1 **jo pitkään** ‘for a long time now’.

2 **kautta aikojen** ‘through the ages’.

3 **ei anna periksi** ‘one doesn’t give in’.

4 **vaikka ois kuinka vaikeeta**→**vaikka olisi kuinka vaikea(t)a** ‘no matter how difficult it is’.

5 **Suomalaise|n sisu|n on sanottu näky|vä|n** ‘It has been said that Finnish **sisu** is evident’.

6 **ettei myöhästy|tä** ‘so that we’re not late’.

*Vocabulary*

<b>erään lainen</b>	some kind of	<b>sisu</b>	mental/physical stamina
<b>henkilö kohtainen</b>	personal		
<b>jokainen</b>	each	<b>sota</b>	war
<b>kääntä-</b>	turns, translates	<b>tarjoX-</b>	offers
<b>käsitys</b> <i>kse</i>	idea, view, conception	<b>tentti</b>	test
		<b>todellinen</b>	true
<b>luonteQ</b>	character	<b>valmista-</b>	manufactures, prepares
<b>myöhästy-</b>	is late (for X: <b>X-#n</b> )	<b>viittaX-</b>	points, beckons; refers
<b>myytti</b>	myth		
<b>pastilli</b>	pastille	<b>voi ma kkaX</b>	strong, powerful
<b>silti</b>	nevertheless		

*Exercise 1* Write out Finnish translations for the following English sentences by raiding the dialogue above. (You may have to change or omit a word here and there.)

- 1 It means something a little different to each person.
- 2 I suppose that’s why they’re called ‘Sisu’?

- 3 For Finns, it's quite true.
- 4 Don't give in!
- 5 This really *is* strong!

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_253](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_254](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 254

## Dialogue 2

### Pieni kertaus Suomen historiasta *In history class*

*The teacher (opettaja) leads a revision session on some highlights of Finnish history*

OPETTAJA: Otetaanpa<sup>1</sup> pieni kertaus Suomen historiasta ennen ensi viikon kokeita. Milloin Suomi itsenäistyi? Pekka!

PEKKA: Kuudes (6.) joulukuuta tuhatyhdeksänsataaseitsemäntoista (1917).

OPETTAJA: Mikä oli Suomen asema ennen itsenäistymistä?

ULLA: Ennen itsenäistymistä Suomi oli Venäjän autonominen suurruhtinaskunta ja Venäjän Tsaari oli Suomen suuriruhtinas.

JUHA: *(viittaa innokkaasti)* 1808–1809 oli Suomen sota, jolloin Ruotsi menetti Suomen Venäjälle.

OPETTAJA: Kenestä tuli<sup>2</sup> Suomen ensimmäinen presidentti tasavallaksi julistamisen jälkeen?<sup>3</sup>

PILVI: Juhon Kusti Ståhlberg. Ja eiks sitte 1918 alkanu Sisällissota?

OPETTAJA: Totta. Se kesti vain muutaman kuukauden, mutta sen seurauksena kuoli lähes yhtä paljon ihmisiä kuin<sup>4</sup> Talvisodassa. Kuka muistaa, kuinka kauan Talvisota kesti?

JUKKE: Talvisota alko 30. marraskuuta 1939 ja päätty maaliskuussa 1940.

OPETTAJA: Entäs Jatkosota?

JUKKE: Se alko kesäkuussa 1941 ja rauha tuli syyskuussa 1944.

OPETTAJA: Mitkä olivat 50-luvun tärkeimpiä tapahtumia?

MAITA: Armi Kuuselasta tuli Miss Universum 1952.

PEKKA: Ja Helsingin olympialaiset oli kans -52.

OPETTAJA: Entäs poliittisesti tärkeitä tapahtumia?

PILVI: Porkkalan luovutus oli tammikuussa 1956 ja Urho Kekkosesta tuli presidentti.

JUHA: Eiks se ystävyys, yhteistyö ja avunanto sopimus Neuvostoliiton kanssa allekirjoitettu joskus 50-luvulla?

OPETTAJA: Ei. YYA-sopimus allekirjoitettiin ensimmäisen kerran jo 1948. Mikä on ETYK-sopimus?

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_254](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_255](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 255

ULLA: Se oli se Euroopan turvallisuus- ja yhteistyökonferenssi, joka allekirjoitettiin Helsingissä 1975.

OPETTAJA: Tunti loppuukin kohta. Muistakaa kerrata Suomen presidentit.

JUKKE: Mauno Koivostosta tuli presidentti 1982 Kekkosen jälkeen.

OPETTAJA: Hyvä. Muistakaa se sitten kokeissakin. (*Kello soi.*) Menkäähän nyt välitunnille.

1 **Ote|taan|pa** ‘let’s have’.

2 **Kenestä tuli** ‘Who became?’ (lit. ‘out of whom came...’).

3 **tasavalla|ksi julista|mise|n jälkeen** lit. ‘after the declaration (as) becoming republic’.

4 **yhtä paljon ku(i)n** ‘as many as’

### *Vocabulary*

<b>allekirjoitta-</b>	signs	<b>pääty-</b>	ends, is finished
<b>autonominen</b>	autonomous	<b>rauha</b>	peace
<b>avun anto</b>	giving of aid	<b>seuraus kse</b>	consequence
<b>historian tunti</b>	history class	<b>Sisällis sota</b>	Civil War
<b>innokkaX</b>	keen, enthusiastic	<b>soi-</b>	rings, (re)sounds
<b>Jatko sota</b>	War of Continuation	<b>sopimus kse</b>	treaty
		<b>suur nihtinaX</b>	Grand Duke

<b>jolloin</b>	when	<b>suurruhtinas </b>	Grand Duchy
<b>keisari</b>	emperor	<b>kunta</b>	
<b>kertaus</b> <i>kse</i>	revision	<b>Talvi sota</b>	Winter War
<b>kertaX-</b>	revises, reviews	<b>tasa valta</b>	republic ( <b>tasa n</b> 'evenly, equally')
<b>kohta</b>	soon		
<b>kokeQ</b>	examination		
<b>konferenssi</b>	conference	<b>tsaari</b>	tsar
<b>kuole-</b>	dies	<b>turvallisuus</b>	security
		<i>te</i>	
<b>luovutus</b> <i>kse</i>	surrender, handing over	<b>väli tunti</b>	break between classes
<b>menettä-</b>	loses	<b>yhteis työ</b>	collaboration
<b>olympialaise t</b>	Olympic (game)s	<b>ystäv yys</b> <i>te</i>	friendship
<b>poliittise sti</b>	politically		

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_255](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_256](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 256

**Exercise 2** Here are the answers. What are the questions? (Peek back at the dialogue if you can't remember.)

- 1 Se alkoi kesäkuussa 1941.
- 2 Juho Kusti Ståhlberg.
- 3 Mauno Koivistosta.
- 4 1917.12.6
- 5 Lähes yhtä paljon ihmisiä kuin Talvisodassa

## Language points

### The potential mood

This mood indicates a degree, however slight, of doubt or hesitation. It occurs extremely rarely in colloquial Finnish, but is easy to form and to recognize.

The suffix is **-Ne-**, added directly to the verb stem. The **N** behaves exactly like the **N** of the past active participle. Compare the forms:

	anta-	huomaX-	nouse-	vie-
past active participle	<b>anta nut</b>	<b>huoman nut</b>	<b>nous sut</b>	<b>vie nyt</b>
s3 potential	<b>anta ne e</b>	<b>huoman ne e</b>	<b>nous se e</b>	<b>vie ne e</b>
class	I	II	III	IV

The final chunks of class II stems (**X**, **XE**, **TSE**) assimilate to the **N**, but the **N** assimilates to the s, l, or r final in class III stems once their final **e**'s have been



cancelled: **tul|le|e** ‘may/might come’, **pur|re|e** ‘may/might bite’. Parallel to the past active participles **nähnyt, tehnyt** we have the potential forms **näh|ne|e, teh|ne|e**. The indefinite potential looks just like the past passive participle, but with =**Aneen** instead of =**U**: **anne|tt|aneen, huoma|tt|aneen, nous|t|aneen, vie|tt|äneen**.

The only irregularity is in the verb ‘is’. In the personal forms of the potential, this is not **ole-** but **lie-**, so we have **lie|ne|e** ‘may/might be’. Also, the connegative is **liene|Q**, as in **Se ei liene<sup>P</sup> pelkkä sattuma** ‘It may not be mere chance.’ The perfect potential, too, is formed with **lie|ne-:** **En tiedä, mihin he lie|ne|vät menneet** ‘I don’t know where they might have gone.’ Only the indefinite is built to **ole-:** **ol|t|aneen** ‘one might be’.

As you have already seen, colloquial Finnish has other ways of expressing such doubts. Besides such little words as **ehkä, kai** ‘perhaps’ there is also widespread use of the verbs **saatta-, mahta-**, and

[< previous page](#) [page\\_256](#) [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#) [page\\_257](#) [next page >](#)

Page 257

**taita-**. For example, instead of **Useimmat muista|ne|vat hänen puheensa**, you say **Useimmat taitaa muistaa sen puheen** ‘Most will probably remember his speech.’ Here are some more examples:

**Missä mahta|a olla postilaatikko?**

Where might there be a letterbox?

**Saatta|a tulla kaunis kesä.**

Summer may turn out to be beautiful (this year).

**(Third person) directives**

These are extremely rare in spoken Finnish. They are similar to imperatives in that they express the wishes of the speaker, but their function is to place the obligation not on the addressee, but on some third party, as in English ‘Let them come forward’ or ‘Let there be light.’

The suffixes are **-kOOn** (third person singular) and **-kOOt** (third person plural). You add them to verb stems in exactly the same way as the second person plural imperative suffix **-kAA**. Compare:

p2 imperative	<b>anta kaa</b>	<b>huomat kaa</b>	<b>men kää</b>	<b>vie kää</b>
s3 directive	<b>anta koon</b>	<b>huomat koon</b>	<b>men köön</b>	<b>vie köön</b>
p3 directive	<b>anta koot</b>	<b>huomat koot</b>	<b>men kööt</b>	<b>vie kööt</b>

Unlike imperative forms (Unit 3), directive forms require their direct object nouns to take the accusative suffix **-n**. Contrast:

p2 imperative	<b>Anta kaa minulle lasi!</b>	Give me a/the glass!
s3 directive	<b>Anta koon minulle lasi n!</b>	Let him/her give me a/the glass!

The connegative is **-kO**, which is added to the stem in exactly the same way as the **-kO** of the imperative: **Älköön men|kö** ‘Let him/ her not go.’ There are also indefinite forms: **anne|tta|koon** ‘may someone give, may it be given’, **äl|köön sano|tta|ko** ‘let it not be said’.

The directive is most frequently heard in certain fixed expressions, such as **Onneksi olkoon!** ‘Congratulations’, and **Olkoon menneeksi!** ‘So be it!’

This is a good place to mention the formal first person plural imperative, which is built with the suffix-chain **-kAA-mme** in a manner parallel to the second person plural imperative. You will probably only ever come across it in **rukoil|kaa|mme** ‘Let us pray.’

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_257](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_258](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 258

## Dialogue 3

### Koli

*Alisa invites Cheryl to join her and others on a rambling weekend trip to Koli*

ALISA: Hei Cheryl, kiva nähdä sua. Kuule, me ollaan tyttöjen kanssa lähdössä<sup>1</sup> Kolille patikoimaan viikonloppuna. Haluut sä tulla mukaan?

CHERYL: Kuulostaa kivalta. Missä se Koli on?

ALISA: Se on noin 70 kilsan päässä täältä Joensuusta. Me aiotaan vuokrata auto, kun se on helpoin ja halvin tapa mennä sinne kun meitä on lähdössä ainakin Anniina, Paula ja mä.<sup>2</sup> Niin, ja sä, jos haluut tulla mukaan.

CHERYL: Voisin lähteäkin. Nyt on hyvä viikonloppu lähteä, kun ei ole paljon tekemistä ensi viikoksi ja patikoiminen sattuu olemaan yksi lempiharrastuksistani.

ALISA: Sitä paitsi Kolin kansallispuisto—yksi monista Suomen kansallispuistoista—on maisemiltaan<sup>3</sup> aivan upea. Kolin korkein kohta on Ukko-Kolilla, 34 metriä

merenpinnasta ja sen huipulta näkee pitkälle Pielis-järvelle.

CHERYL: Talvella siellä on varmaan hyvät laskettelumahdollisuudet, kun se on niin korkeella.

ALISA: Joo on. Näin etelässä ei juuri ole parempia laskettelurinteitä. Mutta mä itse kyllä tykkään enemmän käydä Kolilla näin syksyisin patikoimassa ja katsomassa hienoja maisemia. Metsissä on paljon erilaista kasvillisuutta ja eläimiä ja myös useita uhanalaisia kasvilajeja kasvaa Kolin alueella.

CHERYL: Käytkö sä usein Kolilla?

ALISA: Kyllä mä yleensä käyn pari kertaa vuodessa ja useamminkin,<sup>4</sup> varsinkin jos haluan viedä vieraita tutustumaan Koliin. Vähän aikaa sitten kuulin, että Koli on ollut suosittu pyhiinvaelluspaikka Suomen kansallisromantiikan aikana. Kuulemma lukuisat taiteilijat, esimerkiksi Edelfeldt, Sibelius ja Aho ovat ammentaneet luovuuttaan Kolin maisemissa.

CHERYL: No kyllähän mun historian opiskelijana täytyy<sup>5</sup> lähteä tutustumaan niihin maisemiin!

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_258](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_259](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 259

1 **me ollaan tyttöjen kanssa lähdössä** ‘the girls and I are going’ (lit. ‘we’re going with the girls’).

2 **meitä on lähdössä ainakin Anniina, Paula ja mä** ‘there’ll be at least A, P and me going’.

3 **maisemiltaan** ‘by virtue/because of its landscapes’.

4 **ja useamminkin** ‘and even more often’.

5 **mu|n historia|n opiskelija|na täyty|y** ‘as a history student, I must’.

### *Vocabulary*

<b>Aho</b>	Juhani Aho (1861–1921), short-story writer and novelist	<b>luovuus</b> <i>te</i>	creativity
		<b>mahdollisuus</b> <i>te</i>	possibility, opportunity
		<b>maisema</b>	landscape
		<b>meren pinta</b>	sea level

<b>ammenta-</b>	scoops, ladles; draws	<b>metri</b>	metre
<b>Edelfeldt</b>	Albert Edelfeldt (1854–1905), artist	<b>mukaan</b> <b>näin</b>	along like this
<b>halv in</b>	superlative of	<b>näin etelässä</b> <b>paitsi</b>	this far south except
<b>Joensuu</b>	city in east central Finland	<b>halpasiltä paitsi</b> <b>patikoi-</b> <b>pyhiin vaellus</b> <i>kse</i>	in addition hikes, rambles pilgrimage
<b>kansallis puisto</b> <b>kasva-</b>	national park grows	<b>romantiikka</b> <b>sattu-</b>	Romanticism happens; hits; hurts
<b>kasvi</b> <b>kasvillisuus te</b>	plant vegetation	<b>Sibelius</b> <i>kse</i>	Jean Sibelius (1865–1957)
<b>kilsa→</b> <b>kilometri</b>		<b>uhan alainen</b>	endangered, under threat ( <b>uhka</b> ‘threat’)
<b>laskettelu</b> <b>lempi e</b> <b>lukuisa</b>	tobogganing favourite; love numerous	<b>varsinkin</b>	especially

**Exercise 3** Read the following sentences out loud, step by step, in the sequence indicated. The idea is to make the various building blocks come to you naturally.

Kuule

Kuule, me ollaan

Kuule, me ollaan tyttöjen kanssa

<b>&lt; previous page</b>	<b>page_259</b>	<b>next page &gt;</b>
<a href="#">&lt; previous page</a>	<a href="#">page_260</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>

Page 260

Kuule, me ollaan tyttöjen kanssa lähdössä

Kuule, me ollaan tyttöjen kanssa lähdössä Kolille

Kuule, me ollaan tyttöjen kanssa lähdössä Kolille patikoimaan

Kuule, me ollaan tyttöjen kanssa lähdössä Kolille patikoimaan viikonloppuna.

Now repeat this routine, but replace (a) **tyttöjen kanssa** by (1) **poikien kanssa**, (2)

**vanhempieni kanssa, (3) muutamien ystävien kanssa, and (b) Kolille by (1) maalle, (2) Kiteelle, or (3) any other place you like.**

Mä yleensä käyn

Mä yleensä käyn Ruotsissa

Mä yleensä käyn Ruotsissa pari kertaa vuodessa

Replace (a) **Ruotsissa** by (1) **New Yorkissa**, (2) **Ranskassa**, (3) **kirjastossa**, and (4) other places of your own choosing, and (b) **pari kertaa vuodessa** by (1) **kaks kertaa viikossa**, (2) **joka kesällä**, and (3) **kolme kertaa päivässä**. Picture yourself doing what you're saying you do: watch out for absurdities (like going to New York three times a day).

## Dialogue 4

### **Suomen koulusysteemi** *Finnish education*

*Mrs Furr and Mrs Skeene, foreigners living in Finland, talk about the education system there.*

*Kaksi suomessa asuvaa ulkomaalaista rouvaa keskustelelee suomen koulusysteemistä. Mrs Furr on juuri muuttanut Suomeen ja Mrs Skeene on asunut Suomessa jo useita vuosia*

MRS FURR: Minua huolestuttaa<sup>1</sup> vähän, miten Brian sopeutuu uuteen kouluunsa.

MRS SKEENE: Minun mielestä sinun on turha huolestua<sup>2</sup> siitä. Suomalainen peruskoulu on mielestäni<sup>3</sup> erittäin hyvä. Krista käy nyt peruskoulun 6. (kuudetta) luokkaa ja viihtyy oikein hyvin. Ensi vuonna hän siirtyykin sitten jo yläasteelle, 7. (seitsemännelle) luokalle.

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_260](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_261](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 261

MRS FURR: Montako vuotta tämä peruskoulu kestää? Se on kai pakollista koulua?

MRS SKEENE: Kyllä. Oppivelvollisuus Suomessa päättyy 16 (kuudentoista) vuoden iässä.<sup>4</sup> Silloin ollaan peruskoulun 9. (yhdeksännellä) eli viimeisellä luokalla. Peruskouluun kuuluu siis 9 (yhdeksän) luokkaa, jotka jakautuvat ala- ja yläasteeseen. Ala-asteeseen kuuluvat luokat 1–6 (yksivivakuus), ja yläasteeseen luokat 7–9 (seitsemänviiivayhdeksän).

MRS FURR: Millaisia opiskeluvaihtoehtoja Suomessa on peruskoulun jälkeen?

MRS SKEENE: Hyvin monenlaisia. On esimerkiksi lukio, ammatilliset laitokset, ja niiden jälkeen on opistot, ammattikorkeakoulut ja yliopistot. Lukio kestää yleensä 2–4 vuotta ja sen päättyessä<sup>5</sup> saa ylioppilastodistuksen, jolla voi hakea opiskelemaan yliopistoihin ja ammattikorkeakouluihin. Ammatilliset oppilaitokset antavat käytännönläheistä koulutusta eri aloille.

MRS FURR: Mitä Krista aikoo tehdä peruskoulun jälkeen?

MRS SKEENE: Hän ei ole vielä päättänyt sitä. On niin monia hyviä vaihtoehtoja. Mutta onhan hänellä vielä kolme vuotta aikaa miettiä.

1 **minu|a huolestutta|a** ‘I’m worried’.

2 **sinu|n on turha huolestu|a** ‘there’s no point in your worrying’.

3 **miele|stä|ni** ‘in my opinion’.

4 **16 [kuudentoista] vuoden iä|ssä** ‘at the age of sixteen’ (**ikä** ‘age’).

5 **se|n päätty|e|ssä** ‘when it is finished’ (Unit 13).

### *Vocabulary*

<b>ala</b>	area	<b>ikä</b>	age
<b>ala-aste</b> <sup>Q</sup>	lower grade	<b>iässä</b>	SINE of <b>ikä</b>
<b>ammattillinen</b>	vocational, trade-	<b>jaka utu-</b>	is divided
<b>erittäin</b>	especially, particularly	<b>keskustele</b>	chats
		<b>korkea koulu</b>	‘high school’, college
<b>esimerkiksi</b>	for example	<b>koulutus</b> <i>kse</i>	education
<b>huolestu-</b>	worries (over)	<b>käytännön </b>	hands-on
<b>huolestutta-</b>	it worries X	<b>läheinen</b>	

[< previous page](#)

page\_261

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_262

[next page >](#)

Page 262

<b>laitos</b> <i>kse</i>	institute	<b>pakollinen</b>	compulsory
<b>lukio</b>	(something like a senior secondary school or sixth form college)	<b>perus koulu</b>	elementary school
		<b>päättä</b>	finishes; decides

<b>luokka</b>	class, form	<b>sopeutu</b>	settles in, fits in
<b>monenlainen</b>	of many sorts	<b>systeemi</b>	system
<b>mun mielestä</b>	in my opinion	<b>todistus</b> <i>kse</i>	certificate
<b>opisto</b>	college	<b>turha</b>	vain, empty
		<b>vaihto ehto</b>	alternative
		<b>viihty-</b>	gets on, thrives
<b>oppi velvollisuus</b>	compulsory education	<b>yleensä</b>	in general
<i>te</i>	(lit. learning duty)	<b>ylä aste</b> Q	upper grade
		<b>yli oppila</b> X	university student
<b>oppi laitos</b> <i>kse</i>	educational institution		

**Exercise 4** Raid the dialogue above for ideas about how to say the following in Finnish:

- 1 What do you intend to do after university?
- 2 In my opinion, Scottish elementary schools are especially good.
- 3 It's compulsory, I suppose?
- 4 I'm a little worried (about) how the cat is going to get used to its new home.

## Language points

### Participles as adjectives

In the previous unit, you learned how the third infinitive can be used instead of an entire clause. All four participles can be used in this way, as well. The constructions are typical of more formal varieties of Finnish, but you will need to be able to recognize and decode them if you want to be able to read most written Finnish.

Study the similarities and differences between the clause (C) and participle (P) constructions in the following examples:

*Present active participle*

P *kaunasta johtu|va* **kaksintaistelu**

C **kaksintaistelu**, *joka johtuu kaunasta*

a duel *which derives from a grudge*

P **uusissa markkinoilla olevissa tietokoneissa**

Page 264

RIIKKA: Joo, ne on ihan hyviä. Onks sun tietokoneessa värinäyttö vai tavallinen mustavalkonäyttö?

VILLE: Ihan mustavalkonäyttö vaan. Mun mielestä on turha maksaa siitä värinäytöstä, kun mä pääasiassa käytän sitä vaan kirjottamiseen.<sup>4</sup> Tärkeempi mun mielestä on hiiri, kun mä oon tottunu käyttään sitä. Mun mielestä sen avulla on helpompi toimia kun pelkällä näppäimistöllä<sup>5</sup> ja funktionäppäimillä.

RIIKKA: Se on tietysti siitäki kii,<sup>6</sup> mihin on tottunu. Miten iso muisti sun koneessa on?

VILLE: En mä nyt muista, mut kyllä se on ihan riittävä mun käyttöön. Käviskö sulle,<sup>7</sup> että mennään nyt kattoon sitä konetta, niin voit sit itse tarkastaa sen toiminnot.

RIIKKA: Mikäs siinä, jos tarjoot kupin kahvia.

VILLE: Selvä.

1 **ni|j|ssä asio|j|ssa niin hyvä** ‘so good at these things’, with the inessive; verbs go into the third infinitive illative in such constructions, e.g. **hyvä laula|ma|an**.

2 **mi|kä|s sii|nä** ‘why not? (=OK)’.

3 **Mä ostin sellase|n muste|suihku|kirjottime|n** ‘I’ve bought this ink-jet printer’, with **sellanen** (=semmonen) as a buffer to help introduce a term Ville is not particularly at home with.

4 **käytän sitä vaan kirjo(i)tta|mise|en** ‘I’m going to be using it only for writing’.

5 **pelkä|llä näppäimistö|llä** ‘with just the keyboard’.

6 **Se on siitäki kii(nni)** ‘It depends on...’ (=se riippuu siitä,...).

7 **Käviskö sulle** ‘Would it be OK with you?’

### *Vocabulary*

<b>edullinen</b>	advantageous ( <b>etu käyttö</b> ‘advantage’); cheap	use ( <b>käyttä-</b> ‘uses’)
<b>erityisongelma</b>	particular problem <b>laskenta</b>	calculation ( <b>laske-</b> ‘counts’)



<b>funktio</b>	function	<b>lisäks(i)</b>	in addition
<b>jälki</b> <i>e</i>	trace, (foot)print; mark, (im)print	<b>muisti</b>	memory (capacity to remember)
<b>kattoon</b> →		<b>musteQ</b>	ink ( <b>musta</b> 'black')
<b>katso</b>   <b>ma</b>   <b>an</b>		<b>näppäimistö</b>	(typewriter) keyboard
<b>kirjoitin</b> <i>ime</i>	printer	<b>näyttö</b>	(computer) display
<b>kirjoitus</b> <i>kse</i>	writing; document		
<b>kayttaan</b> →			
<b>käyttä</b>   <b>mä</b>   <b>än</b>			

[< previous page](#)

page\_264

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_263

[next page >](#)

Page 263

**C uusissa tietokoneissa, jotka ovat markkinoilla**

in the new computers *which are on the market*

*Past active participle*

**P lahja heidän 80 vuotta täyttäneelle naapurilleen**

**C lahja heidän naapurilleen, joka on täyttänyt 80 vuotta**

a gift to their neighbour, *who has reached his/her eightieth birthday*

*Present passive participle*

**P sairaalassa hoidettavat tapaukset**

**C tapaukset, joita täytyy hoitaa sairaalassa**

the cases *which have to be treated in hospital*

*Past passive participle*

**P vain pieni osa vuonna 1981 Afrikkaan annetusta avusta**

**C vain pieni osa siitä avusta, joka vuonna 1981 annettiin Afrikkaan**

only a small part of the aid which was given to Africa in the year 1981

## Dialogue 5

### Mikroilemassa *Coping with computers*

Ville asks Riikka, the computer expert, for advice and help with setting up his new machine

VILLE: Riikka hei, et haluis tulla vilkaseen mun uutta tietokonetta, kun mä tarttisin vähän opastusta sen käytössä ja sähän oot niissä asioissa niin hyvä.<sup>1</sup>

RIIKKA: Okei, mikäs siinä.<sup>2</sup> Onks sulla jokin erityisongelma?

VILLE: No ei oikeestaan. Mä en vaan tiedä mitä kaikkia mahdollisuuksia siinä on. Mä osaan kyllä käyttää kirjoitus- ja piirustusohjelmia, mutta siinä on sen lisäksi kaikkia laskenta- ym. ohjelmia.

RIIKKA: Onks sulla printteri kans?

VILLE: On. Mä ostin sellasen mustesuihkukirjottimen,<sup>3</sup> kun se oli edullinen ja siinä on lähes yhtä hyvä jälki kun laserprintterissä.

[< previous page](#)

page\_263

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_265

[next page >](#)

Page 265

<b>opastus</b> <i>kse</i>	guidance (opasta- 'guides')	<b>tieto</b>	data; fact
<b>piirustus</b> <i>kse</i>	drawing, design	<b>tieto koneQ</b>	computer
<b>printteri</b>	printer	<b>toiminto</b>	function(ing)
<b>pää asiassa</b>	chiefly	<b>tottu-</b>	gets used to
<b>riittä vä</b>	sufficient	<b>vilkaise-</b>	(X #n)
<b>suihku</b>	shower, jet	<b>vilkaiseen→</b>	glances at
<b>tarkasta-</b>	checks	<b>vilkaise ma an</b>	
<b>tarttisin→</b>		<b>ym.=yynnä muu ta</b>	etc.
<b>tarvitsisin</b>			

### *Additional vocabulary*

Here's some extra vocabulary that is useful in discussing anything to do with computers.

**romppu**      CD(-ROM)      **kova|levy**      hard disk

<b>kello nopeus</b> <i>te</i>	clock speed	<b>koti sivu</b>	homepage
<b>oletus arvo</b>	default value	<b>kilo tavu</b>	megabyte
<b>eheyttä-</b>	defrags	<b>emo</b>	motherboard
<b>hakemisto puu</b>	directory tree	<b>hiiri ajuri</b>	mouse driver
<b>hakemisto</b>	directory	<b>siirtä-</b>	moves/transfers
<b>imuroi-</b>	downloads	<b>tulosta-,</b>	prints
		<b>printtaX-</b>	
<b>tiedo sto</b>	file	<b>ruutu, näyttö</b>	screen, display
<b>korppu</b>	small (3.5 inch) floppy	<b>palvelin</b> <i>ime</i>	server
		<b>arkin syöttö</b>	sheetfeeder
<b>lerppu</b>	large (5.25 inch) floppy	<b>purka-</b>	unzips, decompresses
<b>levykeQ asema</b>	floppy drive	<b>päivittä-</b>	upgrades
<b>alusta-</b>	formats	<b>tiivistä-</b>	zips, compresses

**Exercise 5** When it comes to vocabulary, you're on your own from here on. But you already have learned enough so that you can extrapolate. Start now by making intelligent guesses at the forms and meanings of the empty cells on the next page:

[< previous page](#)                      [page\\_265](#)                      [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#)                      [page\\_266](#)                      [next page >](#)

Page 266

	A		B
1		<b>mahdollisuus</b> <i>te</i>	
		possibility	
2		<b>turvallisuus</b> <i>te</i>	
		security	
3	<b>todellinen</b>		
	true		
4		<b>velvollisuus</b> <i>te</i>	
		duty, obligation	
5	<b>ystävä</b>	<b>ystävyyys</b> <i>te</i>	
	friend	friendship	
6		<b>luovuus</b> <i>te</i>	
		creativity	

[< previous page](#)                      [page\\_266](#)                      [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#)                      [page\\_267](#)                      [next page >](#)

## Key to exercises

### Lesson 1

**Exercise 2** 1 I am English. 2 I am an engineer. 3 I am a Scottish musician. 4 You are a foreigner (=not Finnish). 5 You are an Italian diplomat.

**Exercise 3** 1 Oletteko te lääkäri? 2 Hän/se on unkarilainen ohjaaja. 3 Mä olen englantilainen liikemies. 4 Hän/se on ranskalainen matemaatikko. 5 Mä olen kanadalainen opiskelija.

**Exercise 4** 1 tanskalainen 2 Kreikka 3 norjalainen 4 hollantilainen 5 Albania 6 ukrainalainen 7 turkkilainen 8 portugalilainen

**Exercise 5** 1 Oletteko te suomalainen? 2 Oletteko te lukkoseppä? 3 Oletteko te venäläinen? 4 Oletteko te poliisi? 5 Oletteko te ranskalainen?

**Exercise 6** 1 Japanilainenko se on? 2 Insinöörikö sa olet (or: te olette)? 3 Palomieskö se on? 4 Saksalainenko sa olet (or: te olette)? 5 Poliitikkoko se on?

**Exercise 7** 1 the fish's tail 2 the door of the house 3 the taste of the fish 4 the end of summer 5 the owl's wing 6 the size of the disk

**Exercise 8** 1 ranskalaisen viinin maku 2 rahan väri 3 pienen talon ovi 4 talon pieni ovi 5 Ruotsin pääkaupunki 6 lääkärin italialainen ystävä 7 Lontoon historia 8 puvun uusi hinta 9 uuden puvun hinta 10 muusikon parta

[< previous page](#)

page\_267

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_268

[next page >](#)

### Lesson 2

**Exercise 1** 1 M(in)a pidän kahvista. 2 Pidätkö s(in)a (or, more colloquial: pidätsä) teestä? 3 Se (or formal: hän) pitää kevästä. 4 M(in)a pidän viinasta, se (hän) pitää viinistä. 5 Me pidämme Suomesta.

**Exercise 2** 1 m(in)a sanon 2 me näemme 3 Pidättekö (te) Pariisista? 4. He puhuvat. 5 Se (more formal: hän) puhuu Suomesta. 6 Näetkö s(in)a? (or, even less formal: näetsä?)

**Exercise 3** 1 Mä pidän vedestä, mutta mä juon mieluummin maitoa. 2 Mä pidän kalasta, mutta mä syön mieluummin juustoa. 3 Mä katselen televisiota, mutta mä kuuntelen mieluummin radiota. 4 Mä puhun englantia, mutta mä puhun mieluummin

suomea. 5 Mä pidän klarinetista, mutta mä kuuntelen mieluummin pianoa.

**Exercise 4** 1 saunan jälkeen 2 sodan jälkeen 3 aamiaisen jälkeen 4 kokeen jälkeen 5 tauon jälkeen

**Exercise 5** 1 ennen saunaa 2 ennen sotaa 3 ennen aamiaista 4 ennen koetta 5 ennen taukoa

**Exercise 6** 1 unkaria 2 italiaa 3 ruotsia 4 ranskaa 5 hollantia

**Exercise 7** Some possible answers include: Jari katsoo televisiota. Anna etsii kynää. Jussi pesee autoa, lattiaa. Satu maalaa taloa. Se lukee lehteä, kirjaa. Se kirjoittaa postikorttia. Se kuuntelee kasettia, levyä. Lapsi syö omenaa.

**Exercise 9** 1 Presidentillä on iso auto. 2 Onks sun olut tummaa? 3 Talon ovi on vihreä. 4 Baarimikolla on ruotsalainen vaimo. 5 Onko teidän asunto pieni?

**Exercise 10** 1 Hänellä on paljon rahaa. 2 Pekalla on monta ystävää. 3 Meillä on sukua Lapissa. 4 Onko sinulla koira?

**Exercise 11** Some possible answers: Minulla on tietokone, mutta mulla ei ole radiota. Minulla ei ole autoa, minulla on pyörä. Minulla ei ole kynää, mutta minulla on paperia.

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_268](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_269](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 269

### Lesson 3

**Exercise 3** 1 seuraa/seurattaa minua 2 tuo(kaa) mehua 3 avaa/ avatkaa ovi 4 sulje/sulkekaa ikkuna 5 pane/pankaa kissa ulos 6 hae/ hakekaa lääkäri 7 vie(kää) televisio pois 8 syö(kää) kakkua 9 auta/ auttakaa poliisia 10 unohda/unohtakaa se

**Exercise 6** 1 Se saapuu Turusta. 2 Ne asuu (or, formal: He asuvat) Helsingissä. 3 Ne odottaa ulkona. 4 Mitä se sanoo? 5 Missä te asutte? 6 Missä ne nukkuu? 7 Miksi sä odotat? 8 Milloin me lähdemme? 9 Kuka tulee? 10 Ne tietää, missä me asumme (colloquial: asutaan. See Unit 5).

**Exercise 7** 1 Valitettavasti mä en tiedä sen osoitetta. 2 Olen pahoillani, mutta mä en tiedä sen puhelinnumeroa. 3 Mä en tunne sen isää. 4 Mä en tunne sen poikaa. 5 Mä en tunne sen vaimoa.

**Exercise 8** 1 Sanokaa jotain suomeksi! 2 Kertokaa jotain Helsingistä! 3 Lukekaa se mulle! 4 Istukaa! 5 Kirjoittakaa mulle postikortti! 6 Odottakaa ulkona!

**Exercise 9** 1 sano 2 kerro 3 lue 4 istu 5 kirjoita 6 odota.

**Exercise 10** 1 Kuuntele vaan! 2 Sammuta vaan! 3 Avaa vaan! 4 Imuroi vaan! 5 Ota vaan!

**Exercise 11** 1 Kuunnelkaa vaan! 2 Sammutakaa vaan! 3 Avatkaa vaan! 4 Imuroikaa vaan! 5 Ottakaa vaan!

**Exercise 12** 1 kieltä- 2 niele- 3 tuo- 4 reagoi- 5 sano-

**Exercise 14** 1 Se/hän taitaa olla ruotsalainen. 2 Niillä/heillä taitaa olla iso talo. 3 Te taidatte tarvita kahvia.

## Lesson 4

**Exercise 1** 1 Helsingissä 2 pullossa 3 pöydällä 4 asemalla 5 yhdessä päivässä 6 Suomessa 7 Englannissa 8 kesällä 9 ensi kuussa 10 oikealla

**Exercise 2** 1 asemalta 2 asemalla 3 laiturilla 4 junalla 5 kello kuudelta 6 Juusosta 7 Juusolta 8 pöydältä 9 kupista 10 oikealla

[< previous page](#)

page\_269

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_270

[next page >](#)

Page 270

**Exercise 3** 1 asemalle 2 pöydälle 3 Eilalle 4 hyllylle 5 kuppiin 6 Tanskaan 7 kaupunkiin

**Exercise 4** 1 Jätä laukku eteiseen. 2 Mä pistän lasin takaisin kaappiin. 3 Aila on vielä junassa. 4 Mä kirjoitan kirjeen Juusolle. 5 Lähetä postikortti Heikille Lontooseen. 6 Aikataulu on hyllyn takana. 7 Auto on aseman edessä. 8 Vie minut Pariisiin! 9 Milloin me ollaan perillä? 10 Onks mehua lasissa?

**Exercise 7** 1 ulos ovesta ja vasemmalle. 2 Missä mahtaa olla pankki? 3 Se tekee kaksikymmentä markkaa. 4 Mitä maksaa postimerkki Englantiin?

## Lesson 5

**Exercise 1** 1 asutaan 2 menemme 3 halutaan 4 ei pidetä 5 emme lue 6 puhumme 7 ei tarvita

**Exercise 2** 1 jalat 2 huone 3 kaupungit 4 kadut 5 hammas

**Exercise 3** 1 kirjoissa 2 talossa 3 saarelta 4 laseista 5 pankeille 6 hampaaseen 7 taloihin 8 töihin 9 vesiin 10 jalkaan

**Exercise 4** 1 uus|i|ja talo|j|ja 2 halpo|j|ja takke|j|ja 3 vapa|i|ta kanso|j|ja 4 hyvä|i|ä ystävä|i|ä 5 nuor|i|ja opiskelijo|i|ta 6 vanho|j|ja opettaj|i|ja

*Exercise 5* 1 lampun 2 voileipiä 3 ovi 4 autoa

## Lesson 6

*Exercise 1* 1 Mitä s(in)a haluat, näitä vai noita? 2 Mitä s(in)a haluat, jäätelöä vai kakkua? 3 Haluatsä (Haluatko sinä) viiniä, olutta, vai mehua? 4 Mä syön nä(m)a voileivät. 5 T(u)ossa on suklaatuutti.

*Exercise 2* 1 sä ostat 2 he sanoivat 3 te osasitte 4 me haluamme 5 mä voin: voi|n and vo|i|n 6 hän muuttaa 7 ne saapui 8 mä tarvitsin 9 se joi 10 me huusimme

*Exercise 3* 1 Missä sä olit? 2 Mitä se sanoi? 3 Kissa söi hiiren. 4 Mä autoin vähän. 5 Näitsä sen? 6 Ne otti (more formal: he ottivat) sen pois. 7 Mihin sä pistit sen? 8 Kuka mainitsi siitä? 9 Kenelle sä annoit sen? 10 Mistä sä löysit sen?

[< previous page](#)

page\_270

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_271

[next page >](#)

Page 271

*Exercise 4* 1 Se meni. 2 Ne ei tulleet. 3 Mä istuin tässä. 4 He sanoivat. 5 Etkö nähnyt sitä? 6 Mä luin sen. 7 Me ostimme uuden auton. 8 Me emme tavanneet. 9 Hän ei saanut kirjettä Tanjalta. 10 Ne lähetti(vät) rahan (=the money)/rahaa (=some money).

*Exercise 5* 1 Tulkaa kotiin syömään! 2 Juokse tuonne katsomaan! 3 Mene uimaan! 4 Lähtekää kävelemään!

*Exercise 6* 1 mentiin 2 katsotaan 3 syödään 4 haluttiin

*Exercise 7* 1 tärkeä 2 oikeastaan 3 hulluksi 4 puhumaan 5 pitäisi

## Lesson 7

*Exercise 1* 1 loputon 2 kengätön 3 työtön 4 poluton 5 hampaaton 6 mauton 7 muodoton 8 lumeton 9 auringoton 10 virheetön

*Exercise 2* 1 non-existent 2 unwritten 3 unwashed 4 unbaked 5 uneaten 6 uninhabited

*Exercise 3* 1 rakennettu 2 käyttämätön 3 maalaamaton 4 syöty 5 keitetty 6 kuorimaton

*Exercise 4* 1 **Mä oon tullut** 'I have come'. 2 **Se on hakenut** 'She has fetched/applied for'. 3 **Ne on saapuneet** 'They have arrived'. 4 **Ootsä ollut Hesassa?** 'Have you been in Helsinki?' 5 **Mä oon avannut ikkunan** 'I've opened the window'. 6 **Me ollaan avattu ikkuna** 'We've opened the window'. 7 **Me ollan tultu** 'We've come'. 8 **Hän on tarvinnut apua** 'He has needed some help'. 9 **Mistä se on saanut rahan** 'Where has (s)he got the money from?' 10 **Se on paennut** '(S)he/it has escaped'.

*Exercise 5* 1 Se ei ole<sup>1</sup> lähtenyt. 2 Mä en ole huomannut sitä. 3 Ne on sanoneet jotain. 4

Mä olen nähnyt sen jo. 5 Me ei olla<sup>v</sup> vielä puhuttu siitä. 6 Mä olen tavannut hänet.

### **Exercise 7** Malted potato casserole

2 kg potatoes	2–3 tbs melted butter
1 dl wheat flour	2 tsp salt
4–5 dl milk	nutmeg

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_271](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_272](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 272

Boil the potatoes until they are done, and peel them immediately after letting them give off their steam. Mash the potatoes and sprinkle the flour into them (lit. into the mass). Let the mixture malt/ferment for a few hours or even until the next day. Stir a few times. Add the milk, butter, and flavourings. Pour the mixture into a buttered oven dish and bake (it) at 150 degrees for about two hours.

## **Lesson 8**

**Exercise 1** 1 nopeampi 2 selvempi 3 mukavampi 4 kiltimpi 5 voimakkaampi 6 pienempi 7 paksumpi 8 ohuempi 9 punaisempi 10 terveempi

**Exercise 2** 1 Sä olet/oot nuorempi ku(i)n mä (or: mä olen/oon nuorempi kun sä). 2 Pihvi on kalliimpi ku(i)n keitto. 3 Espanja on isompi ku(i)n Portugali. 4 Lääkäri on vanhempi ku(i)n lapsi. 5 Paperi on kevyempi ku(i)n kulta.

**Exercise 3** 1 Mä etsin kuivempaa viiniä. 2 Mä etsin halvempaa vihkoa. 3 Mä etsin pienempää laukkua. 4 Mä etsin yksinkertaisempaa vastausta. 5 Mä etsin makeampaa mehua.

**Exercise 4** 1 Mä oon löytänyt kuivemman viinin. 2 Mä oon löytänyt halvemman vihkon. 3 Mä oon löytänyt pienemmän laukun. 4 Mä oon löytänyt yksinkertaisemman vastauksen. 5 Mä oon löytänyt makeamman mehun.

**Exercise 7** 1 ujoimmalta 2 tummin 3 kylmin 4 kovimmasta 5 isoimpaan 6 suurimmat 7 nuorimmissa 8 tervein 9 iloisin 10 pisimmälle

**Exercise 8** 1 Se on luokan nuorin. 2 Tanska on Euroopan vanhin kuningaskunta. 3 Tämä laukku on raskaampi kun m(in)un, mut(ta) s(in)un on raskain. 4 Nopein voittaa, mut(ta) hitain on paras.

## **Lesson 9**

**Exercise 1** 1 poikien isä 2 tyttöjen nimet 3 suurempien radioiden hinnat 4 huoneiden numerot 5 monien muiden maiden lait



*Exercise 2* Some sample answers: 1 Mä herään tavallisesti noin puoli kahdeksan. 2 Mä lähen kello seitsemän. 3 Meillä syödään

[< previous page](#)

page\_272

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_273

[next page >](#)

Page 273

illallista yleensä kello kuudelta. 4 Arkipäivinä mä meen nukkumaan noin puoli yhdeltätoista.

*Exercise 3* 1 seitsemän kertaa 2 päivässä 3 kaksi kertaa 4 vuodessa

*Exercise 4* 1 Se seisoj poikien edessä. 2 Ne pani kirjeen takaisin lampun alle. 3 Mä haluaisin mennä Tukholmaan Turun kautta. 4 Kirkko on koulun vieressä. 5 Ne vei meidät (*or*: Meidät viettiin) rakennuksen taakse.

## Lesson 10

*Exercise 2* 1 Jospa minulla olisi (mulla ois) aikaa! 2 Jospa mä tietäisin, mitä sä tarkoitat! 3 Jospa sä jäisit vähäks aikaa! 4 Jospa me ei tehtäs sitä! 5 Kunpa me ei oltas ois menty sinne eilen!

*Exercise 3* 1 M(in)un täytyy/pitää mennä kotiin. 2 Irma voisi tietää siitä. 3 Ne ei viitsi tulla (meidän) mukaan. 4 Minne sä meinaat/ajattelet mennä tänä iltana? 5 Se joutui kirjoittamaan koko kirjeen. 6 M(in)un on tärkeä(t)a/tärkeetä voimistella vähintään kolme kertaa viikossa. 7 Meidän pitäis(i) kirjoittaa sille. 8 S(in)un ei pidä vastata. 9 S(in)a et saa vastata.

*Exercise 4* 1 Sulla on varmaan joku hyvä syy lukea sitä, vai? 2 Se vaaditaan kaikilta opiskelijoilta. 3 Ruotsi on Suomen toinen virallinen kieli. 4 Eiks suurin osa suomalaisista osaa ruotsiakin? 5 Ranskassa kaikkien virkamiesten pitää osata ranskaa.

*Exercise 5* 1 sen huoneeseen 2 sen puhetta 3 sen vaimo 4 mun kuppiin 5 teidän vuoro 6 sen luona (NB: remember that it is also less formal to say **mä juoksin** than (**minä**) **juoksin**, **mun** than **minim**, **mä oon ollu** than **olen ollut**)

*Exercise 6* 1 Se seisoj meidän takana|mmme. 2 Avaimet löydettiin teidän huonee|sta|nne. 3 Se ei halunnut esitellä ystävä|jä|nsä. 4 Miksi pudistat pää|tä|si? 5 Se joi puolet olue|sta|an.

*Exercise 7* 1 Mieluummin mä otan kahvia partsilla (parvekkeella). 2 Mitä kello on nyt? Puol neljä. 3 Me sovittiin tyttöjen kanssa et tavataan Espalla (Esplanaadilla) kahdeksalta. 4 Kat(s)otaan siellä mitä tehdään. 5 Mun täytyy hoitaa ensin pari juttuu (juttua).

[< previous page](#)

page\_273

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_274

[next page >](#)

## Lesson 11

**Exercise 2** Tämä on se huone, jo|sta/mi|stä me puhuttiin. Noi kirjat, jotka/mitkä on ylimmäisellä hyllyllä, on mun. Sanakirja, jo|n|ka/mi|n|kä mä unohdin kotiin, on parempi. Uusi opettaja, jo|ta te ette tunne, tulee huomenna.

**Exercise 3** 1 yhä yksinkertaisemmin 2 halvimmin 3 mitä pikimmin 4 syvemmin 5 Se tuli aikaisemmin.

**Exercise 4** 1 kolme viidennestä 2 neljä kuudennesta 3 seitsemän kahdeksannesta 4 kaksi kolmännesta 5 kaksikymmentäkaksi seitsemännestä

**Exercise 5** 1 someone else 2 something else 3 some people 4 all kinds of (stuff) 5 many people think

## Lesson 12

**Exercise 2** 1 Mä kuulin niitten/niiden lähtevän. 2 Hän näki junan saapuvan. 3 Se sanoi tulevansa takaisin huomenna. 4 Toivon tapaavani hänet jälleen. 5 Se tuntui tietävän keitä ne oli.

**Exercise 3** 1 I saw it change colour. 2 There seemed to be something under the carpet. 3 I deny knowing anything. 4 I want you to apologise. 5 (S)he thought the food was ready.

**Exercise 4** 1 After (s)he had rested (s)he stood up. 2 As soon as (s)he said it I understood. 3 I did it in order to have something to do. 4 I have to go into town in order to see to something. 5 We aren't here to meet people.

## Lesson 13

**Exercise 2** 1 Tuesday to Saturday, 11–15 (Tuesdays also in the evenings, 18–21), and Sundays, 11–16. 2 Tuomarinkylä, Didrichsen. 3 Yes: at the Sinebrychoff museum, at 3 in the afternoon. 4 Yes. Saturdays, 11–15

**Exercise 3** 1 Mennään sinne Finlandiataloon huomenna. 2 Onks se auki tiistaisin? 3 Se taitaa olla nähtävä. 4 Mitä museota te suosittelette? 5 Mä en tiedä, ehdinkö nähdä senkin.

[< previous page](#)

page\_274

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_275

[next page >](#)

**Exercise 4** 1 lapsi, joka on syntynyt Saarenmaalla 2 laki, joka koskee saarta 3 dokumentti kaupungista, joka rakennettiin sata metriä maan alle 4 helsinkiläinen, joka

on ottanut neljännen peräkkäisen mestaruutensa

**Proverbs:** Here are some English (very rough) equivalents of some of the proverbs:

1 Better a bird in the hand than two in the bush. 3 The pot calling the kettle black. 6 Out of the frying pan into the fire. 7 He who laughs last laughs loudest/best. 8 Silence is golden. 9 Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise. 12 Easy come, easy go.

## Lesson 14

**Exercise 1** 1 Mistä sun äitis suku on kotoisin? 2 Niin monet luulee. 3 Ne molemmat opiskeli Jyväskylän yliopistossa. 4 Mulla on paljon sukua myös Oulussa. 5 Onks sun isäs kans sieltä pain?

**Exercise 2** karhu hirvi susi kissa hiiri mikrobi

**Exercise 3** *Wild:* peura, ilves; *tame:* poro, ankka ('wild duck' is **sorsa**), kissa, karja, koira

**Exercise 5** 1 Hallitus sulki sairaalan. 2 Tyttö avasi oven. 3 Isäni keskeyttää keskustelun. 4 Poikien täytyy järjestää huone. 5 Meidän on pakko lähteä nyt. 6 Poliisi etsii autoa.

**Exercise 6** 1 Viime vuonna me käytiin Ruotsissa. 2 Jäät sä tänne, vai tuut sä mukaan? 3 Tieto kulkee nopeasti. 4 Kävi ilmi, että se puhuu suomea. 5 Se muutti Harrin luo.

**Exercise 7** 1 They won't bite (you) if you're not afraid of them. 2 Of course I know these waters! 3 No train's going to come from that direction at this hour. 4 You could still get across that bridge last night, anyway. 5 All the landscape looks pretty much the same up here in Lappi.

[< previous page](#)

page\_275

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_276

[next page >](#)

Page 276

## Lesson 15

**Exercise 2** 1 1300. 2 Turku Academy. 3 Bishop of Turku and author of the first Finnish primer. 4 A handicrafts museum, with exhibits illustrating old Turku ways of life.

**Exercise 3** 1 Ne tuntee jo toisensa. (more formal: He tuntevat jo toisensa.) 2 Se puhuu aina itsestään. 3 Mä jätin mun laukun toiseen huoneeseen. (=on purpose). Mun laukku jäi toiseen huoneeseen (=inadvertently). 4 Siellä oli myös pari muuta vierasta. 5 Ne tuli käymään kahtena eri aikana (or: kanteen kertaan). 6 Mä en saanut ketään uskomaan itseäni.

**Exercise 4** 1 Se kertoi mulle kaiken puhelimitse. 2 Ne muuttaa Ruotsiin vanhempineen.

3 Mä näin sen omin silmin.

**Exercise 6** 1 keittoa, jota isä keitti 2 tarinat, jotka lapset kirjoitti(vat) 3 romaanissa, jota Goethe mainitsi

**Exercise 7** 1 That sort of thing can happen to anyone. 2 Is there a good hotel somewhere (around) here? 3 Don't do it under any circumstances! 4 Any one of you (=it doesn't matter which) would have done the same. 5 The boy didn't know where else to look.

## Lesson 16

**Exercise 1** 1 Se merkitsee jokaiselle vähän eri asiaa. 2 Siksi kai niitä kutsutaan sisuiksi. 3 Se on hyvin todellinen suomalaisille. 4 Ala anna periksi! 5 Onpas tämä voimakasta!

**Exercise 2** 1 Milloin alkoi jatkosota? 2 Kuka oli Suomen ensimmäinen presidentti? 3 Kenestä tuli presidentti Kekkonen jälkeen? 4 Milloin Suomi itsenäistyi? 5 Kuinka paljon ihmisiä kuoli Suomen sisällissodassa?

**Exercise 4** 1 Mitä sä aiot tehdä yliopiston jälkeen? 2 Minusta skotlantilainen peruskoulu on erittäin hyvä. 3 Se on kai pakollista? 4 Mi(nu)a huolestuttaa vähän, miten kissa sopeutuu uuteen kotiinsa.

**Exercise 5** A1 **mahdollinen** 'possible'; A2 **turvallinen** 'secure'; B3 **todellisuus** *te* 'reality'; A4 **velvollinen** 'obliged'; B6 **luova** 'creative'

[< previous page](#)

page\_276

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_277

[next page >](#)

Page 277

## Appendix:

### Finnish names

You'll meet over thirty Finnish given names in this book, and will probably have noticed that only a few are familiar-looking. To give you an overview, here's a list of some of the more common ones. Notice that most (but not all!) names ending in **a** refer to females, and most (but not all!) ending in **o** refer to males.

#### Women

Aija	Ilona	Lilja	Reija	Sonia
Aila	Irja	Maija	Riitta	Sorja
Aliisa	Irma	Marja	Ritva	Susanna
Anja	Juulia	Martta	Saija	Tarja
Arja	Kaarina	Milja	Saima	Tuija
Eeva	Karoliina	Minna	Sanna	Tuula

Eija	Laila	Mirja	Seija	Unelma
Elina	Laina	Netta	Selja	Ursula
Erja	Launa	Niina	Senja	Veera
Hanna	Lea	Onerva	Silja	Veija
Helena	Leea	Paula	Sirkka	Viia
Hilja	Leena	Raija	Solja	Vilja
Hilkka	Liisa			
Aale	Hele	Irene	Roine	Salome
Aune	Helle			
Enne	Hille	Laine	Salme	Synnöve
Aili	Armi	Helmi	Meri	Taimi
Ainikka	Auni	Kirsti	Outi	Terhi
Allikki	Heidi	Kyllikki	Päivikki	Tuulikki
Anneli	Heli	Meeri	Salli	Virpi
Annikki	Hellikki			
Aino	Pirkko	Tellervo	Vuokko	

[< previous page](#)

page\_277

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_278

[next page >](#)

Page 278

Aamu	Keiju	Maiju	Eedit
Anu			

*Men:*

Elja	Jorma	Konsta	Miikka	Pekka
Ilkka	Juha	Kustaa	Mikä	Turkka
Joosua				
Aare	Aarne	Aarre	Aate	Aatte
Ale	loose	Kalle	Tuure	Valle
Helge				
Aarni	Eemeli	Jooseppi	Lauri	Pentti
Ahti	Eenokki	Juhani	Leevi	Sakari
Antti	Erkki	Jussi	Martti	Seeli
Artturi	Heikki	Kai	Matti	Taavetti
Eerikki	Ilmari	Kalevi	Olavi	Tapani
Eeli	Joni	Lassi	Olli	
Aapo	Eero	Keijo	Risto	Timo
Aarto	Eino	Launo	Sampo	Toivo
Aatto	Esko	Leo	Simo	Urho
Aimo	Into	Mauno	Sorjo	Urpo
Alho	Jaakko	Niilo	Tapio	Usko
Alpo	Jalo	Paavo	Tauno	Veijo
Antero	Jarkko	Raimo	Teijo	Veikko
Arvo	Kaarlo	Reijo	Terho	Viljo

Asko	Kauko			
Eetu	Hannu	Samu	Teemu	
Äijö	Väinö	Yrjö		
Aleksis	Aulis	Hannes	Mooses	Uljas
Armas	Eelis	Joonas	Tuomas	
Eevert	Roobert			

Finnish surnames are many: there are about 76,000 of them. Natural and topographic features are quite common, either alone as in **Laakso** ('valley'), **Saari** ('island'), **Koski** ('rapids'), or in derived forms (**Saarinen**, **Koskela**, **Koivisto**, **Sinisalo**). Roughly half end in =**nen** or =**IA** (like **Mäkinen** and **Mäkelä**, both from **mäki** e 'hill').

Nicknames also abound: for example, someone named **Matti** may also be called **Masa**, **Masi** or **Matsu** by friends.

[< previous page](#) page\_278 [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#) page\_279 [next page >](#)

Page 279  
 Finnish-English glossary  
 For nouns written here as ending in X or Q,  
 see pages 30–31; for verbs written here as  
 ending in X, XE, or TSE, see page 52.

**aalto** wave  
**aamu** morning  
**aapinen** primer  
**aatto** eve; night before X  
**aiheuttaa-** causes  
**aika**<sup>1</sup> time (sG **ajan**)  
**aika**<sup>2</sup> (adv.) fairly, somewhat  
**aikaisemmin** earlier  
**aiko-** intends  
**aikuinen** adult  
**aina** always  
**ainakin** at least  
**aineQ** (subject) matter  
**ainoa** only, sole  
**ainut** only, sole  
**aivan** quite; precisely  
**aja-** drives  
**ajattele-** thinks  
**al|IA** under PP  
**al|le** (to) under PP  
**al|tA** from under PP  
**ala|** lower  
**alEXE-** drops, falls, descends  
**alka-** begins  
**alku** beginning  
**aloitta-** begins (tr.)  
**alueQ** region, area  
**amerikkalainen** American  
**ammattillinen** professional-, trade-

**ammatti** profession, trade  
**ankka** (domesticated) duck  
**anta-** gives  
**antautu-** surrenders  
**anteeksi** excuse me  
**apu** aid, assistance  
**asia** matter, affair  
**asema** station, position  
**asteQ** degree, stage  
**asti** as far as, until (post.)  
**asu-** resides, inhabits, lives  
**asunto** flat; apartment  
**aukaise-** opens  
**aurinko** sun  
**autta-** helps, assists  
**avaX-** opens  
**baari** bar  
**e-** *negative verb*  
**ede|ssä** in front of X PP  
**eduskunta** parliament  
**edusta-** represents  
**eepos** *kse* epic  
**ehkä** maybe, perhaps

[< previous page](#) page\_279 [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#) page\_280 [next page >](#)

Page 280  
**ehti-** has time, does X in time, has  
 enough time to X  
**eli** or (=)

**elokuu** August  
**eläin** *ime* animal  
**elämä** life  
**enempä-** more  
**englanti** English (language)  
**England** England  
**enimpä-** most  
**ennen** before; prep. w/P  
**ensi** next  
**ensimmäinen** first  
**ensin** first  
**entä(s)** what about?  
**eri** various, different  
**erikoinen** separate, special  
**erilainen** different, dissimilar  
**erittäin** especially  
**erityinen** particular, individual  
**eräX** a certain  
**esimerkki** example  
**esineQ** object  
**esittele-** introduces  
**esitteQ** brochure  
**esittä-** presents  
**ete|en** into the space in front of PP  
**etelä** south  
**että** that (cj.)  
**flunssa** 'flu, headcold  
**hajoX-** breaks up, dismantles, dissolves  
**hake-** fetches, applies for  
**halki** across PP  
**hallinto** administration  
**halpa** cheap  
**haluX-** wants  
**hampurilainen** hamburger  
**harmaa** grey  
**harrastus** *kse* hobby, interest  
**harva** rare  
**harvinainen** rare  
**harvoin** rarely  
**hauska** nice, pleasant  
**hedelmä** fruit  
**heikko** weak  
**heinäkuu** July  
**heittä-** throws  
**helmikuu** February  
**helppo** easy  
**henki** *e* spirit, life, person  
**henkilö** person  
**herkkä** sensitive, touchy

**herkullinen** gourmet-  
**herneQ** pea  
**heti** at once, right away  
**hetki** moment  
**hetkinen** moment  
**hieno** fine  
**hiihto** skiing  
**hiihtä-** skis  
**hiiri** *e* mouse  
**hikoile-** sweats  
**hillo** jam  
**hirveä** frightful  
**hirvi** *e* deer, stag  
**hoita-** takes care of, tends (to)  
**hopea** silver  
**huhtikuu** April  
**huippu** peak, summit

<a href="#">&lt; previous</a>	<a href="#">page_280</a>	<a href="#">next</a>
<a href="#">page</a>		<a href="#">page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous</a>	<a href="#">page_281</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">page</a>		

Page 281  
**hullu** fool(ish), mad  
**huomaX-** notices  
**huomenna** tomorrow  
**huoneQ** room  
**huuta-** shouts  
**huvitta-** amuses  
**hylly** shelf  
**hyppäX-** jumps, hops  
**hyvin** well  
**hyvä** good  
**hyväksy-** approves  
**hyvästi** farewell!  
**hyökkäX-** attacks  
**--hän** you know, after all  
**härkä** ox  
**hävittä-** destroys  
**ihan** quite  
**ihana** lovely  
**ihmeQ** wonder, miracle  
**ihmettele-** wonders, is amazed  
**ihminen** human being  
**ikkuna** window  
**ikä** age  
**ilma** air

**ilman** without X prep. w/P  
**ilmesty-** appears, is published  
**ilta** evening  
**iso** big  
**istu-** sits  
**isä** father  
**itse** self; (him-, her-, it-)self  
**itsenäisyys** *te* independence  
**itä** east  
**ja** and  
**jaa** yeah  
**jaka-** divides, apportions, distributes  
**jakautu-** is distributed, is divided  
**jalka** foot, leg  
**jatka-** continues (tr.)  
**jauha-** grinds  
**jauhe**Q|**liha** mince  
**jauho**|t flour  
**jo** already; (in questions) yet  
**joka** each, every  
**joo** yeah  
**jos** if  
**joskus** sometime(s)  
**joukko** mass; troop  
**joulu** Christmas  
**joulukuu** December  
**joutu-** ends up in X, winds up Xing;  
hurries  
**juhla** celebration  
**julista-** declares, proclaims  
**jumala** god, God  
**juo-** drinks  
**juokse-** runs  
**juotava** drinkable; for drinking  
**just** just  
**juttu** story; matter, affair  
**juuri** just  
**jäljellä** left over  
**jälke**|en after X PP  
**järjestelmä** system  
**järvi** *e* lake  
**jättä-** leaves behind  
**jää** ice  
**jää-** remains, stays behind  
**kaata-** pours  
**kadotta-** loses

Page 282  
**kahdeksan** eight  
**kahvi** coffee  
**kai** maybe, perhaps  
**kaikenlainen** all kinds of  
**kaikki** *e* all, every(one)  
**kakku** cake  
**kaksi** (kahte-) two  
**kala** fish  
**kalja** (weak) beer  
**kallio** cliff  
**kalli**X expensive, dear  
**kannatta-** is worth while  
**kans** also, too  
**kansa** nation, people  
**kansallinen** national  
**kanssa** with PP  
**kanta-** carries, bears  
**karhu** bear  
**kartta** map  
**kaskitoista** twelve  
**kastikke**Q gravy, sauce  
**kasva-** grows äinrö  
**kasvi** plant  
**katka**|**rapu** prawn  
**kato**X- goes missing, disappears  
**katso-** watches, looks at, beholds  
**katu** street  
**kauan** for a long time  
**kauas** (to) far away  
**kaukaa** from far away  
**kaukana** far away  
**kauni**X beautiful  
**kauppa** shop  
**kaupunki** city  
**kaut**|ta via  
**keino** means  
**kello** clock; at X o'clock; bell  
**kera** with X PP  
**kerra**|n once  
**kerros** *kse* storey  
**kerta** time, occasion  
**kerta**X- repeats, revises  
**kerto-** tells, recounts  
**kerä**X- gathers  
**keske**||lä in the middle of PP  
**keske**||lle to the middle of PP



**keske|ltä** from the middle of  
**kesken** amid  
**keski** *e* middle  
**keskiaikainen** medieval  
**keskiviikko** Wednesday  
**keskus** *kse* centre  
**keskusta** centre  
**keskustele-** converses, chats  
**kestä-** lasts, endures; can (with-) stand  
**kesä** Summer  
**kesäkuu** June  
**kevät** spring (kevää-)  
**kiekko** disk, puck  
**kieli** *e* language; tongue  
**kielioppi** grammar  
**kiinnost-** interests  
**kiinnostu-** is interested in  
**kiitos** thank you!  
**kiitti** thanks!  
**kilpailu** contest, competition  
**kilsa** kilometre (sl.)  
**kiitti** well-behaved, 'good'  
**kimppu** bunch  
**kioski** kiosk  
**kipeä** sore; ill  
**kirja** book  
**kirjailija** writer

[< previous page](#) [page\\_282](#) [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#) [page\\_283](#) [next page >](#)

Page 283  
**kirjallisuus** *te* literature  
**kirje**Q (postal) letter  
**kirjoitta-** writes  
**kirkka**X bright, clear  
**kirkko** church  
**kiva** fine, great, lovely  
**kivi** *e* stone  
**koetta-** tries  
**kohta**<sup>1</sup> spot, place, point  
**kohta**<sup>2</sup> soon  
**koira** dog  
**koko** whole, entire; size  
**kolme** three  
**kone**Q machine; aeroplane  
**korkea** high

**kortti** card  
**korva** ear  
**koska** because; when  
**koskaan** never (with *neg. verb*)  
**kotiin** (to, headed) home (ward)  
**kotoisin** originally from (**X-stA**)  
**kotona** at home  
**koulu** school  
**kova** hard  
**kovin** very  
**kuin** as; than  
**kuinka** how  
**kuitenkin** anyway  
**kuka** who?  
**kukka** flower  
**kulta** gold  
**kumpi** which? (of two)  
**kun**<sup>1</sup> when; if; seeing that...  
**kun**<sup>2</sup>=**kuin**  
**kunnes** until  
**kunta** commune  
**kunto** good shape; ability  
**kuole-** dies  
**kuppi** cup  
**kutsu** invitation  
**kutsu-** calls; invites  
**kuu** moon; month  
**kuukausi** month  
**kuule-** hears  
**kuulemma** I hear/they say that  
**kuulosta-** sounds  
**kuulu-** is audible, can be heard; belongs  
**Mitä kuuluu?** How are you?  
**kuuma** hot, warm  
**kuuntele-** listens  
**kuusi** *te* six  
**kuva** picture  
**kuva**X- describes, depicts  
**kyilä** surely, really  
**kylme**XE- it gets cold  
**kylmä** cold  
**kylä** village  
**kymmenen** ten  
**kynttilä** candle  
**kysy-** asks (question; cf. **pyytä-**)  
**kysymys** *kse* question  
**kyynärpää** elbow  
**kämpä** hut; flat  
**kännykkä** cellular telephone

**käv|j(si)** pt. (cd.) of **käy-**  
**käy-** goes (and comes back); turns out  
(see unit 14)

[< previous page](#) [page\\_283](#) [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#) [page\\_284](#) [next page >](#)

Page 284

**käyttä-** uses  
**käänty-** turns (intr.)  
**kääntä-** turns (tr.), translates  
**laatikko** box  
**lahja** gift, present  
**laitta-** prepares, makes  
**laiva** ship  
**laji** type, sort, kind  
**lakka** arctic cloudberry  
**lapsi** *e* child (sP las|ta)  
**lasi** glass  
**laske-** descends, comes down; counts  
**lauantai** Saturday  
**laula-** sings  
**laulu** song  
**lauseQ** sentence  
**lautanen** plate, dish  
**lehti** *e* leaf; newspaper  
**leipo-** bakes  
**leipä** bread  
**lempi** *e* favourite; love  
**lentokenttä** airport  
**lepäX-** rests (intr.)  
**liha** meat  
**liian** too (much)  
**liitty-** joins, is added  
**linna** fortress, castle  
**lippu** ticket; flag  
**lisä|** additional  
**lokakuu** October  
**loma** break  
**Lontoo** London  
**loppu** end  
**loppu-** ends (intr.)  
**loputta-** ends (tr.)  
**luke-** reads  
**luku** chapter; number  
**lumi** snow  
**luo|(kse)** to X's place PP

**luo|nA** at X's place PP  
**luo|tA** from X's place PP  
**luokka** class  
**luonteQ** character  
**lupaX-** promises  
**luule-** thinks (that...)  
**luultavasti** probably  
**lähe|lIA** near PP  
**lähe|lle** (to) near PP  
**lähe|ltA** from near PP  
**lähes** nearly  
**lähettä-** sends  
**lähte-** leaves (intr.), departs, **goes**  
**lähtö** departure  
**lämmin** warm (**lämpimä-**)  
**länsi** *te* west  
**läpi** through PP  
**lääkäri** doctor, GP  
**lääni** (county)  
**löyty-** is found  
**löytä-** finds  
**maa** land; country-(side); ground  
**maailma** world  
**maaliskuu** March  
**maanantai** Monday  
**maatalous** *te* agriculture  
**mainiTSE-** mentions  
**maisema** landscape  
**maista-** tastes (tr.)  
**maito** milk  
**makea** sweet; pleasant-tasting  
**maksa-** pays; costs  
**malli** model, pattern  
**mansikka** strawberry  
**marja** berry  
**markka** (Finnish) Mark

[< previous page](#) [page\\_284](#) [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#) [page\\_285](#) [next page >](#)

Page 285

**markkina(t)** market(s)  
**marraskuu** November  
**matka** journey, trip  
**matkusta-** travels  
**meinaX-** means (to), intends  
**melkein** fairly, quite

**mene-** goes  
**meno** going  
**on menossa** is going  
**meri** sea, ocean  
**merkiTSE-** means, signifies  
**merkki** mark, symbol, sign  
**metsä** forest  
**missä** where?  
**mielenkiintoinen** interesting  
**mieli** *e* mind  
**mies** man; husband (**miehe-**)  
**mietti-** thinks over, considers, ponders  
**mikä** what?  
**millainen** what kind of?  
**milloin** when?  
**minu|n** mine, my  
**miten** how  
**mm: muun muassa** inter alia  
**moi** Hi!; Bye!  
**molemma|t** both  
**moni** *e* many  
**muista-** remembers  
**muka|na** along with X PP  
**muka|an** along with X; according to X PP  
**mukava** pleasant, comfortable  
**mummo** Grandma  
**museo** museum  
**musta** black  
**musteQ** ink  
**mustikka** bilberry  
**mutta** but  
**muu** other  
**muualla** elsewhere  
**muuan** a few (**muutama-**)  
**muutta-** changes (tr.); moves house  
**myy-** sells  
**myyjä** salesperson  
**myöhästy-** is late  
**myös** also, as well  
**myöten** along; as far as PP w/P  
**mäki** *e* hill  
**mökki** cabin, hut  
**naura-** laughs  
**neiti** young lady; Miss  
**neljä** four  
**niinkuin** like, as  
**nimi** *e* name  
**nimittäin** you see; I say that because

**noin** like that; about, roughly  
**nouse-** rises  
**nukku-** sleeps  
**numero** number  
**nuori** *e* young  
**nyky|** present-day, contemporary  
**nykyään** nowadays  
**nyt** now  
**näin** like this, in this way  
**näke-** sees (inf. **nähdä**)  
**näke-** sees

<a href="#">&lt; previous</a>	<a href="#">page_285</a>	<a href="#">next</a>
<a href="#">page</a>		<a href="#">page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous</a>	<a href="#">page_286</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">page</a>		

Page 286  
**näkemiin** Goodbye!  
**näyttä-** shows; looks, appears  
**odotta-** waits for, expects  
**ohji** past PP  
**oikea** correct  
**oikein** really, very  
**ojenta-** offers, extends, passes  
**ole-** is  
**olo** the way it is; condition  
**olut** beer (**olue-**)  
**oma** one's own  
**onnistu-** succeeds, comes out OK  
**opettele-** learns  
**opiskele-** studies  
**opiskelija** student  
**oppi-** learns, studies  
**osa** part  
**osaX-** knows how (to X)  
**osoitteQ** address  
**osta-** buys  
**otsa** forehead  
**otta-** takes  
**ovi** *e* door  
**paha** bad  
**paikka** place  
**paista-** shines  
**paitsi** beside, except PP  
**paketti** package  
**pala** piece  
**paljo|n** lots, many  
**paljonko** how much?

**palkinto** prize, award  
**paikka** salary, wage, pay  
**pallo** ball  
**pankki** bank  
**paperi** paper  
**paras** best  
**parempi** better  
**part** pair, a few  
**passi** passport  
**pele** game  
**pelkäX-** fears  
**perheQ** family  
**perinteinen** traditional  
**perinteQ** tradition  
**perjantai** Friday  
**peruna** potato  
**perus|** basic  
**perusta-** founds, bases  
**peura** wild reindeer  
**pieni** small, little  
**piirakka** pastry  
**pikku** little  
**pilvi e** cloud  
**pitkin** along PP w/P  
**pitkä** long  
**pitä-** holds; likes (-stA)  
**pohja** bottom; north  
**pohjoinen** north(ern)  
**poika** boy (sG poja|n)  
**poikki** through, across PP  
**polttä-** burns; smokes (tobacco)  
**polvi e** knee  
**poro** domesticated reindeer  
**posti** mail; post  
**postimerkki** stamp  
**prosentti** per cent  
**puhtaX** clean  
**puhelin ime** telephone  
**puhu-** speaks  
**pukki** ram  
**pulla** bun

**puna|** red  
**punainen** red  
**puolesta** on behalf of PP  
**puoli e** (be)half; side  
**puolueQ** (political) party  
**puolusta-** defends  
**pure-** bites  
**pussi** bag  
**puu** tree, wood  
**puutarha** garden  
**pysty-** is able  
**pysy-** stays, remains, doesn't move/  
 change  
**pyytä-** asks (for; cf. **kysy-**)  
**päin** abouts; towards  
**päivä** day  
**pärjäX-** gets by  
**pää** head; end  
**pääkaupunki** capital  
**päällä** on  
**pääse-** manages to go/ come; gets  
 (through/by/ in, etc.)  
**pääsy** entry  
**pääty** ends (intr.)  
**päättä-** ends (tr.), decides  
**pöytä** table  
**raha** money  
**rahoitta-** funds, provides with money  
**rakennus kse** building  
**rakenta-** builds  
**rakenteQ** structure  
**rannikko** shore, coast  
**ranska** French (language)  
**Ranska** France  
**ranta** shore, coast  
**rauha** peace, quiet  
**rauta** iron  
**rautatie** railroad  
**ravintola** restaurant  
**riippu-** hangs; depends  
**riittä-** is enough; suffices  
**rikkoutu-** is broken  
**rinta** breast, chest  
**rinteQ** slope  
**rouva** married woman, Mrs  
**rukiX** rye  
**runo** poem  
**ruoka** food  
**ruotsalainen** Swedish

[< previous page](#) [page\\_286](#) [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#) [page\\_287](#) [next page >](#)

Page 287  
**pullo** bottle

**ruotsi** Swedish (language); Sweden  
**rupeX-** starts, gets stuck in  
**saa-** gets, receives; is allowed to  
**saame** Saami, Lapp(ish) (language)  
**saapu-** arrives  
**saaristo** archipelago  
**sairaala** hospital  
**sairaX** ill, sick; patient  
**Saksa** German (language)  
**saksa** Germany  
**sama** same  
**samanlainen** similar  
**sana** word  
**sano-** says  
**sata** hundred  
**sata-** rains

[< previous page](#) [page\\_287](#) [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#) [page\\_288](#) [next page >](#)

Page 288

**satanen** 100(-mark) note; the number 100  
**sateQ** rain  
**sattu-** happens  
**sauna** sauna (see unit 9)  
**seitsemän** seven  
**sekaisin** mixed up, jumbled  
**sekä:**  
**sekä X että Y** both X and Y  
**selkä** back  
**selvä** clear; OK  
**seteli** banknote  
**seuraX-** follows  
**sija|an** instead of X PP  
**silloin** then (at that time)  
**sisko** sister  
**sisä|lla** inside PP  
**sisä|ssa** inside PP  
**sisä|än** (to) inside PP  
**sitten** then (subsequently); so  
**soi-** rings, sounds  
**soitta-** makes X ring/ sound; plays  
**soittele-** calls, phones  
**sopeutu-** settles in, fits in  
**sopi-** agrees (tr.)  
**sopimus** *kse* agreement, treaty

**sosiaaliturva** social security  
**sota** war  
**sovitta-** fits (tr.), accommodates (tr.)  
**sukellus** *kse* diving  
**suklaa** chocolate  
**suku** kin, relatives  
**sulkeutu-** closes (intr.)  
**sunnuntai** Sunday  
**suomalainen** Finnish (adj)  
**suomi** *e* Finnish (language)  
**Suomi** *e* Finland  
**suoritta-** performs, executes, carries out  
**suosittele-** recommends  
**suosittu** favoured, popular  
**suu** mouth  
**suuri** *e* great, large  
**syksy** Autumn  
**symboli** symbol  
**synty** birth  
**synty-** is born  
**sytyttä-** lights, ignites  
**syy** cause, reason; blame, guilt  
**syyskuu** September  
**syö-** eats  
**säily-** is preserved  
**sää** weather  
**sääri** *e* leg  
**säästä-** pollutes  
**taa|kseQ** to behind X PP  
**taas** again  
**tai** or  
**taita-** is capable; is likely; 'must'  
**taiteQ** art  
**taiteilija** artist  
**taka|A** from behind X PP  
**taka|nA** behind X PP  
**takaisin** back (adv)  
**takia** on account of X PP  
**talo** house; building  
**talvi** *e* Winter  
**tammikuu** January

[< previous page](#) [page\\_288](#) [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#) [page\\_289](#) [next page >](#)

Page 289

**tapa** way, custom

**tapahtu-** happens  
**tapaX-** meets  
**tarha** enclosure, yard  
**tarina** story  
**tarjoX-** offers  
**tarkasta-** checks  
**tarkista-** checks (and rectifies)  
**tarkoitta-** means, intends  
**tarkoitus** purpose  
**tarpeeksi** sufficiently, enough  
**tartte-** →  
**tarviTSE-**  
**tarviTSE-** needs; is necessary  
**tavallinen** usual, customary  
**tavara** stuff  
**tavarat** wares  
**teke-** does, makes (inf. teh|dä)  
**teos** *kse* work (of art)  
**terveQ** healthy  
**terveys** *te* health  
**tie** road  
**tietysti** of course  
**tietä-** knows  
**tiistai** Tuesday  
**tila** room, space  
**tode|lla** truly  
**toimi** *e* function(ing)  
**tule-** **toime|en** manages  
**toimi-** works, functions  
**toinen** other (of two); the other  
**ltoista** +teen, e.g. viisitoista ‘fifteen’  
**tori** market  
**torstai** Thursday  
**torttu** cake  
**tos** *te* true; truly, really  
**toukokuu** May  
**tuh** *n*te thousand  
**tuke-** supports  
**tuki** *e* support  
**tule-** comes  
**tuliais**et gifts given by, or party thrown for, one arriving  
**tunnelma** feeling, mood  
**tunte-** knows; feels  
**tunteQ** feeling  
**tunti** hour; lesson  
**tuntu-** feels (intr.), seems  
**tuo-** brings; imports  
**tutustu-** gets to know

**tuuli** *e* wind  
**tyhjä** empty  
**tykkäX-** likes  
**tyttö** girl  
**työ** work  
**työttömyys** *te* unemployment  
**tähden** for the sake of X PP  
**tänään** today  
**tärkeä** important  
**täti** aunt(ie)  
**täysin** completely  
**täyttä-** fills, completes  
**täyty-** is necessary  
**ulkomaalainen** foreigner  
**upea** splendid  
**urheilu** sport  
**usea** frequent  
**uskalta-** dares, is so bold (as to...)

[< previous](#) **page\_289** [next](#)  
[page](#) [page >](#)  
[< previous](#) **page\_290** [next page >](#)  
[page](#)

Page 290  
**usko-** believes  
**uudelleen** again  
**uusi** *te* new  
**vaali** election  
**vaan**<sup>1</sup> (but) rather; go ahead!  
**vaan**<sup>2</sup>=**vain**  
**vaati-** demands, requires  
**vai** or (in questions)  
**vaihta-** changes  
**vaihtoehto** alternative  
**vaikea** difficult  
**vaikka** although; even; for example  
**vaimo** wife  
**vain** only  
**vaiva** difficulty  
**vakavasti** seriously  
**valitettavasti** unfortunately  
**valitta-** complains  
**valkoinen** white  
**valmiX** ready; finished  
**valta** power  
**valtio** (the) state  
**vanha** old  
**vanhemma|t** parents

**vapaa** free  
**varaX-** books, reserves  
**varma** sure, certain  
**varmaan** certainly  
**varten** for X PP  
**vasemmalle** to the left  
**vasta** not until  
**vasta|an** against X; opposite X PP  
**vastapäätä** opposite PP  
**vastaX-** answers, replies  
**vasten** against X PP  
**vastoin** contrary to X prep. w/P  
**vauva** baby  
**veli** brother (sG veljen)  
**veneQ** boat  
**venäjä** Russian (language); Russia  
**vesi** *te* water  
**vie-** takes (away); exports  
**vielä** still, yet  
**vieraX** stranger; guest  
**viere|llä** next to X PP  
**viere|ssä** next to X PP  
**vietto** spending, celebrating  
**viettä-** spends, celebrates  
**vihannes** *kse* vegetable  
**viihty-** gets on, thrives  
**viikko** week  
**viiko|n+loppu** weekend  
**viimeinen** last (=final)  
**viimeksi** for the last time  
**viimeQ** last (=most recent)  
**viina** spirits  
**viini** wine  
**viipy-** stays, tarries  
**viisaX** wise  
**viisi** *te* five  
**viittaX-** refers; beckons  
**viitsi-** feels like (X-ing: X|TAQ)  
**viiva** line, dash  
**voi** butter  
**voi-** is able; can  
**voitta-** wins  
**vo|ksi** for X PP  
**vuokraX-** hires, rents

Page 291  
**vuosi** *te* year  
**vähitellen** gradually, little by little  
**vähä|n** a little  
**väli** interval  
**väli|llä** between X and Y PP  
**vari** colour  
**yhdeksän** nine  
**yhdessä** together  
**Yhdysvalta|t** the United States  
**yhteensä** all together  
**yhtä** (just) as  
**yhtään** at all  
**yksi** ever, still; *with comparative* Xer  
 and Xer  
**yhä** one (**yhte-**)  
**yksitoista** eleven  
**yl|lä=pää|llä**  
**yleensä** in general  
**yli** over X PP  
**yliopisto** university  
**yläpuole|lla** above X PP  
**ymmärtä-** understands  
**ympäri** around X PP  
**yrittä-** attempts, tries  
**yskä** cough  
**yskä-** coughs  
**ystävä** friend  
**yö** night  
**äiti** mother  
**äänekkäX** loud  
**äänestä-** votes  
**ääni** *e* voice; sound  
**ääre|ssä** at X PP  
**öijy** oil

Page 292  
English-Finnish glossary  
See note on page 279.  
a little **vähän**  
about, roughly **noin**  
according to **mukaan**  
address **osoiteQ**  
administration **hallinto**  
adult **aikuinen**  
aeroplane **lentokoneQ**  
again **taas, uudelleen**  
age **ikä**  
agreement, treaty **sopimus kse**  
agrees (tr.) **sopi-**  
aid, assistance **apu**  
air **ilma**  
airport **lentokenttä**  
all kinds of **kaikenlainen**  
all, every(one) **kaikki e**  
along with **mukana**  
already **jo**  
also **myös, kans**  
alternative **vaihtoehto**  
although **vaikka**  
altogether **yhteensä**  
always **aina**  
American **amerikkalainen**  
amuses **huvitta-**  
and **ja**  
animal **eläin ime**  
answers **vastaX-**  
anyway **kuitenkin**  
approves **hyväksy-**  
around **ympäri**  
arrives **saapu-**  
art **taiteQ**  
as far as, until **asti**  
as; than **kuin**  
asks (question) **kysy-**  
asks (for) **pyytä-**  
at home **kotona**  
at all **yhtään**  
at least **ainakin**  
at once, right away **heti**  
at X's place **luo|nA PP**  
aunt(ie) **täti**  
Autumn **syksy**  
baby **vauva**  
back (adv) **takaisin**  
back **selkä**

bad **paha**  
bag **pussi**  
ball **pallo**  
bank **pankki**  
banknote **seteli**  
bar **baari**  
beautiful **kauniX**  
because; when **koska**  
beer **olut (oluTe)**  
before **ennen**  
beginning **alku**  
begins **alka-**  
behind **taka|nA**

Page 293  
believes **usko-**  
bell **kello**  
belongs **kuulu-**  
besides **paitsi**  
best **paras**  
better **parempi**  
between **väli|llä**  
big **iso**  
bites **pure-**  
black **musta**  
boat **veneQ**  
book **kirja**  
books, reserves **varaX-**  
both **molemma|t**  
bottle **pullo**  
bottom; north **pohja**  
box **laatikko**  
boy **poika (sG poja|n)**  
bread **leipä**  
breast, chest **rinta**  
brings; imports **tuo-**  
brother **veli (sG velje|n)**  
building **rakennus kse**  
builds **rakenta-**  
bunch **kimppu**  
burns **poltta-**  
but **mutta**



butter **voi**  
buys **osta-**  
cake **kakku**  
calls, phones **soitta-**  
calls; invites **kutsu-**  
can **voi-**  
capital **pääkaupunki**  
card **kortti**  
carries, bears **kanta-**  
causes **aiheuttaa-**  
celebration **juhla**  
centre **keskusta**  
certainly **varmaan**  
changes, converts **vaihta-**  
changes (tr) **muutta-**  
chats **keskustele**  
cheap **halpa**  
checks **tarkasta-**  
child **lapsi e**  
chocolate **suklaa**  
church **kirkko**  
city **kaupunki**  
class **luokka**  
clean **puhtaX**  
clear; OK **selvä**  
clock **kello**  
closes (intr) **sulkeutu-**  
cloud **pilvi e**  
coffee **kahvi**  
cold **kylmä**  
colour **väri**  
comes **tule-**  
complains **valitta-**  
completely **täysin**  
continues (tr) **jatka-**  
correct **oikea**  
country(side) **maa**  
cup **kuppi**  
day **päivä**  
decides **päättä-**  
demands **vaati-**  
depends **riippu-**  
descends **laske-**  
describes **kuva|X-**  
dies **kuole-**  
different **erilainen**  
difficult **vaikea**  
difficulty **vaiva**  
doctor, GP **lääkäri**

does, makes **teke- (inf. tehdä)**  
dog **koira**  
door **ovi e**  
drinkable **juotava**  
drinks **juo-**  
drives **aja-**

[< previous](#) **page\_293** [next](#)  
[page](#) [>](#)  
[< previous](#) **page\_294** [next page >](#)  
[page](#)

Page 294  
duck **ankka**  
each, every **joka**  
ear **korva**  
earlier **aikaisemmin**  
east **itä**  
easy **helppo**  
eats **syö-**  
elsewhere **muualla**  
empty **tyhjä**  
end **pää, loppu**  
ends (intr) **pääty-**  
English (language, country) **englanti**  
enough, is **riittä-**  
entry **paasy**  
evening **ilta**  
excuse me **anteeksi**  
expensive **kalliX**  
fairly **aika**  
fairly, quite **melkein**  
family **perheQ**  
far away **kaukana**  
farewell! **hyvästi**  
father **isä**  
fears **pelkäX-**  
feeling, mood **tunnelma**  
feels, senses (tr) **tunte-**  
feels (intr), seems **tuntu-**  
feels like it **viitsi-**  
fetches, applies for **hake-**  
finds **löytä-**  
fine, great, lovely **kiva**  
Finland **Suomi**  
Finnish (language) **suomi**  
Finnish (adj) **suomalainen**  
first (adv) **ensin**  
first (adj) **ensimmäinen**

fish **kala**  
 flat; apartment **asunto**  
 flower **kukka**  
 follows **seuraX-**  
 food **ruoka**  
 foot, leg **jalka**  
 for example **esimerkiksi**  
 for the last time **viimeksi**  
 for a long time **kauan**  
 foreigner **ulkomaalainen**  
 forest **metsä**  
 free **vapaa**  
 friend **ystävä**  
 fruit **hedelmä**  
 game **pelejä**  
 garden **puutarha**  
 gathers **keräX-**  
 gets, receives **saa-**  
 gets by **pärjäX-**  
 gets to know **tutustu-**  
 gift, present **lahja**  
 girl **tyttö**  
 gives **anta-**  
 glass **lasi**  
 god, God **jumala**  
 goes **mene-**  
 goes (and returns) **käy-**  
 good **hyvä**  
 Goodbye! **näkemiin**  
 gradually **vähitellen**  
 great, large **suuri e**  
 ground **maa**  
 happens **tapahtu-**  
 hard **kova**  
 head **pää**  
 health **terveys te**  
 healthy **terveQ**  
 hears **kuule-**  
 helps, assists **autta-**  
 Hi!; Bye! **moi**

[< previous page](#) **page\_294** [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#) **page\_295** [next page >](#)

Page 295  
 high **korkea**  
 hill **mäki e**

hires, rents **vuokraX-**  
 hobby, interest **harrastus kse**  
 holds; likes **pitä- (-stA)**  
 home(ward) **kotiin**  
 hospital **sairaala**  
 hot, warm **kuuma**  
 hour; lesson **tunti**  
 house; building **talo**  
 how **kuinka, miten**  
 how much? **paljonko**  
 How are you? **mitä kuuluu?**  
 human being **ihminen**  
 husband **mies (miehe-)**  
 ice **jää**  
 if **jos**  
 ill **sairaX**  
 important **tärkeä**  
 in general **yleensä**  
 ink **musteQ**  
 inside **sisä|llä**  
 inside, to **sisä|än**  
 instead of **sija|an**  
 intends **aiko-**  
 interesting **mielenkiintoinen**  
 interests **kiinnosta-**  
 international **kansainvälinen**  
 introduces **esittele-**  
 invitation **kutsu**  
 is **ole-**  
 is necessary **täyty-**  
 is capable **taita-**  
 is able **voi-, pysty-**  
 is likely **taita-**  
 is worth while **kannatta-**  
 journey, trip **matka**  
 just **just, juuri**  
 knee **polvi e**  
 knows (person) **tunte-**  
 knows (facts) **tietä-**  
 knows how (to X) **osaX-**  
 lake **järvi e**  
 land **maa**  
 landscape **maisema**  
 language **kieli e**  
 last (=final) **viimeinen**  
 last (=most recent) **viimeQ**  
 lasts **kestä-**  
 laughs **naura-**  
 leaf **lehti e**

learns, studies **oppi-**  
 learns **opettele-**  
 leaves (intr) **lähte-**  
 leaves behind **jättä-**  
 left, on the **vasemmalla**  
 left over **jäljellä**  
 leg **sääri e**  
 letter (of alphabet) **kirjain ime**  
 letter (postal) **kirjeQ**  
 life **elämä**  
 like, as **niinkuin**  
 like that **noin**  
 like this, in this way **näin**  
 likes **tykkäX-**  
 line **viiva**  
 listens **kuuntele-**  
 little **pikku**  
 long **pitkä**  
 looks at **katso-**  
 loses **kadotta-**  
 lots, many **paljon**  
 machine **koneQ**  
 mail; post **posti**  
 man **mies (miehe-)**  
 many **moni e**  
 map **kartta**  
 mark **merkki**  
 Mark **markka**

<a href="#">&lt; previous</a>	<a href="#">page_295</a>	<a href="#">next</a>
<a href="#">page</a>		<a href="#">page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">&lt; previous</a>	<a href="#">page_296</a>	<a href="#">next page &gt;</a>
<a href="#">page</a>		

Page 296  
 market **tori, markkina|t**  
 married **naimisissa**  
 married woman, Mrs **rouva**  
 matter, affair **asia**  
 maybe, perhaps **kai, ehkä**  
 means, signifies **merkiTSE-**  
 means (to an end) **keino**  
 means (to), intends **meinaX-**  
 means, intends **tarkoitta-**  
 meat **liha**  
 meets **tapaX-**  
 mentions **mainiTSE-**  
 middle **keski e**  
 milk **maito**

mind **mieli e**  
 mine, my **minu|n**  
 mixed up, jumbled **sekaisin**  
 model, pattern **malli**  
 moment **hetki e, hetkinen**  
 money **raha**  
 month **kuukausi**  
 moon **kuu**  
 more, additional **lisä|ä**  
 more **enemmän**  
 morning **aamu**  
 mother **äiti**  
 mouth **suu**  
 myself **itseni**  
 name **nimi e**  
 nation, people **kansa**  
 near **lähe|llä**  
 nearly **lähes**  
 needs; is necessary **tarviTSE-**  
 never **ei koskaan**  
 new **uusi te**  
 newspaper **lehti e**  
 next **ensi**  
 next to **viere|ssä**  
 nice, pleasant **hauska**  
 night **yö**  
 no **ei**  
 north(ern) **pohjoinen**  
 notices **huomaX-**  
 now **nyt**  
 nowadays **nykyään**  
 number **numero**  
 object **esineQ**  
 o'clock **kello**  
 of course **tietysti**  
 old **vanha**  
 on account of **takia**  
 once **kerra|n**  
 one **yksi (yhte-)**  
 only **vain**  
 only, sole **ainoa**  
 opens **avaX-**  
 opposite **vastapäätä**  
 or **tai**  
 or (in questions) **vai**  
 originally from **kotoisin (X-stA)**  
 other **muu**  
 other (of two); the other **toinen**  
 over **yli**

own **oma**  
package **paketti**  
pair, a few **pari**  
paper **paperi**  
parents **vanhemmat**  
part **osa**  
passport **passi**  
past **ohji** PP  
pasty **piirakka**  
pays; costs **maksa-**  
peace **rauha**  
person **henkilö, ihminen**

[< previous page](#) [page\\_296](#) [next page >](#)  
[< previous page](#) [page\\_297](#) [next page >](#)

Page 297  
picture **kuva**  
piece **pala**  
place **paikka**  
plant **kasvi**  
plate, dish **lautanen**  
plays **soitta-**  
pleasant **mukava**  
poem **runo**  
political party **puolueQ**  
pollutes **säästä-**  
popular **suosittu**  
potato **peruna**  
pours **kaata-**  
power **valta**  
prepares, makes **laitta-**  
probably **luultavasti**  
profession, trade **ammatti**  
promises **lupaX-**  
purpose **tarkoitus** *kse*  
question **kysymys** *kse*  
quiet **rauha**  
quite **ihan**  
quite; precisely **aivan**  
railroad **rautatie**  
rain **sateQ**  
rains **sata-**  
rare **harva**  
rarely **harvoin**  
reads **luke-**  
ready; finished **valmis**

really, very **oikein**  
reason **syy**  
recommends **suosittele-**  
red **punainen**  
region, area **alueQ**  
relatives, kin **suku**  
remains, stays behind **jää-**  
remembers **muista-**  
resides, inhabits, lives **asu-**  
restaurant **ravintola**  
rests (intr) **lepäX-**  
rings, sounds **soi-**  
rises **nouse-**  
road **tie**  
room **huoneQ**  
room, space **tila**  
runs **juokse-** (inf. **juos|ta**)  
salary, wage, pay **palkka**  
same **sama**  
says **sano-**  
school **koulu**  
sea, ocean **meri** (sP **mer|ta**)  
sees **näke** (inf. **näh|dä**)  
sells **myy-**  
sends **lähettä-**  
seriously **vakavasti**  
settles in, fits in **sopeutu-**  
ship **laiva**  
shop **kauppa**  
shore, coast **räntä**  
shows; looks, appears **näyttä-**  
side **puoli e**  
similar **samanlainen**  
sings **laula-**  
sister **sisko**  
sits **istu-**  
sleeps **nukku-**  
small, little **pieni e**  
snow **lumi e** (sP **lun|ta**)  
so, therefore **siis**  
some time (s) **joskus**  
sore; ill **kipeä**  
sounds **kuulosta-**  
south **etelä**  
speaks **puhu-**  
spirits **viina**

[< previous page](#) [page\\_297](#) [next page >](#)

Page 298  
sport **urheilu**  
Spring **kevät** (kevää-)  
stamp **postimerkki**  
starts, gets stuck in **rupeX-**  
state **valtio**  
station **asema**  
stays, carries **viipy-**  
stays, doesn't change **pysy-**  
still, yet **vielä**  
stone **kivi** *e*  
storey **kerros** *kse*  
story **tarina**  
story; matter, affair **juttu**  
stranger; guest **vieraX**  
street **katu**  
student **opiskelija**  
stuff **tavara**  
subject (matter) **aineQ**  
succeeds **onnistu-**  
sufficiently, enough **tarpeeksi**  
Summer **kesä**  
sun **aurinko**  
supposedly **kuulemma**  
sure, certain **varma**  
surely, really **kyllä**  
sweet **makea**  
table **pöytä**  
takes (away) **vie-**  
takes **otta-**  
takes care of **hoita-**  
tastes (good) **maistu-**  
telephone **puhelin** *ime*  
tells, recounts **kerto-**  
thank you! **kiitos**  
thanks! **kiitti**  
that (cj) **että**  
then **sitten**  
(subsequently) then (at that time)  
**silloin**  
thinks **ajattelle-**  
thinks (that...) **luule-**  
thinks over **mietti-**  
throws **heittä-**  
ticket **lippu**  
time **aika** (sG aja|n)  
time, has enough **ehti-**

time, occasion **kerta**  
today **tänään**  
together **yhdessä**  
tomorrow **huomenna**  
tongue **kieli** *e*  
too (much) **liian**  
travels **matkusta-**  
tree, wood **puu**  
tries **yrittä-**  
true, truly **tosi**  
two **kaksi**  
type, sort, kind **laji**  
understands **ymmärtä-**  
unfortunately **valitettavasti**  
university **yliopisto**  
until **kunnes**  
uses **käyttä-**  
usual, customary **tavallinen**  
various, different **eri**  
vegetable **vihannes** *kse*  
very **kovin**  
village **kylä**  
voice; sound **ääni** *e*  
waits (for), expects **odotta-**  
wants **haluX-**  
war **sota**  
wares **tavarat**  
warm **lämmin** (lämpimä-)  
watches **katso-**

Page 299  
water **vesi** *te*  
way, custom **tapa**  
weak **heikko**  
weather **sää**  
week **viikko**  
weekend **viikonloppu**  
well **hyvin**  
west **länsi** *te*  
what kind of? **millainen**  
what about...? **entä(s)**  
what? **mikä**  
when **kun**  
when? **milloin**

where? **missä**  
 which? (of two) **kumpi**  
 white **valkoinen**  
 who? **kuka**  
 whole, entire **koko**  
 wind **vaimo**  
 wife **tuuli** *e*  
 window **ikkuna**  
 wine **viini**  
 wins **voitta-**  
 Winter **talvi** *e*  
 without **ilman**  
 wonder, miracle **ihme** **Q**  
 word **sana**  
 work **työ**  
 works, functions **toimi-**  
 world **maailma**  
 writes **kirjoitta-**  
 yeah **joo**  
 year **vuosi** *te*  
 young **nuori** *e*

< [previous page\\_299](#)    [next](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_300

[next page >](#)

Page 300

## Glossary of grammatical terms

abessive (case) A case-suffix (**-ttA**) meaning ‘without’, e.g. **mitään sanomatta** ‘without saying anything’; see Unit 15.

ablative (case) A case suffix (**-ltA**) meaning ‘(away) from’, e.g. **kirje isältä** ‘a letter from father’; see Unit 4.

accusative One of the cases which indicate the complete direct object of a sentence. Most words use the genitive suffix **-n** to mark the accusative, like the **sen** of **Se jätti sen kotiin** ‘(S)he left it home’, unless the verb has no explicit subject person, in which case the nominative is used instead: **Jätä se kotiin!** ‘Leave it at home!’, **Se jätetään kotiin** ‘One leaves it at home, We/people leave it at home’. The personal pronouns (‘me’, ‘you’, etc.) have their own special accusative suffix **-t** **Se jätti minut kotiin** ‘(S)he left me at home’, **Minut jätettiin kotiin** ‘They left me at home, I got left at home’. See Units 3 and 5.

adessive (case) A case suffix (**-llA**) meaning ‘located at/on’, e.g. **asemalla** ‘at the station’; see Unit 4.

citation form This is the form of a nominal as it is listed in dictionaries. Its

grammatical name is nominative singular, abbreviated as sN.

comitative (case) A case suffix (**-ine-**) meaning ‘in the company of, e.g. **lapsineen** ‘with his/her children’; see Unit 15.

connegative A verb form built with the suffix **-Q**, used with a negative verb to form negative statements or commands, e.g. **Älä sulje ovea** ‘Don’t close the door!’; see Unit 2.

[< previous page](#)

page\_300

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_301

[next page >](#)

Page 301

consonant compression The way in which Finnish consonants get ‘squeezed’ in certain contexts. For example, the long **kk** of **takki** ‘jacket’ gets squeezed to a short **k** when the genitive **-n** is added, as in **takin hinta** ‘the price of the jacket’. The short **k** of **rikas** ‘rich’ is already compressed (by the **s** at the end of the word); it gets ‘decompressed’ when this **s** is absent, as in the plural, **rikkaat** ‘the rich’; see Unit 1.

derivation Making one word out of another. Finnish does this by adding derivational suffixes, so adding **=llinen** to **ystävä** ‘friend’, giving **ystävä=llinen**, is like adding English ‘=ly’ to ‘friend’, giving ‘friend=ly’.

diphthong A Finnish diphthong is a sequence of two different vowels which is pronounced as one syllable. In Finnish, any vowel ending in **i**, **u**, or **y** is a diphthong (so **ei**, **äi**, **ai**, **oi**, **ui**, **yi**, **öi**, **iu**, **eu**, **au**, **iy**, **ey**, **äy**, **öy** are diphthongs), as are **ie**, **uo**, **yö**. Under certain circumstances, these last three are shortened to **e**, **o**, **ö**; see Unit 5 (plurals) and Unit 6 (past tense) for more details.

direct object The direct object of a sentence is the part which has something done to it or at which the action is aimed. Examples of English direct objects are ‘soup’ in ‘Edward heated up the soup’, ‘me’ in ‘She loves me’ and ‘bridge’ in ‘The engineer designed a bridge.’ See Unit 5 for the various kinds of direct object which Finnish distinguishes.

relative (case) A case suffix (**-stA**) meaning ‘out of, e.g. **Mä otin lasin kaapista** ‘I took a glass out of the cupboard’, and ‘about’, e.g. **Se puhui hinnoista** ‘(S)he talked about prices’; see Units 1 and 4.

enclitics These are little suffix-like elements (written in this book with prefixed double hyphen or dash) which can attach to just about any word in a sentence, depending on what is being added (**--kin**), subtracted (**--kAA**), queried (**--kO**), or stressed (**--pA**, **--kin**). In colloquial Finnish, clitics often add emotional shadings to a sentence, such as **--hA** in **Ethän polta** ‘You’re

[< previous page](#)

page\_301

[next page >](#)

Page 302

not going to smoke, are you?’ The clitic —**kin** adds **Jussi** in the sentence **Jussikin on säveltäjä** ‘*Jussi* is a composer, too (not just Pirjo)’, but adds **säveltäjä** ‘composer’ in the sentence **Jussi on säveltäjäkin** ‘*Jussi* is a *composer*, too (and not just a chartered accountant).’ In the sentence **Jussi onkin säveltäjä**, ‘*Jussi* really *is* a composer’ the amazing fact that *Jussi* actually is a composer is stressed (We thought *Jussi* might be, and do you know what?...).

essive (case) A case suffix (**-nA**) meaning ‘being X; (functioning) as; in the form of’, e.g. **Ulkomaalaisina meidän on hankittava viisumi** ‘As foreigners, we must secure a visa’; see Unit 8.

genitive A case which indicates the ‘possessor’, something like the apostrophe-plus of English in ‘Peter’s friends’ or the preposition ‘of’ in ‘the end of the road’. Finnish uses the suffix **-n** for singular nouns, so we have **Pekan ystävät** and **tien loppu** for these two phrases; for the genitive plural, see Unit 9. You’ll find more on the genitive in Units 1 and 14.

illative (case) A case suffix which means ‘into’. This book uses a shorthand symbol **-#n** to refer to the illative suffix, because it has so many different forms. For example, it is **-än** in **metsään** ‘into the forest’, **-hun** in **puuhun** ‘into a tree’, and **-seen** in **huoneeseen** ‘into a room’. See Units 4 and 5 for the details.

inessive (case) A case suffix (**-ssA**) meaning ‘(located) inside’, e.g. **sun huoneessa** ‘in your room’; see Unit 4.

infinitives These are verb forms which act like nouns. Finnish distinguishes several; they correspond, roughly, to English forms such as ‘I like *to swim*’, ‘I can *swim*’, and ‘I like *swimming*’; you’ll find a list of the various kinds of Finnish infinitive in the index. modals

instructive (case) A case suffix meaning ‘by means of, with’, as in **omin käsin** ‘with one’s own hands’; see Unit 15.

modals Special verbs which modify the meaning of the main verb in a sentence, introducing elements of possibility, ability, necessity, doubt and many

Page 303

other shades. English examples are ‘can’, ‘may’, and ‘must’, as in ‘I can swim’ and



‘You may be right.’ For Finnish modals see Units 3 and 10.

**nominative** This is the case form of Finnish dictionary entries. Its suffix is zero. Its most common roles are (1) subject of the sentence (**Jussi asuu Turussa** ‘Jussi lives in Turku’) and (2) complete direct object of an imperative or indefinite verb form (**Hae Jussi asemalta** ‘Fetch Jussi from the station!’); see Unit 1.

**noun phrase** Any group of words centred on a noun; the main noun is called the head noun. Thus ‘bottle(s)’ is the head noun in the noun phrases ‘the bottle’, ‘a bottle’, ‘a glass bottle’, ‘in those green bottles’. In a Finnish noun phrase, adjectives have the same number (singular or plural) and case suffixes as the head noun; so the Finnish equivalent of the last example is **noissa vihreissä pulloissa**.

**participles** These are verb forms that act like adjectives. Finnish distinguishes several; they correspond, very roughly, to English forms such as ‘rising’ and ‘broken’ in ‘rising prices’ and ‘broken promises’. You’ll find a list of the various kinds of Finnish participle in the index.

**partitive case** An extremely frequent case, used to indicate negation, partialness or incompleteness, or indefinite quantity. Both subjects and objects can stand in the partitive. The partitive of ‘water’, **vettä**, is used in all the following sentences: **Se ei juonut vettä** ‘(S)he didn’t drink the/any water’ (negation), **Se joi vettä** ‘(S)he drank some water’ (incomplete amount) or ‘(S)he was drinking (the) water’ (incomplete action), **Eteisen lattialla oli vettä** ‘There was (some) water on the floor of the entranceway’ (indefinite quantity). See Units 2 and 5.

**postpositions** These are the mirror image of prepositions, i.e. they come *after* the words they go with, not before. Thus where English has ‘*in front of* the church’, Finnish has **kirkon edessä**, literally ‘church’s front in’, i.e. ‘of-the-church in-front’.

[< previous page](#)

page\_303

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_304

[next page >](#)

Page 304

See Unit 9 for more examples and discussion.

**predicate** A term used in this book to refer to everything in a sentence other than the subject and the verb. For example, in the sentence **Te olette italialainen diplomaatti** ‘You are an Italian diplomat’, the predicate is **italialainen diplomaatti**, in **Mä olen kotoisin Espanjasta** ‘I’m from Spain’ the predicate is **kotoisin Espanjasta**, and in **Mä syön kaikki nämä voileivät** ‘I’m going to eat up all of these sandwiches’, it’s **kaikki nämä voileivät**.

**prolative (case)** A case suffix (**-tse**) meaning ‘by way of; via’, as in **puhelimitse** ‘by telephone’; see Unit 15.

**translative (case)** A case suffix (**-ksi, -kse-**) which indicates a change of state, as in

**Vesi muuttui viiniksi** ‘The water turned into wine’, or the way in which someone or something is viewed or used, as in **Se luuli minua hulluksi** ‘(S)he thought I was a fool.’ See Unit 8.

vowel harmony This phrase refers to the way Finnish vowels have of adjusting to one another in a word. In English we do it with consonant sounds: the **s**-sound at the end of ‘dogs’ is really more of a **z** than an **s**, in ‘harmony’ with the **g**-sound to its immediate left; contrast the **s**-sound at the end of ‘cats’. Finnish vowels adjust in a similar way, but they don’t have to be in immediate contact to feel the need to harmonize: so for example the suffix meaning ‘in’ is **-ssa** in **Puolassa** ‘in Poland’ but **-ssä** in **Sveitsissä** ‘in Switzerland’. For details see Units 1 and 10.

vowel lengthening (#) Finnish short vowels become long in many contexts, e.g. **ä** becomes **ää** in **se elää** ‘(s)he lives’, **e** becomes **ee** in **se menee** ‘(s)he/it goes’, and **o** becomes **oo** in **se sanoo** ‘(s)he says’. In order to capture what is systematic about this process, this book uses the symbol # as a shorthand cover symbol: **se elä-#**, **se mene-#**, and **se sano-#** are simply a different way of writing **se elää**, **se menee**, and **se sanoo**, in which the suffix meaning ‘(s)he (does whatever)’ is uniformly #. See Unit 2.

[< previous page](#)

page\_304

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

page\_305

[next page >](#)

Page 305

## Index

The numbers refer to the lessons in which the topics are covered.

abessive (case) 15

ablative (case) 4

accusative 3, 5

adessive (case) 4

adverbs 6, 11

allative (case) 4

alternating stems 1

animals 14

citation form 1

colloquial pronunciation pp. 4–8; 6, 7, 13

comitative (case) 15

commands 3, 16

comparative 8, 11

comparison 8

compass 13

computers 16

conditional mood 10

connegative 2

consonant compression 1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11

customs 4

dental stems 2, 3, 5, 6, 8

dentals 2

derivation 2, 10

direct objects 5

directions 4

doctor 8

e-stems 1

economics 15

education 16

elative (case) 1, 4

emphasizing 6

essive (case) 8

family 4

foods 7, 11

foreign words 4

genitive 1, 9, 14

genitive plural 9

geography 14

goodbye 4, 5

greetings 1

‘have’ 2

hello 1

history 16

houses, flats 12, 13

how things seem 14  
how you feel 15

illative (case) 4, 5  
**iME**-stems 5  
imperative 3

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_305](#)

[next page >](#)

[< previous page](#)

[page\\_306](#)

[next page >](#)

Page 306

indefinite (verb) 5, 6  
indefinite object 2  
indefinite pronoun 15  
indifferent 15  
inessive (case) 4  
infinitive, first 3  
infinitive, second 13  
infinitive, third 6, 15  
instructive (case) 15  
intentions 10  
interrogative 15  
introductions 1  
invitations 9

kiosks 6

**I**-cases 4  
languages 1, 10  
'let's' 5  
'let us' 16  
likes and dislikes 2  
linking clauses 11, 12  
local cases 4

modals 3, 10  
money 7  
music 13

names Appendix  
nationalities 1  
necessity 13  
negative verb 2  
**NeN**-stems 1  
nominative 1  
non-alternating stems 1  
nouns from verbs 10  
numerals 2, 7, 11

occupations 1  
off-licence 5  
ordering at a bar 4  
ordering in a restaurant 12  
'other' 15

participial constructions 12  
participle, past active 6, 7, 10, 12  
participle, past passive 7, 10, 12  
participle, present active 13, 16  
participle, present passive 13, 16  
participles, overview 13  
participles as adjectives 16  
partitive 2, 5  
passport 4  
past tense 6  
perfect tense 7  
permission 10  
personal suffixes 10  
**pitä-** 14  
plans 10  
plural (nouns) 5  
politeness 1  
politics 11, 15  
possession 1, 2, 10  
possessive suffixes 10  
possibility 16  
postpositions 9  
potential mood 16  
preferences 2  
prepositions 9  
present tense 2  
privative 7  
prohibition 3  
prolative (case) 15  
pronouns, demonstrative 6  
pronouns, personal 1  
pronouns, relative 11  
proverbs 13  
purpose 12

**Q**-stems 2  
questions, yes/no 1  
questions, other 3

religion 10

Page 307  
requests 3

sauna 9  
s-cases 4  
seasons 10  
'self' 15  
sequence 12  
shopping 5, 6  
sightseeing 13  
simultaneity 13  
**sisu** 16  
social security 15  
sport 8, 14  
subject, submerged 14, 15  
suggestions 5  
superlative 8, 11

taxi 7  
**TE**-stems 1  
telephone 5  
thanks 3  
tight lid 1  
time expressions 9  
trains 4  
translative (case) 8  
travel agent's 11  
Turku 15

uncertainty 16  
**UKsE**-stems 5  
**UUTE**-stems 8

vagueness 14  
verb classes 3  
verbal noun 3  
verbs from nouns 10  
verbs of motion 14  
visiting 6, 8  
vowel harmony 1, 10  
vowel lengthening (#) 2

'without' 7  
word order 2, 6  
writers 15

**X**-stems 2

yes 1

